





EX LIBRIS









Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

STEIGER'S Latin Series.

---

AHN'S  
LATIN GRAMMAR.

WITH

REFERENCES TO THE EXERCISES

IN THE

*FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD LATIN BOOKS.*

BY

Dr. P. HENN.

---

NEW YORK:

E. STEIGER & CO.

1881.

760  
A286  
la

REQUEST.

The undersigned, in their efforts to secure the greatest possible correctness in their educational publications, will feel obliged for the suggestion of improvements.

*E. Steiger & Co., Publishers.*

Copyright, 1881, by E. STEIGER & Co.

IN MEMORIAM

Prof. J. Henry Senger



## P R E F A C E.

---

*AHN'S Latin Grammar* forms part of a series which has been undertaken with the design to facilitate the study of Latin for beginners. The author desires to state at the outset that this volume is in no respect a condensation of the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books*. It is constructed on a plan of its own, and with a twofold object in view: first, to provide a complete grammatical course for those teachers who prefer the synthetic method to the exclusion of the analytic, and secondly, to supply for reference in study a really compendious grammar, which may answer the needs of young scholars, while it is sufficiently comprehensive and full for more advanced students — in a word, the first and also the last grammar in the student's hands.

In pursuance of this plan, the *Grammar* retains from the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books* the general statement of grammatical facts in the exact form and language of those books, but, of course, in the traditional presentation of synthetic grammar. In the treatment of **Etymology** the following have been the leading features. While scientific accuracy has been aimed at, the convenience of teacher or learner has in no case been sacrificed to theoretical completeness. Of the stem theory especially the author has meant to place before the learner just so much as may be used to explain difficulties — not to multiply them. The pupil's attention should be directed first to what most needs to be learned, viz.: **the etymological forms themselves**. With this in view, the *Grammar* embraces all the important features of the series which are of practical assistance to the learner, particularly during the first year. The sharp distinction, for instance, of inflectional endings by **bold-faced** type is a matter of no small importance if we wish to make the pupil from the very outset so familiar with all the inflections that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur.

Of course, a *real* understanding he will obtain only by learning *how those inflections arose*, and here again the brief, clear and practical rules on the subject will be found to simplify a very complex matter, and to remove perhaps the greatest difficulty in the study of Latin grammar. As complementary to the etymological part the careful classification and definition of derivative endings cannot fail to be valuable for constant reference, if not for class study.

In the treatment of **Syntax** the points which have received particular attention are: to set forth the facts of classical Latin (represented by Caesar and Cicero) just as they are in themselves; to describe as fairly and briefly as possible the actual uses of syntactical forms, to illustrate them by carefully selected examples, and, withal, to bear constantly in mind that this Course is meant to lead at the earliest possible moment to the reading of the classical authors. It will be for professional teachers to say whether the endeavor to reach this practical end has been successful.

To furnish to teachers who may so desire, the opportunity of drilling their pupils in the more important rules and principles while they are learning them, references to the corresponding exercises in the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books* are inserted throughout this *Grammar*. The detailed **Index of Subjects** will be found to contain every topic in the text.

To summarize: the design of this Latin Series is to enable pupils to gain a thorough knowledge of Latin — not without honest exertions, yet with the greatest possible ease.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

*General Division of the Subject.*

Page 1

## PART I. — PHONOLOGY.

<i>Alphabet; Classification</i> .....	1
<i>Pronunciation</i> .....	3
<i>Roman Method</i> .....	3
<i>Continental Method</i> .....	4
<i>English Method</i> .....	5
<i>Syllables</i> .....	6
<i>Quantity</i> .....	6
<i>Accent</i> .....	7

## PART II. — ETYMOLOGY.

<i>The Parts of Speech</i> .....	7
SUBSTANTIVES .....	8-48
<i>Gender</i> .....	8
<i>Number and Case</i> .....	10
<i>Declensions</i> .....	10
<i>General Rules</i> .....	11
<i>First Declension</i> .....	12
<i>Second Declension</i> .....	13
<i>Adjectives</i> .....	16
<i>Third Declension</i> .....	20
<i>Formation of the Genitive</i> .....	20
<i>Adjectives</i> .....	33
<i>Remarks on Certain Cases</i> .....	35
<i>Greek Nouns</i> .....	38
<i>Gender in Third Declension</i> .....	38
<i>Fourth Declension</i> .....	42
<i>Fifth Declension</i> .....	43
<i>Irregular Nouns</i> .....	44
<i>Proper Names</i> .....	47
ADJECTIVES .....	48-53
<i>Declension</i> .....	48
<i>Comparison</i> .....	50
NUMERALS .....	54-59
<i>Numeral Adjectives</i> .....	54
<i>Numeral Adverbs</i> .....	58

PRONOUNS .....	Page 59-65
<i>Personal Prònouns</i> .....	59
<i>Pronouns of the Third Person</i> .....	61
<i>Demonstrative</i> .....	61
<i>Determinative</i> .....	62
<i>Relative</i> .....	63
<i>Interrogative</i> .....	64
<i>Indefinite</i> .....	64
<i>Pronominal Adjectives</i> .....	65
VERBS .....	66-145
<i>Voices</i> .....	66
<i>Tenses</i> .....	67
<i>Moods</i> .....	67
<i>Verbal Nouns and Adjectives</i> .....	68
<i>Numbers and Persons</i> .....	69
<i>The Four Conjugations</i> .....	69
<i>Simple Forms</i> ... ..	70
<i>Compound Forms</i> .....	72
<i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i> .....	75
<i>First Conjugation (Paradigm)</i> .....	77
<i>Second Conjugation (Paradigm)</i> .....	80
<i>Third Conjugation (Paradigm)</i> .....	84
<i>Fourth Conjugation (Paradigm)</i> .....	88
<i>Deponent Verbs (Paradigms)</i> .....	92
<i>Appendix to Third Conjugation (Verbs in ìō)</i> .....	100
<i>Special Forms in Conjugation</i> .....	103
<i>Formation of the Principal Parts</i> .....	105
<i>in the First Conjugation</i> .....	106
<i>in the Second Conjugation</i> .....	108
<i>in the Third Conjugation</i> .....	112
<i>Stems in u, v</i> .....	113
<i>Verbs in ìō</i> .....	114
<i>Stems in d, t</i> .....	115
<i>Stems in b, p</i> .....	118
<i>Stems in c, g, q, h, ct</i> .....	119
<i>Stems in l, m, n, r</i> .....	121
<i>Stems in s, x</i> .....	124
<i>Stems in sc (Inceptives)</i> .....	124
<i>in the Fourth Conjugation</i> .....	129
<i>Irregular Verbs</i> .....	130
<i>Defective Verbs</i> .....	141
<i>Impersonal Verbs</i> .....	144

ADVERBS.....	Page 145-151
<i>Primitive and Derivative</i> .....	145
<i>Comparison</i> .....	150
PREPOSITIONS.....	151
CONJUNCTIONS.....	152-154
<i>Co-ordinating</i> .....	152
<i>Subordinating</i> .....	153
INTERJECTIONS.....	155
WORD-FORMATION.....	155-168
<i>Derivation of Verbs</i> .....	155
<i>of Substantives</i> .....	158
<i>of Adjectives</i> .....	161
<i>Composition of Verbs</i> .....	164
<i>of Substantives</i> .....	168
<i>of Adjectives</i> .....	168

PART III. — SYNTAX.

THE SENTENCE.....	169
<i>Subject and Predicate</i> .....	169
<i>Attribute and Apposition</i> .....	172
<i>Agreement of Pronouns</i> .....	173
<i>The Order of Words</i> .....	175
CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.....	176-208
<i>Genitive with Substantives</i> .....	176
<i>with Adjectives</i> .....	178
<i>with Verbs</i> .....	179
<i>Accusative, Direct Object</i> .....	182
<i>two Accusatives</i> .....	183
<i>with Impersonal Verbs</i> .....	184
<i>Idiomatic Uses</i> .....	185
<i>Dative with Verbs</i> .....	185
<i>with Adjectives</i> .....	189
<i>Ethical Dative</i> .....	190
<i>Ablative of Cause</i> .....	190
<i>of Means and Instrument</i> .....	191
<i>of Limitation</i> .....	191
<i>of Comparison</i> .....	191
<i>of Manner</i> .....	192
<i>of Quality</i> .....	193
<i>of Price</i> .....	193
<i>of Separation, Plenty and Want</i> .....	194
<i>in Special Constructions</i> .....	196

<i>Time, Space, Place</i> .....	Page 197-207
<i>Use of Prepositions</i> .....	197
<i>Time</i> .....	204
<i>Space</i> .....	206
<i>Place</i> .....	207
SPECIAL USES of <i>Substantives</i> .....	209
of <i>Adjectives</i> .....	210
of <i>Pronouns</i> .....	211
SYNTAX OF THE VERB .....	214-246
<i>Use of Tenses</i> .....	214
<i>Sequence of Tenses</i> .....	217
<i>Use of the Indicative</i> .....	219
<i>Independent Uses of the Subjunctive</i> .....	220
<i>Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive</i> .....	221
<i>Consecutive and Final Conjunctions</i> ..	221
<i>Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions</i> .....	225
<i>Temporal Conjunctions</i> .....	226
<i>Causal Conjunctions</i> .....	227
<i>Conditional Conjunctions</i> .....	228
<i>Relative Clauses with Subjunctive</i> .....	230
<i>Direct Questions</i> .....	231
<i>Indirect Questions</i> .....	233
<i>The Imperative</i> .....	234
<i>The Infinitive</i> .....	235
<i>Accusative with the Infinitive</i> .....	236
<i>Tenses of the Infinitive</i> .....	238
<i>Nominative with the Infinitive</i> .....	239
<i>Direct Discourse</i> .....	239
<i>Indirect Discourse</i> .....	239
<i>Participles</i> .....	241
<i>Ablative Absolute</i> .....	242
<i>Gerund</i> .....	243
<i>Gerundive</i> .....	243
<i>Supine and its Equivalents</i> .....	245
CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS .....	246-259
<i>Copulative</i> .....	246
<i>Disjunctive</i> .....	247
<i>Adversative</i> .....	248
<i>Causal</i> .....	249
<i>Illative</i> .....	249
<i>Corresponsive</i> .....	249

POETICAL FORMS.

PROSODY .....	Page 250-256
<i>Quantity. General Rules</i> .....	250
<i>Middle Syllables</i> .....	251
<i>Final Syllables</i> .....	253
<i>Monosyllables</i> .....	254
<i>Compounds</i> .....	255
<i>Figures of Prosody</i> .....	255
ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION .....	257-268
<i>Feet. Rhythm</i> .....	257
<i>Dactylic Hexameter</i> .....	260
<i>Elegiac Pentameter</i> .....	261
<i>Iambic Trimeter</i> .....	261
<i>Compound Verses</i> .....	261
<i>Metres of Horace</i> .....	263
<i>Index of the Metres of Horace</i> .....	267

MISCELLANEOUS.

<i>The Roman Calendar</i> .....	269
<i>Roman Money, Weights, and Measures</i> .....	272
<i>Abbreviations</i> .....	273
<i>Principal Latin Authors</i> .....	274
INDEX OF VERBS .....	277
INDEX OF SUBJECTS .....	288

---





# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## GENERAL DIVISION OF THE SUBJECT.

1. **Latin Grammar** is a description of the usages of the Latin language according to the different ways in which words (*vocabŭla*) are put together to form speech (*oratiō*). It is divided into three parts:

**I. Phonology** which deals with the elementary sounds in the Latin language.

**II. Etymology** which treats of the forms of single words—**Inflection**—and of derivation and composition—**Word-formation**.

**III. Syntax** which treats of the arrangement and combination of words in sentences.

---

## PART FIRST.

### PHONOLOGY.

2. Nearly all words are composed of articulate sounds. These are represented to the eye by the letters of the **Alphabet** which is the same as the English, except that it has no **w**.

The **Latin Alphabet** consists, strictly, of but twenty-three letters, **i** and **j** being anciently but one character, as likewise **u** and **v**. During the classical age, **y** and **z** were recognized as *Greek* letters, and **x** was the twenty-first and *last* letter of the Latin alphabet (see **4**. below).

3. The **Alphabetical Names** still most generally used in English schools, are the English. Yet, it is more probable that in the ancient spelling of Latin the letters were named in the following manner:

a	A	ah	m	M	em
b	B	bay	n	N	en
c	C	kay	o	O	o
d	D	day	p	P	pay
e	E	ay	q	Q	koo
f	F	eff	r	R	er
g	G	gay	s	S	ess
h	H	hah	t	T	tay
i	I	ee ( <i>vowel</i> )	u	U	oo ( <i>vowel</i> )
j	J	ee ( <i>consonant</i> )	v	V	oo ( <i>consonant</i> )
k	K	kah	x	X	ix
l	L	el	y	Y	ipseelon
			z	Z	tsaytah

The Latin uses capital initial letters at the beginning of sentences; also for all proper names, and for substantives and adjectives derived from proper names.

4. The **Vowels** are: **a, e, i, o, u, y**. All other letters, except the aspirate **h**, are consonants. Originally, **i** and **u** were used both as vowels and as consonants, and supplied the place of **j** and **v**. **y** and **z** occur in Greek words only.

5. The **Diphthongs** are: **ae, oe, au, eu**.

6. **Consonants** are classified according to the principal *organs* by which they are produced, as:

**Labials** (*lip-sounds*): **b, p, f, v, m**;

**Dentals** (*tooth-sounds*): **d, t, n, s**;

**Linguals** (*tongue-sounds*): **l, r**;

**Gutturals** (*throat-sounds*): **c, g, k, q**;

and according to the *mode of utterance*, as:

**Liquids** which can be uttered without a vowel:

**l, m, n, r, s**;

**Mutes** which cannot be perfectly sounded without a vowel:

**b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t**.

7. **Double Consonants** are:

**z = dz** in *adze*; **x = cs (gs)**.

## PRONUNCIATION.

8. The **Pronunciation** of Latin is different in different countries. In the United States, general usage is now strongly in favor of either the **Roman** or the **Continental Method**, the difference between these two not being very considerable. Many persons, however, prefer to retain the **English Method**, which has been the prevailing system of pronunciation among English-speaking scholars for the last two or three centuries.\*

### Roman Method.

9. By the **Roman, or Phonetic Method**, *every letter has always the same sound.*

#### Sounds of the Vowels.

10. As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long or short. Vowels marked thus: **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** are long; marked thus: **ǎ ě ĭ** **ǒ ũ ŷ** are short.

**ā** = *a* in *father*

**ē** = *e* in *prey*

**ī** = *i* in *machine*

**ō** = *o* in *bone*

**ū** = *oo* in *boot*

**ŷ** = *i* in *machine*

**ǎ** = *a* in *idea*

**ě** = *e* in *met*

**ĭ** = *i* in *holiest*

**ǒ** = *o* in *obey*

**ũ** = *u* in *full*

**ŷ** = *i* in *holiest*

#### Sounds of the Diphthongs.

11. **Diphthongs** are pronounced by the rapid successive utterance of the elements forming them.

**ae** = *ay* in *aye*

**oe** = *o* in *world*

**au** = *ou* in *house*

**eu** = *oy* in *boy* (nearly)

The sound of **eu** is much disputed; many scholars contend for **eu** as English *ew*, in *few*.

12. All diphthongs are long, as: **fōēdŷs**, *a treaty*.

13. To denote that two successive vowels which might otherwise be taken for a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, the **Diæresis** (¨) is placed over the second vowel, as: **pōĕtā**, *a poet*.

\* For class-instruction in Latin pronunciation and current reading **AHN-HENN'S Latin Reading Charts** will be found valuable.

### Sounds of the Consonants.

**14.** The **Consonants** are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

**c** is hard and sounds in all situations like **k**, as: **Cičěřō = Kikěro**.

**ch** in Latin words is a **k**; in Greek words a **k** with the subaddition of **h**, commonly pronounced as **ch** in German. The latter sound can only be acquired through means of oral instruction.

**g** is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

**j** has the sound of **y** in *you*.

**qu = kw** (nearly). **gū** and **sū** before another vowel when both vowels belong to the same syllable = **gw, sw**, as: *lingūā, lingwa; sūētūs, swetus*.

**rh** is pronounced like **r** simply.

**s** and **x** are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

**t** has the same sound as **t** in English, but is never aspirated; **th** is pronounced like **t** simply.

**v = w** in *we*.

### Continental Method.

**15.** In the pronunciation of the vowels, the **Continental Method** is identical with the Roman. As to the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English Method, the following letters deserve special notice.

**t** before **ī** (short **i**) with another vowel, has the sharp sound of **th** in *thin*; when preceded by another **t, s, or x**, or when **i** is long (**ī**), and in Greek words, **t** retains its original sound, as: *mix' tī ō, a mixture*.

**c** before **e, i, y, æ, oe, eu**, is pronounced like **ts** in *nets*; in every other position it is hard like the English **k**. **cī** before a vowel has nearly the same sound as **tī** in the same position, and they are sometimes interchangeable.

**ch = k** with the subaddition of **h**, has a hard guttural sound like the German **ch**. **sch** is pronounced by the successive utterance of **s** and **ch**. Neither of these sounds (**ch** and **sch**) has an equivalent in English, and they must be learned from the lips of a teacher.

## English Method.

**16.** As a general rule, those who prefer to retain the **English Method**, should read a Latin sentence *just as if the words were English*, carefully observing the directions which follow, especially the Rules of Accent (**29–31.**), and bearing in mind that there are no silent letters.

### Sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs.

**17. Vowels** have their long English sounds, as in *fate, me, pine, no, tube, type*, in the following situations:

at the end of a word, as: *dōm' ī nī, masters; cor' nū, a horn; lē' ō, a lion;*

before another vowel or diphthong, as: *Dē' ūs, God; vī' ā, a way; jā' nū ā, a door;*

when ending an accented syllable; as: *pā' tēr, a father; dē' dīt, he gave; vī' vūs, living; sō' lūs, alone; lŷ' rā, a lyre.*

EXCEPTIONS: **a** unaccented has the sound of final *a* in *America*; as: *men' sā, a table.* In *tībī, to thee*, and *sībī, to one's self*, final **i** has its short sound.

**18. Vowels** have their short English sounds, as in *fat, met, pin, not, tub, symbol*, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, as: *mag' nūs, great; fin' gō, I fashion; cor' pūs, a body; mens, the mind.*

EXCEPTIONS: *pōst, after*, is pronounced as the same word in English; the termination **ēs** like the English word *ease*, and the termination **ōs** like *ose* in *morose*, as: *ā' vēs, birds; pū' ě rōs, boys.*

**19. The Diphthongs ae and oe** are pronounced as *e* would be in the same place; **au** like *aw*, and **eu** like *ew*, as: *poe' nā, punishment; au' rŭm, gold; Eu rō' pā, Europe; Cae' sār, Cæsar.*

### Sounds of the Consonants.

**20.** The Consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English. The following, however, require special notice:

**c** and **g** are soft (like **s** and **j**) before **e, i, y, ae,** and **oe**, and hard in other situations, as: *cen' tŭm, a hundred; cī' vīs, a citizen; cā' dō, I fall; gĕ' nŭ, the knee; grā' nŭm, a grain.*

**ch** is hard like **k**, as: **ch**ŏ'rŭs, *a choir*.

The consonants **c**, **s**, **t**, immediately preceded by the accent, and standing before **i**, followed by another vowel, are aspirated, **c**, **s**, and **t** taking the sound of **sh**, **x** that of **ksh**, as: sŏ' cĭ ũs (so'-she us), *a companion*; Hel vĕ' tĭ ě (Hel ve' shi a), *Switzerland*. — **c** following an accented syllable has also the same sound before **eu** and **yo**, as: cĕ dŭ' cĕ ũs (ca du' she us), *a herald's staff*. — **t** preceded by another **t**, **s**, or **x**, has its hard sound, as: o' stĭ ũm, *a door*; mix' tĭ ŏ, *a mixture*.

## Syllables.

**21.** A **Syllable** is one or more sounds pronounced by a single impulse of the voice; it consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

**22.** A single consonant between two vowels belongs to the latter, as: sĭ' tĭs, *thirst*.

**23.** Of several consonants coming together between two vowels, those which can be used to begin a Latin word, belong to the next syllable, as: men'sĕ, *a table*; tem'plŭm, *a temple*; ca'strĕ, *a military camp*.

**24.** Compound words must be divided into the words which compose them, as: post'ĕĕ, *afterward*. But if the former part has dropped its termination, the compound word is to be divided like a simple word, as: tĕ met' sĭ (contracted from tĕ'mĕn et'sĭ), *although*.

**25.** The last syllable of the word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

## Quantity.

The following are general Rules of **Quantity**:

**26.** A syllable is long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong, as: sŏl, *the sun*; aurum, *gold*; *by position* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or by **j**, **x**, **z**; as: aptus, *fit*; collis, *hill*; saxum, *rock*.

**27.** A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common (anceps), that is, it may be long or short in verse, as in tenĕbrae, *darkness*; in prose it is invariably short.

**28.** A vowel before another vowel is short, no account being taken of **h**, as: Dĕŭs, *God*; trĕhŏ, *I draw*.

## Accent.

The following are Rules of **Accent**:

**29.** Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as: lā'nā, *wool*.

**30.** Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *penult*, if that is long, as: man dā'tā, *orders*; if it is short, then on the *antepenult*, as: ā'dā mās, *the diamond*.

**31.** When **-quē**, **-ně**, **-vě** are joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before these words, whether it be short or long, as: terrā'quē, *and the earth*.

---

# PART SECOND.

## ETYMOLOGY.

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

**32.** The classes into which words are divided, according to their uses, are called **Parts of Speech**; namely,

the **Substantive**, which is the name of a person, thing, or idea; as: vīr, *a man*; dōmūs, *a house*; dīēs irae, *the day of wrath*;

the **Adjective**, which is used to qualify a noun, as: rārā āvis, *a rare bird*;

the **Pronoun**, which points out some person or thing, as: tū, *thou*; hōc, *that*;

the **Verb**, which is used to assert or declare something, as: dūm spīrō, spērō, *while I breathe, I hope*;

the **Adverb**, which is used to qualify a verb or an adjective, as: nōtā bēně, *mark well*;

the **Preposition**, which joins a word to some other word to show the relation between them, as: lūpūs **in** fābūlā, *the wolf in the fable*;

the **Conjunction**, which connects sentences together, or words used in the same sentence, as: ōrā **ēt** lābōrā, *pray and work*;

the **Interjection**, which is an exclamation, expressive of feeling; as: O cūrās hōmīnūm! *O the cares of men!*

**33.** The word **Noun** is used as a name for both Nouns and Adjectives, the former being distinguished as **nouns substantive**, or **Substantives**, and the latter as **nouns adjective**, or **Adjectives**.

**34. Inflection** is a change made chiefly in the end of a word, to show its grammatical relation.

**35. Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns** have inflections of **Declension**, to denote number, gender, and case. *Verbs* have inflections of **Conjugation**, to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

**36.** Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called **Particles**; these are *Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

### SUBSTANTIVES.

**37.** The **Substantive** is the name of a *Person* or *Thing* (**Concrete**), or of a *Quality* (**Abstract**).

**38. Concrete Substantives** are either:

**Proper**, *i. e.* peculiar to *certain* persons or things, as: Hōmērūs, *Homer*; Tībērīs, *Tiber*; or

**Common** to a *whole class*, as: arbōr, *a tree*; or

**Collective**, denoting in the singular *more than one*, as: exercītūs, *an army*. To this class belong also the names of **Materials**, as: lignūm, *wood*.

### Gender.

**39.** There are, as in English, **three Genders: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter**. The gender of Latin nouns, in many instances, is to be determined by their *signification*, according to the following

#### General Rules.

**40. Masculine** are the names of males, rivers, winds, and months, as: nautā, *a sailor*; Rhēnūs, *the Rhine*; nōtūs, *the south-wind*; Aprīlīs, *April*.

**41. EXCEPTIONS:** In the following words, Gender is determined by the *termination*, and not by the *distinction of sex*:

cōpiāe, *troops*

custōdiāe, *guards*

ōpērae, *laborers*

vīgīliāe, *watchmen*

excūbiāe, *sentinels*

mancīpiūm, *a slave*

auxīliā, *auxiliary troops.*



**42. Feminine** are: the names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees, as: virgō, *a maid*; Aegyptūs, *Egypt*; Nĕāpōlis, *Naples*; Rhōdūs, *Rhodes*; pīrūs, *a pear-tree*.

**43.** The numerous **EXCEPTIONS** are chiefly names of towns, which, as to gender, follow the *termination*, instead of the *signification*, as:

**Masculine:** Argī, *Argos*; **Neuter:** Sāguntūm, *Saguntum*.

**44. Neuter** are: all **Indeclinable Nouns**, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely as such, without reference to their meaning, as: nihīl, *nothing*; scīrĕ tūm, *thy knowledge*; hōc dīu, *this (word) diu*.

**45.** Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of **Common Gender**:

artifex, <i>an artist</i>	dux, <i>a leader</i>	testīs, <i>a witness</i>
cīvīs, <i>a citizen</i>	hērēs, <i>an heir</i>	jūdex, <i>a judge</i>
cōmĕs, <i>a companion</i>	pārens, <i>a parent</i>	pātrūĕlīs, <i>a cousin</i>
custōs, <i>a keeper</i>	jūvĕnīs, <i>a youth</i>	vātĕs, <i>a prophet</i> .

**46.** Names of **Persons** with different terminations to distinguish masculines and feminines, are called **substantīva mobilīa**; as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgīstĕr	māgīstrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rĕgīnā	<i>a king, queen.</i>

**47.** Names of **Animals** deserve special notice. With some of them gender is expressed by *difference of termination*, as:

lēō, <i>a lion</i>	lēaenā, <i>a lioness</i>
cervūs, <i>a stag</i>	cervā, <i>a hind</i> ;

others are of the *common gender*, as:

hīc bōs, <i>this ox</i>	haec bōs, <i>this cow</i> ;
-------------------------	-----------------------------

others have for *both sexes* one grammatical gender; these are called **epicoena**. Thus lĕpūs, *a hare*, is always masculine, and vulpĕs, *fox*, always feminine. If necessary, the sexes are distinguished by mās, *male*, and fĕmīnā, *female*, as:

vulpĕs mās, <i>a male fox</i>	lĕpūs fĕmīnā, <i>a female hare.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

**48.** The gender of **Substantives** not determined by their signification, is to be ascertained by their termination, according to the **Special Rules** of Gender under the several declensions. **Adjectives** distinguish gender by *different forms* in the *same words*, and agree in gender with their **Substantives**.

## Number and Case.

**49.** The Latin, like the English, has **two Numbers**; the **Singular** Number denotes one, the **Plural**, more than one. There are **six Cases** in Latin: the **Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.**

The **Nominative** is the case of the subject of the sentence, and answers the question *Who?* or *What?*

The **Genitive** may be translated by the English Possessive or with the preposition *of*; it answers the question *Whose?* or *Whereof?*

The **Dative** may usually be translated by the preposition *to* or *for*, answering the question *To whom?* or *For whom?* Sometimes it corresponds to the English Objective.

The **Accusative** nearly corresponds to the English Objective; it answers the question *Whom?* or *What?*

The **Vocative** is the case of direct address.

The **Ablative** may usually be translated by the prepositions *from, by, with*; it answers the questions *Where? Whence?* or *Wherewith?*

**50.** According to their relations, the cases are divided into **cāsūs rectī**, *Independent Cases*, and **cāsūs obliquī**, *Dependent Cases*. **Nominative** and **Vocative** are **cāsūs rectī**; **Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative**, **cāsūs obliquī**.

## Declensions.

**51.** The formation of the several cases is called **Declension**. There are **five Declensions** in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the **Genitive Singular**.

First Declension.	Genitive Singular	ae
Second Declension.	“	ī
Third Declension.	“	īs
Fourth Declension.	“	ūs
Fifth Declension.	“	ēī

**52.** The **Stem** is that part of the word which remains after taking away the Inflections; its last letter is called the **Characteristic**.

**53.** The stem may be found from the **Genitive Plural**, in the *First, Second and Fifth Declensions* by cutting off **rūm**; in the *Third and Fourth* by cutting off **ūm**.

## 54. CASE-ENDINGS of the Five Declensions.\*

FIRST DECLENSION.		SECOND DECLENSION.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <b>ā</b> (ē, ās, ēs)	<b>ae</b>	<b>ūs, ěr, ĭr, ūr, ūm</b>	<b>ī, Neut. ā</b>
Gen. <b>ae</b> (ēs)	<b>ārŭm</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ōrŭm</b>
Dat. <b>ae</b>	<b>īs</b> (ābŭs)	<b>ō</b>	<b>īs</b>
Acc. <b>ām</b> (ēn)	<b>ās</b>	<b>ŭm</b>	<b>ōs, Neut. ā</b>
Voc. <b>ā</b> (ā, ē)	<b>ae</b>	<b>ĕ, ěr, ĭr, ūr, ūm</b>	<b>ī, Neut. ā</b>
Abl. <b>ā</b> (ē)	<b>īs</b> (ābŭs)	<b>ō</b>	<b>īs</b>

### THIRD DECLENSION.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom. <b>ā, ĕ, ĭ, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t, x</b>		<b>ēs, Neut. ā (īā)</b>
Gen. <b>īs</b>		<b>ŭm (īŭm)</b>
Dat. <b>ī</b>		<b>ībŭs</b>
Acc. <b>ēm (īm)</b>	<b>Neut. like Nom.</b>	<b>ēs, Neut. ā (īā)</b>
Voc. <b>like Nom.</b>		<b>ēs, Neut. ā (īā)</b>
Abl. <b>ĕ (ī)</b>		<b>ībŭs</b>

### FOURTH DECLENSION.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <b>ūs, ū</b>	<b>ūs, Neut. ūā</b>
Gen. <b>ūs</b>	<b>ŭŭm</b>
Dat. <b>ŭī, ū</b>	<b>ībŭs (ŭbŭs)</b>
Acc. <b>ŭm, ū</b>	<b>ūs, Neut. ūā</b>
Voc. <b>ūs, ū</b>	<b>ūs, Neut. ūā</b>
Abl. <b>ū</b>	<b>ībŭs (ŭbŭs)</b>

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

Singular.	Plural.
<b>ēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<b>ēī, ēī</b>	<b>ērŭm</b>
<b>ēī, ēī</b>	<b>ēbŭs</b>
<b>ēm</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<b>ēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<b>ō</b>	<b>ēbŭs</b>

55. The following are **General Rules** applying to all Declensions:

1. In both numbers the **Vocative** is the same as the **Nominative**, except in the singular of nouns in **ūs** of the *Second Declension*.

2. Neuters have the **Nominative**, **Accusative**, and **Vocative** alike in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, always end in **ā**.

3. The **Dative** and **Ablative plural** are always alike.

\* This *Synopsis* of Case-endings is embodied in AHN-HENN'S *Latin Paradigm Charts*, printed in large type and intended for permanent display on the wall.

## First Declension.

**56.** Latin nouns which have **ae** in the Genitive Singular, are of the **First Declension**: They have the Nominative *like the stem*, ending in **ā**.

### Singular.

Nom. men' **sā**, a table  
 Gen. men' **sae**, of a table  
 Dat. men' **sae**, to a table  
 Acc. men' **sām**, a table  
 Voc. men' **sā**, O table  
 Abl. men' **sā**, with a table

### Plural.

men' **sae**, tables  
 men **sā' rūm**, of tables  
 men' **sīs**, to tables  
 men' **sās**, tables  
 men' **sae**, O tables  
 men' **sīs**, with tables

**57.** The Latin has no Article; therefore *mensā* may be rendered *a table*, or *the table*, or *table*, according to the connection.

### Examples for Practice:

<i>lūnā</i> , -ae, the moon	<i>rānā</i> , -ae, a frog
<i>stellā</i> , -ae, a star	<i>terrā</i> , -ae, the earth, land
<i>viā</i> , -ae, a way, road	<i>ālaudā</i> , -ae, a lark
<i>insulā</i> , -ae, an island	<i>rōsā</i> , -ae, a rose
<i>nautā</i> , -ae, a sailor	<i>viōlā</i> , -ae, a violet [15-18] *

**58.** In composition with *pāter*, *māter*, *filiūs*, *filiā*, the word *fāmiliā* has in the Genitive Singular *fāmiliās*, e. g., *pāterfāmiliās*, the father of a family.

**59.** The Dative and Ablative Plural of *dēā*, a goddess, and *filiā*, a daughter, end in *ābūs*, viz.: *dēābūs*, *filiābūs*, to distinguish them from the same cases of *dēūs*, a god, and *filiūs*, a son.

### Greek Nouns.

**60.** To the **First Declension** belong also some Greek Nouns, ending in **ē**, **ās**, **ēs**. The declension of these nouns in the plural differs in no respect from that of Latin nouns of the First Declension.

### Singular.

Nom. ě pī' tō <b>mē</b> , epitome	bō' rě <b>ās</b> , north-wind	pŷ rī' <b>tēs</b> , flint
Gen. ě pī' tō <b>mēs</b>	bō' rě <b>ae</b>	pŷ rī' <b>tae</b>
Dat. ě pī' tō <b>mae</b>	bō' rě <b>ae</b>	pŷ rī' <b>tae</b>
Acc. ě pī' tō <b>mēn</b>	bō' rě <b>ām (ān)</b>	pŷ rī' <b>tēn</b>
Voc. ě pī' tō <b>mē</b>	bō' rě <b>ā</b>	pŷ rī' <b>tē</b>
Abl. ě pī' tō <b>mē</b>	bō' rě <b>ā</b>	pŷ rī' <b>tē</b>

\* These figures refer to the Exercises for translation in the *First*, *Second* and *Third Latin Books*.

**Examples for Practice:**

grammătícē, -ēs, <i>grammar</i>	Messīās, -ae, <i>the Messiah</i>
ălōē, -ēs, <i>the aloe</i>	Lūcās, -ae, <i>Luke</i>
mūsīcē, -ēs, <i>music</i>	cōmētēs, -ae, <i>a comet</i>

Many of them have also regular Latin forms, as: plānētēs and plānētā, *a planet*. [101. 102.]

**Rule of Gender.**

**61.** Nouns of the First Declension ending in **ā** and **ē** are feminine; those in **ās** and **ēs** are masculine.

**EXCEPTIONS.**

**62.** Nearly all the exceptions are such as are masculine from their signification, according to the **General Rule** above mentioned (**55. 1.**), as: nautā, *a sailor*; also Hădriă, *the Adriatic*.

**Second Declension.**

**63.** Latin nouns whose genitive is **ī**, are of the **Second Declension**. In the nominative they end in **ūs**, **ēr**, **īr**, **ūr**, **ūm**. Those ending in **ūm** are neuter, the rest are masculine.

**Singular.**

Nom.	flū' vī ūs, <i>a river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>a roof</i>
Gen.	flū' vī ī, <i>of a river</i>	tec' tī, <i>of a roof</i>
Dat.	flū' vī ō, <i>to a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>to a roof</i>
Acc.	flū' vī ūm, <i>a river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>a roof</i>
Voc.	flū' vī ē, <i>O river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>O roof</i>
Abl.	flū' vī ō, <i>with a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>with a roof</i>

**Plural.**

Nom.	flū' vī ī, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>roofs</i>
Gen.	flū' vī ō' rūm, <i>of rivers</i>	tec' tō' rūm, <i>of roofs</i>
Dat.	flū' vī īs, <i>to rivers</i>	tec' tīs, <i>to roofs</i>
Acc.	flū' vī ōs, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>roofs</i>
Voc.	flū' vī ī, <i>O rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>O roofs</i>
Abl.	flū' vī īs, <i>with rivers</i>	tec' tīs, <i>with roofs</i>

In Nouns of the **Second Declension** the stem ends in **ō-**, as: flūvīō-, tectō-, pŭĕrō-, āgrō-.

In the **Genitive Singular** **īī**, from Substantives in **īūs**, **īūm**, is often contracted into **ī**, the accent remaining unchanged, as:

Appīūs, Gen. Appī                      consīlīūm, Gen. consī'īī.

Examples for Practice:

dōmīnūs, -ī, a master, lord	caelūm, -ī, the heaven, sky
mundūs, -ī, the world	aurūm, -ī, gold
annūs, -ī, a year	ferrūm, -ī, iron
morbūs, -ī, a disease	mētallūm, -ī, a metal
ānimūs, -ī, the mind, soul	īnitūm, -ī, a beginning
discīpūlūs, -ī, a scholar, pupil	signūm, -ī, a sign
ventūs, -ī, the wind	īnsectūm, -ī, an insect
ēquūs, -ī, a horse	prātūm, -ī, a meadow
ōcūlūs, -ī, an eye	mendācīūm, -ī, a lie
hortūs, -ī, a garden	aedīfīcīūm, -ī, a building

[19. 20]

**64.** Words of the **Second Declension**, ending in the nominative in **ēr** (**īr**, **ūr**) have dropped the original ending **ūs** of the nominative. In most of them the **ě** is only inserted in the **Nominative** and **Vocative**, and disappears in the other cases.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ǎ' gěr, a field	ǎ' grī, fields
Gen.	ǎ' grī, of a field	ǎ' grō' rūm, of fields
Dat.	ǎ' grō, to a field	ǎ' grīs, to fields
Acc.	ǎ' grūm, a field	ǎ' grōs, fields
Voc.	ǎ' gěr, O field	ǎ' grī, O fields
Abl.	ǎ' grō, with a field	ǎ' grīs, with fields

Examples for Practice:

māgīstēr, -rī, a teacher, master	cultēr, -rī, a knife
lībēr, -rī, a book	āpēr, -rī, a wild boar
arbitēr, -rī, a judge	fābēr, -rī, a smith
austēr, -rī, the south wind	mīnistēr, -rī, a servant
cancēr, -rī, a crab	cāpēr, -rī, a goat

**65.** In other words ending in **ēr**, the **ě** of the **Nominative** belongs to the stem and is retained *through all the cases*, as:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	pŭ' ěr, a boy	pŭ' ě rī, boys
Gen.	pŭ' ě rī, of a boy	pŭ' ě rō' rūm, of boys
Dat.	pŭ' ě rō, to a boy	pŭ' ě rīs, to boys
Acc.	pŭ' ě rūm, a boy	pŭ' ě rōs, boys
Voc.	pŭ' ěr, O boy	pŭ' ě rī, O boys
Abl.	pŭ' ě rō, with a boy	pŭ' ě rīs, with boys

To this class belong:

**Substantives:** *ădultēr, -ī, an adulterer*    *gĕnĕr, -ī, a son-in-law*  
*pŭĕr, -ī, a boy*    *sŏcĕr, -ī, a father-in-law*  
*vespĕr, -ī, evening*    *Lībĕr, -ī, Bacchus*  
*libĕrī, -ŏrŭm, children*

**Adjectives:** *aspĕr, aspĕră, aspĕrŭm, rough*  
*lăcĕr, lăcĕră, lăcĕrŭm, torn*  
*mīsĕr, mīsĕră, mīsĕrŭm, wretched*  
*prospĕr, prospĕră, prospĕrŭm, prosperous*  
*tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrŭm, tender*  
*dextĕr, dext(ĕ)ră, dext(ĕ)rŭm, right.*

**Words ending in fĕr and gĕr from fĕrŏ, I bear, and gĕrŏ, I carry:**

*Lŭcĭfĕr, -ī, light-bringer*  
*armĭgĕr, -ī, an armor-bearer*  
*frŭgĭfĕr, frŭgĭfĕră, frŭgĭfĕrŭm, fruit-bearing*  
*lănĭgĕr, lănĭgĕră, lănĭgĕrŭm, wool-bearing.*

[23. 24.]

**66.** The only words in *īr* and *ūr* are: *vĭr, -ī, a man*, with its compounds, as: *lĕvĭr, -ī, a brother-in-law*, and the masculine of the adjective *sătŭr, -ă, -ŭm, sated.*

**67.** Proper Nouns in *īūs* omit *ĕ* in the **Vocative**, as: *Antŏ-nĭūs, Anthony, Antŏnĭ*; likewise *filĭūs, a son*, and *gĕnĭūs, a guardian angel*, make *filĭ* and *gĕnĭ*. The possessive *mĕūs, my*, (but not *mĕă, mĕŭm*) has *mĭ*, and *Dĕūs, God*, has *Dĕŭs*. In the plural **Nominative** and **Vocative**, *dĕŭs* has *dĭ* or *dĭ*; **Genitive**: *dĕŏrŭm*; **Dative** and **Ablative**: *dĭs, dĭs*.

**68.** In the **Genitive** plural of the **Second Declension** *ŭm* is often found for *ŏrŭm*, especially in certain words denoting money, measure, or weight, as: *nummŭm* for *nummŏrŭm, of moneys*; also in a few other words, as: *dĕŭm* for *dĕŏrŭm, libĕrŭm* for *libĕrŏrŭm*.

**69.** A few **Greek Nouns** of the **Second Declension** end in *ŏs, ŏn*, instead of *ŭs, ŭm*. Greek Nouns ending in *ĕŭs* (like *Orphĕus*) are thus declined:

Nom.	Or' phĕŭs	Dat.	Or' phĕ ŏ	Voc.	Or' phĕŭ
Gen.	Or' phĕ ĭ	Acc.	Or' phĕ ŭm	Abl.	Or' phĕ ŏ

[101. 102.]

**Rule of Gender.**

**70.** Nouns in **ūs**, **ēr**, **īr** are masculine; in **ūm** neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

**71.** Of nouns ending in **ūs** the names of towns, islands, and trees are **Feminine**, as: Cōrīnthūs, *Corinth*; Sāmūs, *Samos*; pōpūlūs, *a poplar*, etc. (**42**); also:

alvūs, -ī, *the belly*

hūmūs, -ī, *soil*

cōlūs, -ī, *a distaff*

vannūs, ī, *a van*

and many Greek words of frequent occurrence, as:

diphthongūs, -ī, *a diphthong*

mēthōdūs, -ī, *a method*

pārāgrāphūs, -ī, *a paragraph*

đialectūs, -ī, *a dialect*

The following in **ūs** are **Neuter**:

pēlāgūs, -ī, *the sea*; vulgūs, -ī, *the rabble*; vīrūs, -ī, *poison*;

their accusative, as of all neuters, is the same as the nominative, but they have no plural. [27. 28.]

**Adjectives in ūs, ā, ūm.**

**72.** Adjectives in **ūs**, **ā**, **ūm** are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine like substantives of the **First**.

bōnūs, bōnā, bōnūm, *good*

**Singular.**

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	bō' nūs	bō' nā	bō' nūm
Gen.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nī
Dat.	bō' nō	bō' nae	bō' nō
Acc.	bō' nūm	bō' nām	bō' nūm
Voc.	bō' nē	bō' nā	bō' nūm
Abl.	bō' nō	bō' nā	bō' nō

**Plural.**

Nom.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nā
Gen.	bō nō' rūm	bō nā' rūm	bō nō' rūm
Dat.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs
Acc.	bō' nōs	bō' nās	bō' nā
Voc.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nā
Abl.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs



Examples for Practice:

sēdūlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>busy</i>	mōdestūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>modest</i>
tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>timid</i>	bēātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>happy, blessed</i>
rōtundūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>round</i>	albūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>white</i>
ōdōrūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fragrant</i>	fulvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>yellow</i>
clārūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>bright, clear</i>	multūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>much, many</i>
lūcidūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shining</i>	magnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>great, large</i>
ardūūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>arduous, steep</i>	parvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>little, small</i>
umbrōsūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shady</i>	hūmānūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>human</i>
garrulūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>garrulous</i>	vērūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>true</i>

[21. 22.]

**73. Substantives and Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions** are combined in the following manner:

**Singular.**

Nom.	nau'tā lae'tūs, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Gen.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>of a merry sailor</i>
Dat.	nau'tae lae'tō, <i>to a merry sailor</i>
Acc.	nau'tām lae'tūm, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Voc.	nau'tā lae'tē, <i>O merry sailor</i>
Abl.	nau'tā lae'tō, <i>with a merry sailor</i>

**Plural.**

Nom.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>merry sailors</i>
Gen.	nautā'rūm laetō'rūm, <i>of merry sailors</i>
Dat.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>to merry sailors</i>
Acc.	nau'tās lae'tōs, <i>merry sailors</i>
Voc.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>O merry sailors</i>
Abl.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>with merry sailors</i>

**Singular.**

Nom.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Gen.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>of a moderate dinner</i>
Dat.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>to a moderate dinner</i>
Acc.	coe'nām mō'dicām, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Voc.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>O moderate dinner</i>
Abl.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>with a moderate dinner</i>

**Plural.**

Nom.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Gen.	coenā'rūm mō'dicā'rūm, <i>of moderate dinners</i>
Dat.	coe'nīs mō'dicīs, <i>to moderate dinners</i>
Acc.	coe'nās mō'dicās, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Voc.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>O moderate dinners</i>
Abl.	coe'nīs mō'dicīs, <i>with moderate dinners</i>

Singular.

Nom.	tec'tūm al'tūm, a high roof
Gen.	tec'tī al'tī, of a high roof
Dat.	tec'tō al'tō, to a high roof
Acc.	tec'tūm al'tūm, a high roof
Voc.	tec'tūm al'tūm, O high roof
Abl.	tec'tō al'tō, with a high roof

Plural.

Nom.	tec'tǎ al'tǎ, high roofs
Gen.	tectō'rūm altō'rūm, of high roofs
Dat.	tec'tīs al'tīs, to high roofs
Acc.	tec'tǎ al'tǎ, high roofs
Voc.	tec'tǎ al'tǎ, O high roofs
Abl.	tec'tīs al'tīs, with high roofs

Examples for Practice.

pōētǎ clārūs, a famous poet	flūvīūs lātūs, a broad river
formicǎ sēdulǎ, the busy ant	collūm longūm, a long neck.

Adjectives in ěr, ǎ, ūm.

74. Adjectives in ěr, ǎ, ūm, are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine, like substantives of the **First**.

nĭĝĕr, nĭgrǎ, nĭgrŭm, black

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	nĭ' ĝĕr	nĭ' grǎ	nĭ' grŭm
Gen.	nĭ' grĭ	nĭ' grae	nĭ' grĭ
Dat.	nĭ' grō	nĭ' grae	nĭ' grō
Acc.	nĭ' grŭm	nĭ' grām	nĭ' grŭm
Voc.	nĭ' ĝĕr	nĭ' grǎ	nĭ' grŭm
Abl.	nĭ' grō	nĭ' grǎ	nĭ' grō

Plural.

Nom.	nĭ' grĭ	nĭ' grae	nĭ' grǎ
Gen.	nĭ' grō' rŭm	nĭ' grǎ' rŭm	nĭ' grō' rŭm
Dat.	nĭ' grĭs	nĭ' grĭs	nĭ' grĭs
Acc.	nĭ' grōs	nĭ' grās	nĭ' grǎ
Voc.	nĭ' grĭ	nĭ' grae	nĭ' grǎ
Abl.	nĭ' grĭs	nĭ' grĭs	nĭ' grĭs

liběr, liběrá, liběrům, *free*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	lī' běr	lī' bě rá	lī' bě rům
Gen.	lī' bě rī	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rī
Dat.	lī' bě rō	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rō
Acc.	lī' bě rům	lī' bě rām	lī' bě rům
Voc.	lī' běr	lī' bě rá	lī' bě rům
Abl.	lī' bě rō	lī' bě rā	lī' bě rō

Plural.

Nom.	lī' bě rī	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rá
Gen.	lī' bě rō' rům	lī' bě rā' rům	lī' bě rō' rům
Dat.	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs
Acc.	lī' bě rōs	lī' bě rās	lī' bě rá
Voc.	lī' bě rī	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rá
Abl.	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs

75. Most adjectives in **ěr, ă, ũm** drop the **ě** before the **r** like **nīgěr**. Examples are:

aegěr, aegră, aegrům, *sick*  
 crėběr, crėbră, crėbrům, *frequent*  
 rüběr, rübră, rübrům, *red*  
 pulchěr, pulchră, pulchrům, *beautiful, fine*  
 sīnistěr, sīnistră, sīnistrům, *left*  
 pīgěr, pīgră, pīgrům, *lazy*  
 intėgěr, intėgră, intėgrům, *whole, entire*

76. A few adjectives in **ěr, ă, ũm** retain the **ě** throughout, like **liběr**. (See 65.) [25. 26.]

77. These nine adjectives have the genitive singular in **īūs**, and the dative in **ī** in all the genders:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Dative.
ălīūs, -ă, -ūd, <i>another</i>	ălīūs	ălīī
nullūs, -ă, -ūm, <i>no, not any, no one</i>	nullīūs	nullīī
sōlūs, -ă, -ūm, <i>alone</i>	sōlīūs	sōlīī
tōtūs, -ă, -ūm, <i>whole</i>	tōtīūs	tōtīī
ullūs, -ă, -ūm, <i>any</i>	ullīūs	ullīī
ūnūs, -ă, -ūm, <i>one</i>	ūnīūs	ūnīī
altěr, -ă, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>	altērīūs	altērīī
ūtěr, -ră, -rům, <i>which (of two)</i>	utrīūs	utrīī
neutěr, -ră, -rům, <i>neither</i>	neutrīūs	neutrīī

The plural is regular like that of **bōnūs**.

[71. 72.]

### Third Declension.

78. Nouns whose genitive ends in **īs**, are of the **Third Declension**. Their nominative ends in

**ǎ, ě, ĭ, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t,** and **x**.

79. In the Third Declension, the **stem** ends either in **ĭ** (**Vowel-stem**) or in a consonant (**Consonant-stem**). There are only two **u-stems**, *sū-s, a swine*, and *grū-s, a crane*. The stem can be found by cutting off **ŭm** from the **Genitive Plural**:

ǎvis, <i>a bird</i>	Gen. Plur. āvīŭm	Stem āvī-
lǎpīs, <i>a stone</i>	“ lǎpīdŭm	“ lǎpīd-

80. All nouns having the *same* number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (**Parisyllabic**) have **Vowel-stems** in **ĭ**. They end in the Nominative in **īs, ēs, ě, ǎl, ǎr**, those in **ǎl** and **ǎr** having lost a final **ě**.

Nom. nāvīs	Gen. nāvī-s	Nom. ǎnīmǎl(ě)	Gen. ǎnīmālī-s
“ nūbēs	“ nūbī-s	“ calcār(ě)	“ calcārī-s
“ mǎrě	“ mǎrī-s		

81. All nouns *increasing* in the Genitive (**Imparisyllabic**) have **Consonant-stems**:

Nom. lǎpīs	Gen. lǎpīd-īs	Nom. hŏmŏ	Gen. hŏmīn-īs
------------	---------------	-----------	---------------

### Formation of the Genitive.

82. The **Entire Declension** of any Substantive of the Third Declension may be readily formed by substituting for the Genitive-ending **īs**, the proper endings of the other cases. Hence to decline a word correctly, in this Declension, we need to know how its **Genitive** is formed.

But we must bear in mind that **Neuters** always form the **Accusative** and **Vocative** cases in both numbers like the **Nominative**, and the **Nominative Plural** in **ǎ**. *This is a rule of highest importance.*

83. Nouns in **ǎ** are **Neuters** of Greek origin and change **ǎ** into **ǎtīs** to form the genitive, as: *pŏēmǎ, pŏēmǎtīs*.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	pǒ ē' mā, <i>a poem</i>		pǒ ē' mā tā, <i>poems</i>
Gen.	pǒ ē' mā tīs, <i>of a poem</i>		pǒ ē' mā tūm, <i>of poems</i>
Dat.	pǒ ē' mā tī, <i>to a poem</i>		pǒ ē mā' tī būs, <i>to poems</i>
Acc.	pǒ ē' mā, <i>a poem</i>		pǒ ē' mā tā, <i>poems</i>
Voc.	pǒ ē' mā, <i>O poem</i>		pǒ ē' mā tā, <i>O poems</i>
Abl.	pǒ ē' mā tē, <i>with a poem</i>		pǒ ē mā' tī būs, <i>with poems</i>

**Examples for Practice:**

ārōmā, -tīs, *a spice*                      aenigmā, -tīs, *a riddle* [65. 66.]

**84.** Nouns in **ě** change **ě** into **īs** to form the genitive, as: rētě, rētīs. They are **Neuter**.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>		rē' tī ā, <i>nets</i>
Gen.	rē' tīs, <i>of a net</i>		rē' tī ūm, <i>of nets</i>
Dat.	rē' tī, <i>to a net</i>		rē' tī būs, <i>to nets</i>
Acc.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>		rē' tī ā, <i>nets</i>
Voc.	rē' tē, <i>O net</i>		rē' tī ā; <i>O nets</i>
Abl.	rē' tī, <i>with a net</i>		rē' tī būs, <i>with nets</i>

**Examples for Practice:**

mārě, -īs, *the sea, ocean*                      cūbīlē, -īs, *a lair*  
altārě, -īs, *an altar*                              conclāvě, -īs, *a room* [53. 54.]

**85.** Certain nouns ending in **ō** form their genitive by changing **ō** into **īnīs**, as: hōmō, hōmīnīs.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	hō' mō, <i>man</i>		hō' mī nēs, <i>men, people</i>
Gen.	hō' mī nīs, <i>of man</i>		hō' mī nūm, <i>of men</i>
Dat.	hō' mī nī, <i>to man</i>		hō mī' nī būs, <i>to men</i>
Acc.	hō' mī nēm, <i>man</i>		hō' mī nēs, <i>men</i>
Voc.	hō' mō, <i>O man</i>		hō' mī nēs, <i>O men</i>
Abl.	hō' mī nē, <i>with man</i>		hō mī' nī būs, <i>with men</i>

Thus we have:

hōmō, -īnīs, *man*                              turbō, -īnīs, *a whirlwind*  
nēmō, -īnīs, *nobody*                              Āpollō, -īnīs, *Apollo*

and nearly all the words in **dō** and **gō**, as:

ordō, -īnīs, *order*                              ĩmāgō, -īnīs, *an image*  
consuētūdō, -īnīs, *habit*                              pulchrītūdō, -īnīs, *beauty.*

**86.** Mark: cārō, *flesh*; carnīs, *gen. plur.: carnīum.*

**87.** All other words ending in **ō** change **ō** into **ōnīs** to form the genitive, as: **lēō, lēōnīs**.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	lē' ō, <i>a lion</i>		lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen.	lē ō' nīs, <i>of a lion</i>		lē ō' nūm, <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	lē ō' nī, <i>to a lion</i>		lē ō' nī būs, <i>to lions</i>
Acc.	lē ō' nēm, <i>a lion</i>		lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc.	lē' ō, <i>O lion</i>		lē ō' nēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	lē ō' nē, <i>with a lion</i>		lē ō' nī būs, <i>with lions</i>

Such are:

pāvō, -ōnīs, <i>a peacock</i>	āquīlō, -ōnīs, <i>the north wind</i>
pulmō, -ōnīs, <i>a lung</i>	pōtīō, -ōnīs, <i>a drink(ing)</i>

also a few in **dō** and **gō**, namely:

harpāgō, -ōnīs, <i>a grapple-hook</i>	praedō, -ōnīs, <i>a robber</i>
cōmēdō, -ōnīs, <i>a glutton</i>	līgō, -ōnīs, <i>a mattock</i>

[29—32.]

**Peculiar:** **Ānīō, -ēnīs, the river Anio.**

**88.** Nouns in **ī** and **ỹ** (Neuters of Greek origin) take **īs, ỹīs** in the genitive, as: **sīnāpī, -īs, mustard; mīsỹ, -ỹīs, copperas.**

**89.** Neuters in **e**: only **ālēc, ālēcīs, pickle; lāc, lactīs, milk.**

**90.** Nouns in **l** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	con' sūl, <i>a consul</i>		con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Gen.	con' sū līs, <i>of a consul</i>		con' sū lūm, <i>of the consuls</i>
Dat.	con' sū lī, <i>to a consul</i>		con sū' lī būs, <i>to the consuls</i>
Acc.	con' sū lēm, <i>a consul</i>		con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Voc.	con' sūl, <i>O consul</i>		con' sū lēs, <i>O consuls</i>
Abl.	con' sū lē, <i>with a consul</i>		con sū' lī būs, <i>with the consuls</i>

**Examples for Practice:**

sōl, sōlīs, <i>the sun</i>	exsūl, exsūlīs, <i>an exile</i>
sāl, sālīs, <i>salt</i>	pūgīl, pūgīlīs, <i>a pugilist</i>

**91.** Nouns in **āl** change **āl** to **ālīs** to form the genitive, as: **ānīmāl, animālīs.** They are **Neuter**.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>		ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Gen.	ā nī māl' līs, <i>of an animal</i>		ā nī māl' lī ūm, <i>of animals</i>
Dat.	ā nī māl' lī, <i>to an animal</i>		ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>to animals</i>
Acc.	ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>		ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Voc.	ā' nī māl, <i>O animal</i>		ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>O animals</i>
Abl.	ā nī māl' lī, <i>with an animal</i>		ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>with animals</i>

**Examples for Practice:**

vectīgāļ, -āļīs, a tax                      tribūnāļ, -āļīs, a tribunal

92. mēļ, honey, has mellīs, and the plural mellā; fēļ, gall, has fellīs, but is without a plural; both are **Neuter**. [53. 54.]

93. Nouns in **ēn** form their genitive by changing **ēn** into **īnīs**, as: carmēn, carmīnīs; Nouns in **ēn**, by adding **īs**, as: rēn, rēnīs. All in **mēn** are **Neuter**.

**Singular.**

**Plural.**

Nom.	car' mēn, a poem	car' mī nā, poems
Gen.	car' mī nīs, of a poem	car' mī nūm, of poems
Dat.	car' mī nī, to a poem	car mī' nī būs, to poems
Acc.	car' mēn, a poem	car' mī nā, poems
Voc.	car' mēn, O poem	car' mī nā, O poems
Abl.	car' mī nē, with a poem	car mī' nī būs, with poems

**Examples for Practice:**

nōmēn, -īnīs, a name	(rēn, rēnīs) usually pl.: rēnēs,
lūmēn, -īnīs, light	rēnūm, the kidneys
ōmēn, -īnīs, an omen	liēn, liēnīs, spleen
fulmēn, -īnīs, a thunder-bolt	splēn, splēnīs, spleen
grāmēn, -īnīs, grass	pectēn, -īnīs, a comb [59. 60.]

94. As a rule, nouns in **r**, viz. **ār, ēr, ōr, ūr**, add **īs** to form the genitive, subject, however, to the following variations:

Those in **ār** form the Genitive by changing **ār** into **ārīs**, as: calcār, calcārīs. They are **Neuter**.

**Singular.**

**Plural.**

Nom.	cal' cār, a spur	cal cā' rī ā, spurs
Gen.	cal cā' rīs, of a spur	cal cā' rī ūm, of spurs
Dat.	cal cā' rī, to a spur	cal cā' rī būs, to spurs
Acc.	cal' cār, a spur	cal cā' rī ā, spurs
Voc.	cal' cār, O spur	cal cā' rī ā, O spurs
Abl.	cal cā' rī, with a spur	cal cā' rī būs, with spurs

**Examples for Practice:**

exemplār, -ārīs, a model                      cochlēār, -ārīs, a spoon

95.

**EXCEPTIONS:**

**Neuter.**

**Masculine.**

nectār, -īs, nectar	Caesār, -īs, Caesar
hēpār, -ātīs, the liver	lār, lārīs, a household deity
fār, farrīs, corn	pār, pārīs, a pair [53. 54.]

**96.** Nouns in **ěr** and **ēr** add **īs** to form the genitive, as: **ansěr**, **ansěrīs**, *a goose*; **věr**, **věrīs**, *spring*; but **imběr**, *a shower*, the names of months in **běr**, and nouns in **těr**, except **lătěr**, *a brick*, change **ěr** into **rīs**, dropping the **ě** before the **r**, as: **pătěr**, **pătrīs**.

**Singular.**

Nom.	an' sěr, <i>a goose</i>	pă' těr, <i>a father</i>
Gen.	an' sě rīs, <i>of a goose</i>	pă' trīs, <i>of a father</i>
Dat.	an' sě rī, <i>to a goose</i>	pă' trī, <i>to a father</i>
Acc.	an' sě rēm, <i>a goose</i>	pă' trēm, <i>a father</i>
Voc.	an' sěr, <i>O goose</i>	pă' těr, <i>O father</i>
Abl.	an' sě rě, <i>with a goose</i>	pă' trě, <i>with a father</i>

**Plural.**

Nom.	an' sě rēs, <i>geese</i>	pă' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Gen.	an' sě rŭm, <i>of geese</i>	pă' trŭm, <i>of fathers</i>
Dat.	an sě' rī bŭs, <i>to geese</i>	pă' trī bŭs, <i>to fathers</i>
Acc.	an' sě rēs, <i>geese</i>	pă' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Voc.	an' sě rēs, <i>O geese</i>	pă' trēs, <i>O fathers</i>
Abl.	an sě' rī bŭs, <i>with geese</i>	pă' trī bŭs, <i>with fathers</i>

**Examples for Practice:**

passěr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>a sparrow</i>	mătěr, <b>-rīs</b> , <i>a mother</i>
mŭliěr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>a woman</i>	frătěr, <b>-rīs</b> , <i>a brother</i>
aggěr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>a rampart</i>	imběr, <b>-rīs</b> , <i>a shower</i>
lătěr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>a brick</i>	Septemběr, <b>-rīs</b> , <i>September</i>

**97.**

**Peculiar:**

itěr, itĭněrīs, <i>a way (Neuter)</i>	ăēr, ăěrīs, <i>the air</i>
Juppĭtěr, Jŏvīs, <i>Jove</i>	aethěr, aethěrīs, <i>the upper air</i>

**98.** A few have **ĭŭm**, instead of **ŭm**, in the Genitive plural: **imběr**, *a shower*, **imbrĭŭm**      **ŭtěr**, *a leather sack*, **ŭtrĭŭm**  
**lintěr**, *a boat*, **lintrĭŭm**      **ventěr**, *the belly*, **ventrĭŭm**

[37. 38.]

**99.** Nouns in **ōr** change **ōr** into **ōrīs** to form the genitive; as: **cōlōr**, **-ōrīs**.

**Singular.**

**Plural.**

Nom.	cō' lōr, <i>a color</i>	cō lō' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Gen.	cō lō' rīs, <i>of a color</i>	cō lō' rŭm, <i>of colors</i>
Dat.	cō lō' rī, <i>to a color</i>	cō lō' rī bŭs, <i>to colors</i>
Acc.	cō lō' rēm, <i>a color</i>	cō lō' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Voc.	cō' lōr, <i>O color</i>	cō lō' rēs, <i>O colors</i>
Abl.	cō lō' rě, <i>with a color</i>	cō lō' rī bŭs, <i>with colors</i>



Examples for Practice:

tīmōr, -ōrīs, <i>fear</i>	āmōr, -ōrīs, <i>love</i>
praeceptōr, -ōrīs, <i>a teacher</i>	sāpōr, -ōrīs, <i>taste</i>
auctōr, -ōrīs, <i>an author</i>	ōdōr, -ōrīs, <i>smell</i>
auditōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hearer</i>	clāmōr, -ōrīs, <i>a shout, noise</i>
ōrātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a speaker</i>	vēnātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hunter</i>

100. The following have **ō** short in the genitive:

arbōr, arbōrīs, <i>a tree</i>	Neut. {	marmōr, marmōrīs, <i>marble</i>
mēmōr, mēmōrīs, <i>mindful</i>		aequōr, aequōrīs, <i>the sea</i>
immēmōr, immēmōrīs, <i>forgetful</i>		ādōr, ādōrīs, <i>spelt</i>

101. Mark the **Neuter** cōr, cordīs, *heart*, and its Compounds:

concors, -dīs, <i>harmonious</i>	discors, -dīs, <i>discordant</i>
----------------------------------	----------------------------------

[33. 34.]

102. Nouns in **ūr** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive;

as: guttūr, guttūrīs; they are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>the throats</i>
Gen.	gut' tū rīs, <i>of the throat</i>	gut' tū rūm, <i>of the throats</i>
Dat.	gut' tū rī, <i>to the throat</i>	gut tū' rī būs, <i>to the throats</i>
Acc.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>the throats</i>
Voc.	gut' tūr, <i>O throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>O throats</i>
Abl.	gut' tū rē, <i>with the throat</i>	gut tū' rī būs, <i>with the throats</i>

103. These four change **ūr** into **ōrīs**, but are also **Neuter**:

ēbūr, -ōrīs, <i>ivory</i>	fēmūr, -ōrīs, <i>the thigh</i>
jēcūr, -ōrīs (jēcīnōrīs), <i>the liver</i>	rōbūr, -ōrīs, <i>strength</i>

[63. 64.]

104. There are **two Classes** of nouns in **s**:

- s after a vowel: **as, es, is, os, us, aus**
- s after a consonant: **ls, ns, rs; bs, ps, ms.**

105. Nouns in **ās** change **ās** into **ātīs** to form the genitive,

as: aetās, aetātīs; ānās, *a duck*, has ānātīs; vās, *a surety*, vādīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	ae' tās, <i>an age</i>	ae tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Gen.	ae tā' tīs, <i>of an age</i>	ae tā' tūm, <i>of ages</i>
Dat.	ae tā' tī, <i>to an age</i>	ae tā' tī būs, <i>to ages</i>
Acc.	ae tā' tēm, <i>an age</i>	ae tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Voc.	ae' tās, <i>O age</i>	ae tā' tēs, <i>O ages</i>
Abl.	ae tā' tē, <i>with an age</i>	ae tā' tī būs, <i>with ages</i>

Examples for Practice:

aestās, -ātīs, <i>summer</i>	paupertās, -ātīs, <i>poverty</i>
vōluptās, -ātīs, <i>pleasure</i>	vōluntās, -ātīs, <i>the will</i>
sōciētās, -ātīs, <i>society</i>	libertās, -ātīs, <i>liberty</i>
difficultās, -ātīs, <i>difficulty</i>	vārīētās, -ātīs, <i>variety</i>
cīvitās, -ātīs, <i>a state</i>	sānītās, -ātīs, <i>health</i>

106. The following in ās form their genitives differently:

Nom. ās, <i>a copper</i>	Gen. assīs	Gen. Pl. assīūm
mās, <i>a male</i>	mārīs	mārīūm
ādāmās, <i>a diamond</i>	ādāmantīs	
ēlēphās, <i>an elephant</i>	ēlēphantīs	
vās, <i>a vessel (Neuter)</i>	vāsīs, Pl. vāsā, -ōrūm (2d decl.)	

107. fās, *right*; nēfās, *wrong*, are Indeclinable. [39. 40.]

108. Nouns ending in ēs change ēs into īs to form the genitive, as: nūbēs, nūbīs (Vowel-stems). They have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive. Nouns in ēs increase in the genitive, changing ēs into ītīs, as: mīlēs, mīlītīs (Consonant-stems).

Singular.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>a soldier</i>
Gen. nū' bīs, <i>of a cloud</i>	mī' lī tīs, <i>of a soldier</i>
Dat. nū' bī, <i>to a cloud</i>	mī' lī tī, <i>to a soldier</i>
Acc. nū' bēm, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lī tēm, <i>a soldier</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>O soldier</i>
Abl. nū' bē, <i>with a cloud</i>	mī' lī tē, <i>with a soldier</i>

Plural.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Gen. nū' bī ūm, <i>of clouds</i>	mī' lī tūm, <i>of soldiers</i>
Dat. nū' bī būs, <i>to clouds</i>	mī lī' tī būs, <i>to soldiers</i>
Acc. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>O soldiers</i>
Abl. nū' bī būs, <i>with clouds</i>	mī lī' tī būs, <i>with soldiers</i>

Examples for Practice:

fāmēs, -īs, <i>hunger</i>	cōmēs, -ītīs, <i>a companion</i>
clādēs, -īs, <i>defeat</i>	mergēs, -ītīs, <i>a sheaf</i>
vulpēs, -īs, <i>a fox</i>	pēdēs, -ītīs, <i>a foot-soldier</i>
sēdēs, -īs, <i>a seat</i>	ēquēs, -ītīs, <i>a horseman</i>

**109. EXCEPTIONS.** The following in *ēs* and *ēs* increase in the genitive in different ways (*ēt-īs, ēt-īs, ēd-īs, ēd-īs, id-īs, ēr-īs*).

<i>ābīēs, -ētīs, the silver fir</i>	<i>pēs, pēdīs, a foot</i>
<i>āriēs, -ētīs, a ram</i>	<i>quādrūpēs, -ēdīs, four-footed</i>
<i>pārīēs, -ētīs, a wall</i>	<i>compēs, -ēdīs, a fetter</i>
<i>interprēs, -ētīs, an interpreter</i>	<i>hērēs, -ēdīs, an heir</i>
<i>sēgēs, -ētīs, a crop</i>	<i>mercēs, -ēdīs, a reward</i>
<i>tēgēs, -ētīs, a covering</i>	<i>obsēs, -īdīs, a hostage</i>
<i>quīēs, -ētīs, rest</i>	<i>praesēs, -īdīs, a president</i>
<i>lōcūplēs, -ētīs, wealthy</i>	<i>Cērēs, -ērīs, Ceres</i> [45. 46.]

**110.** Mark the solitary nouns:

<i>aes, aerīs, brass (Neuter)</i>	<i>praes, praedīs, surety</i>
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------

**111.** The majority of nouns ending in *īs* have **Vowel-stems**, and form their genitive in *īs*, with an equal number of syllables. They have the nominative and genitive singular alike.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>ā' vīs, a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs, birds</i>
Gen.	<i>ā' vīs, of a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī ūm, of birds</i>
Dat.	<i>ā' vī, to a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs, to birds</i>
Acc.	<i>ā' vēm, a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs, birds</i>
Voc.	<i>ā' vīs, O bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs, O birds</i>
Abl.	<i>ā' vē, with a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs, with birds</i>

**Examples for Practice:**

<i>amnīs, -, a river</i>	<i>fēlīs, -, a cat</i>	<i>ōvīs, -, a sheep</i>
<i>āpīs, -, a bee</i>	<i>finīs, -, an end</i>	<i>pānīs, -, bread</i>
<i>aurīs, -, the ear</i>	<i>hostīs, -, an enemy</i>	<i>piscīs, -, a fish</i>
<i>cānīs, -, a dog</i>	<i>ignīs, -, fire</i>	<i>tīgrīs, -, a tiger</i>
<i>cīvīs, -, a citizen</i>	<i>mensīs, -, a month</i>	<i>vallīs, -, a valley</i>
<i>classīs, -, a fleet</i>	<i>nātālīs, -, a birthday</i>	<i>vermīs, -, a worm</i>
<i>collīs, -, a hill</i>	<i>nāvīs, -, a ship</i>	<i>vestīs, -, a dress</i>

**112.** Others in *īs* and *īs* have **Consonant-stems** increasing in the genitive in different ways (*īd-īs, it-īs, ēr-īs, īr-īs, īn-īs*).

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>lā' pīs, a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs, stones</i>
Gen.	<i>lā' pī dīs, of a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dūm, of stones</i>
Dat.	<i>lā' pī dī, to a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs, to stones</i>
Acc.	<i>lā' pī dēm, a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs, stones</i>
Voc.	<i>lā' pīs, O stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs, O stones</i>
Abl.	<i>lā' pī dē, with a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs, with stones</i>

To this class belong:

cassīs, cassīdīs, *a helmet*  
 lāpīs, lāpīdīs, *a stone*  
 cīnīs, cīnērīs, *ashes*  
 pulvīs, pulvērīs, *dust*  
 cuspīs, cuspīdīs, *a spear*  
 vōmīs, vōmērīs, *a plowshare*

līs, lītīs, *a quarrel*  
 sanguīs, sanguīnīs, *blood*  
 glīs, glīrīs, *a dormouse*  
 Samnīs, Samnītīs, *a Samnite*  
 tȳrannīs, tȳrannīdīs, *tyranny*

**113.** exsanguīs, -ĕ, *bloodless*, though a compound of sangūīs, has in the genitive exsangūīs (*parisyllabic*).

**114.** Mark the special paradigm of vīs, *force*:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	vīs, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs,	<i>forces</i>
Gen.	—	vī' rī ūm,	<i>of forces</i>
Dat.	—	vī' rī būs,	<i>to forces</i>
Acc.	vīm, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs,	<i>forces</i>
Voc.	vīs, <i>O force</i>	vī' rēs,	<i>O forces</i>
Abl.	vī, <i>by force</i>	vī' rī būs,	<i>with forces</i> [41 - 44.]

**115.** Some Nouns in ōs form their genitive by changing ōs into ōrīs, others by changing ōs into ōtīs. Thus, we have:

ōs, ōrīs	ōs, ōtīs
fłōs, -ōrīs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, -ōtīs, <i>a dowry</i>
mōs, -ōrīs, <i>custom</i>	cōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grindstone</i>
rōs, -ōrīs, <i>dew</i>	nĕpōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grandchild</i>
lĕpōs, -ōrīs, <i>charm, wit</i>	rhīnōcĕrōs, -ōtīs, <i>a rhinoceros</i>
ōs, ōrīs, <i>the mouth (Neuter)</i>	sācerdōs, -ōtīs, <i>a priest</i>

Singular.

Nom.	fłōs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, <i>a dowry</i>
Gen.	fłō' rīs, <i>of a flower</i>	dō' tīs, <i>of a dowry</i>
Dat.	fłō' rī, <i>to a flower</i>	dō' tī, <i>to a dowry</i>
Acc.	fłō' rĕm, <i>a flower</i>	dō' tĕm, <i>a dowry</i>
Voc.	fłōs, <i>O flower</i>	dōs, <i>O dowry</i>
Abl.	fłō' rĕ, <i>with a flower</i>	dō' tĕ, <i>with a dowry</i>

Plural.

Nom.	fłō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Gen.	fłō' rūm, <i>of flowers</i>	dō' tūm, <i>of dowries</i>
Dat.	fłō' rī būs, <i>to flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>to dowries</i>
Acc.	fłō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Voc.	fłō' rēs, <i>O flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>O dowries</i>
Abl.	fłō' rī būs, <i>with flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>with dowries</i>

**116.**

**Peculiar:**

custōs, custōdīs, <i>a keeper</i>	compōs, compōtīs, <i>capable</i>
ōs, ossīs, <i>a bone (Neuter);</i>	bōs, bōvīs, <i>an ox; Plur. N. bōvēs;</i>
Gen. Plur. ossīūm	G. bōūm; D. bōbūs or būbūs

**117.** A few masculine Greek nouns in ōs have ōīs, as:

hērōs, -ōīs, <i>a hero</i>	Trōs, -ōīs, <i>a Trojan</i> [35. 36.]
----------------------------	---------------------------------------

**118.** Of **Feminine Nouns** in ūs, some change ūs into ūtīs, others into ūdīs to form the genitive; as: virtūs, virtūtīs; pālūs, pālūdīs.

**Singular.**

**Plural.**

Nom. vir' tūs, <i>virtue</i>	vir tū' tēs, <i>virtues</i>
Gen. vir tū' tīs, <i>of virtue</i>	vir tū' tūm, <i>of virtues</i>
Dat. vir tū' tī, <i>to virtue</i>	vir tū' tī būs, <i>to virtues</i>
Acc. vir tū' tēm, <i>virtue</i>	vir tū' tēs, <i>virtues</i>
Voc. vir' tūs, <i>O virtue</i>	vir tū' tēs, <i>O virtues</i>
Abl. vir tū' tē, <i>with virtue</i>	vir tū' tī būs, <i>with virtues</i>

sālūs, -ūtīs, <i>safety, welfare</i>	sēnectūs, -ūtīs, <i>old age</i>
servītūs, -ūtīs, <i>slavery</i>	pālūs, -ūdīs, <i>a marsh</i>
jūventūs, -ūtīs, <i>youth</i>	incūs, -ūdīs, <i>an anvil</i>

**119.** tellūs, *earth*, has tellūrīs, pēcūs, *a head of cattle, an animal*, pēcūdīs, and Vēnūs, *the goddess Venus*, Vēnērīs.

**120.** Notice the following names of animals in us:

mūs, mūrīs, <i>a mouse; Gen. Plur.</i>	grūs, grūīs, <i>a crane</i>
mūrīūm	sūs, sūīs, <i>a swine; Dat. Plur.</i>
lēpūs, lēpōrīs, <i>a hare</i>	sūbūs (instead of sūībūs)

[51. 52.]

**121.** Of **Neuter Nouns** in ūs of two or more syllables, some change ūs into ōrīs to form the genitive, as: corpūs, corpōrīs; others change ūs into ěrīs, as: ōpūs, ōpěrīs. All monosyllables, with long ū, form their genitive in ūrīs, as: jūs, jūrīs.

**Singular.**

**Plural.**

Nom. cor' pūs, <i>a body</i>	cor' pō rā, <i>bodies</i>
Gen. cor' pō rīs, <i>of a body</i>	cor' pō rūm, <i>of bodies</i>
Dat. cor' pō rī, <i>to a body</i>	cor pō' rī būs, <i>to bodies</i>
Acc. cor' pūs, <i>a body</i>	cor' pō rā, <i>bodies</i>
Voc. cor' pūs, <i>O body</i>	cor' pō rā, <i>O bodies</i>
Abl. cor' pō rē, <i>with a body</i>	cor pō' rī būs, <i>with bodies</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rǎ, <i>works</i>
Gen.	ō' pē rīs, <i>of a work</i>	ō' pē rūm, <i>of works</i>
Dat.	ō' pē rī, <i>to a work</i>	ō pē' rī būs, <i>to works</i>
Acc.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rǎ, <i>works</i>
Voc.	ō' pūs, <i>O work</i>	ō' pē rǎ, <i>O works</i>
Abl.	ō' pē rē, <i>with a work</i>	ō pē' rī būs, <i>with works</i>
Nom.	jūs, <i>right, law</i>	jū' rǎ, <i>rights</i>
Gen.	jū' rīs, <i>of right</i>	jū' rūm, <i>of rights</i>
Dat.	jū' rī, <i>to right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>to rights</i>
Acc.	jūs, <i>right</i>	jū' rǎ, <i>rights</i>
Voc.	jūs, <i>O right</i>	jū' rǎ, <i>O rights</i>
Abl.	jū' rē, <i>with right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>with rights</i>

Examples for Practice:

frīgūs, -ōrīs, <i>cold</i>	mūnūs, -ērīs, <i>an office, gift</i>
tempūs, -ōrīs, <i>a time</i>	gēnūs, -ērīs, <i>a kind, race</i>
litūs, -ōrīs, <i>a shore</i>	ōnūs, -ērīs, <i>a burden</i>
dēcūs, -ōrīs, <i>an ornament</i>	sīdūs, -ērīs, <i>a star, constella-</i>
nēmūs, -ōrīs, <i>a grove</i>	scēlūs, -ērīs, <i>a crime</i> [tion
pectūs, -ōrīs, <i>the breast</i>	erūs, -ūrīs, <i>the leg</i>
vulnūs, -ērīs, <i>a wound</i>	rūs, -ūrīs, <i>the country</i>

[61. 62.]

122. The following Greek nouns in **us** (Masculine and Feminine) deserve special notice:

Trápēzūs, -untīs, <i>Trebizond</i>	Oedīpūs, -ōdīs, <i>Oedipus</i>
trīpūs, -ōdīs, <i>a tripod</i>	pōlŷpūs, -ī, <i>a polyp</i> (2d decl.)

123. The only two nouns in **aus** are *laus*, *laudīs*, *praise*, and *fraus*, *fraudīs*, *fraud*; *fraus* has *fraudūm* or *fraudīūm* in the genitive plural. [51.]

124. Nouns ending in **bs**, **ps**, and **ms** change **s** final into **īs** to form the genitive; as: *urbs*, *urbīs*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	urbs, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Gen.	ur' bīs, <i>of a city</i>	ur' bī ūm <i>of cities</i>
Dat.	ur' bī, <i>to a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>to cities</i>
Acc.	ur' bēm, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Voc.	urbs, <i>O city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>O cities</i>
Abl.	ur' bē, <i>with a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>with cities</i>

Examples for Practice:

plebs, plēbīs, *the populace* stirps, stirpīs, *a stem*  
trabs, trābīs, *a beam* hīems, hīēmīs, *winter*

125. A few are subject to a variation of the radical vowel:

ādeps, ādīpīs, *lard* auceps, aucūpīs, *a fowler*  
caelebs, caelībīs, *unmarried*

126. Compounds in **ceps** from **cāpīō** have **cīpīs**, as:

princeps, -cīpīs, *a chief* particeps, -cīpīs, *sharing*

Compounds in **ceps** from **cāpūt** have **cīpītīs**, as:

anceps, -cīpītīs, *double* praeceps, -cīpītīs, *steep*

127. All nouns ending in **ls**, **rs**, and **ns** change **s** final into **tīs** to form the genitive; as: pars, partīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	pars, <i>a part, side</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Gen.	par' tīs, <i>of a part</i>	par' tī ūm, <i>of parts</i>
Dat.	par' tī, <i>to a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>to parts</i>
Acc.	par' tēm, <i>a part</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Voc.	pars, <i>O part</i>	par' tēs, <i>O parts</i>
Abl.	par' tē, <i>with a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>with parts</i>

Examples for Practice:

mors, -tīs, *death* gens, -tīs, *a tribe, people*  
infans, -tīs, *a babe, child* frons, -tīs, *the forehead, brow*  
ars, -tīs, *art* pārens, -tīs, *a parent*

128. Only three have **dīs** in the genitive, namely:

frons, -dīs, *foliage*; glans, -dīs, *an acorn*; juglans, -dīs, *a walnut*  
[47. 48.]

129. There is only one noun in **t** (Neuter):

cāpūt, cāpītīs, *the head*, and its Compounds. [63.]

130. Nouns in **x** form their genitive by resolving **x** into **cs** or

**gs** and changing final **s** into **īs**, as: dux (= ducs), dūcīs; rex (= regs), rēgīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	dux, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Gen.	dū' cīs, <i>of a leader</i>	dū' cūm, <i>of leaders</i>
Dat.	dū' cī, <i>to a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>to leaders</i>
Acc.	dū' cēm, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Voc.	dūx, <i>O leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>O leaders</i>
Abl.	dū' cē, <i>with a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>with leaders</i>

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	rex, <i>a king</i>		rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Gen.	rē' gīs, <i>of a king</i>		rē' gūm, <i>of kings</i>
Dat.	rē' gī, <i>to a king</i>		rē' gī būs, <i>to kings</i>
Acc.	rē' gēm, <i>a king</i>		rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Voc.	rex, <i>O king</i>		rē' gēs, <i>O kings</i>
Abl.	rē' gē, <i>with a king</i>		rē' gī būs, <i>with kings</i>

**131.** Nouns in **x** with preceding consonant change **x** into **cīs**:

falx, -cīs, <i>a sickle</i>	arx, -cīs, <i>a citadel</i>
merx, -cīs, <i>merchandise</i>	lanx, -cīs, <i>a dish</i>

**132.** Nouns in **ax** have **ācīs**, as: pax, pācīs, *peace*.

EXCEPTION: fax, fācīs, *a torch*.

**133.** Nouns in **ex** have commonly **īcīs**, as:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	jū' dex, <i>a judge</i>		jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Gen.	jū' dī cīs, <i>of a judge</i>		jū' dī cūm, <i>of judges</i>
Dat.	jū' dī cī, <i>to a judge</i>		jū' dī' cī būs, <i>to judges</i>
Acc.	jū' dī cēm, <i>a judge</i>		jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Voc.	jū' dex, <i>O judge</i>		jū' dī cēs, <i>O judges</i>
Abl.	jū' dī cē, <i>with a judge</i>		jū' dī' cī būs, <i>with judges</i>

EXCEPTIONS:

lex, lēgīs, <i>a law</i>	rēmex, rēmīgīs, <i>a rower</i>
rex, rēgīs, <i>a king</i>	sēnex, sēnīs, <i>an old man</i>
grex, grēgīs, <i>a flock</i>	sūpellex, sūpellectīlīs, <i>furniture</i>
nex, nēcīs, <i>murder</i>	vervex, vervēcīs, <i>a wether</i>
	faex, faecīs, <i>lees</i>

**134.** Nouns in **ix** have **īcīs**, and less frequently **īcīs**, as:

cīcātrix, -īcīs, <i>a wound</i>	pix, -īcīs, <i>pitch</i>
cornix, -īcīs, <i>a crow</i>	cālix, -īcīs, <i>a cup</i>
rādix, -īcīs, <i>a root</i>	fornix, -īcīs, <i>an arch</i>
nūtrix, -īcīs, <i>a nurse</i>	appendix, -īcīs, <i>an appendix</i>

But nix, snow, has nīvīs.

**135.** Nouns in **ox** have **ōcīs**, as: vox, vōcīs, *a voice*.

EXCEPTIONS:

praecox, praecōcīs, *premature*      nox, noctīs, *night*  
and a few national names in **ox**, as:

Cappādox, -ōcīs, *a Cappadocian*

Allōbrox, -ōgīs, *one of the Allobroges*.



**136.** Nouns in **ux** have **ŭcĭs**, as: **dux**, **dŭcĭs**, *a leader*.

EXCEPTIONS:

lux, lŭcĭs, <i>light</i>	conjux, conjŭgĭs, <i>a spouse</i>
Pollux, Pollŭcĭs, <i>Pollux</i>	frux, frŭgĭs, <i>fruit</i>
fauz, faucĭs, <i>the throat</i>	

[49. 50.]

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

**137.** Certain adjectives of the **Third Declension** have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender — others two, the masculine and feminine being the same — others but one, the same for all genders.

**138.** Adjectives of three terminations end in **ĕr**, **ĭs**, **ĕ**, and are declined like **pătĕr**, **ăvĭs**, **mărĕ**, respectively. All drop the **ĕ** before **r** in declension, except **cĕlĕr**, **cĕlĕrĭs**, **cĕlĕrĕ**, *swift*, which retains it.

ăcĕr, ăcrĭs, ăcrĕ, *sharp, keen*

	Singular.		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ă' cĕr	ă' crĭs	ă' crĕ
Gen.	ă' crĭs	ă' crĭs	ă' crĭs
Dat.	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ
Acc.	ă' crĕm	ă' crĕm	ă' crĕ
Voc.	ă' cĕr	ă' crĭs	ă' crĕ
Abl.	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ
	Plural.		
Nom.	ă' crĕs	ă' crĕs	ă' crĭ ă
Gen.	ă' crĭ ŭm	ă' crĭ ŭm	ă' crĭ ŭm
Dat.	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs
Acc.	ă' crĕs	ă' crĕs	ă' crĭ ă
Voc.	ă' crĕs	ă' crĕs	ă' crĭ ă
Abl.	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs

Examples for Practice :

terrestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>terrestrial</i>	silvestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>woody</i>
pălustĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>marshy</i>	campestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>level</i>
cĕlĕbĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>famous</i>	ĕquestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>equestrian</i>
ălăcĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>lively</i>	sălŭbĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>healthy</i>
pŭtĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>putrid</i>	vŭlŭcĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>winged</i>

**139.** Adjectives of two terminations end in **īs**, **ě**, and **ör**, **ūs** (Comparatives), and are thus declined:

		tristīs, tristě, <i>sad</i>			
		Singular.		Plural.	
	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	tri' stīs	tri' stě		tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Gen.	tri' stīs	tri' stīs		tri' stī ūm	tri' stī ūm
Dat.	tri' stī	tri' stī		tri' stī būs	tri' stī būs
Acc.	tri' stēm	tri' stě		tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Voc.	tri' stīs	tri' stě		tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Abl.	tri' stī	tri' stī		tri' stī būs	tri' stī būs

**Examples for Practice:**

sūāvīs, -ě, <i>pleasant</i>	instābilīs, -ě, <i>unsteady</i>	omnīs, -ě, <i>all, every</i>
dulcīs, -ě, <i>sweet</i>	hūmilīs, -ě, <i>low</i>	similīs, -ě, <i>like</i>
brēvīs, -ě, <i>short</i>	mortālīs, -ě, <i>mortal</i>	fācilīs, -ě, <i>easy</i>

[55. 56.]

dūrīör, dūriūs, *harder*

		Singular.		Plural.	
	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	dū' rī ör	dū' rī ūs		dū rī ö' rēs	dū rī ö' rā
Gen.	dū rī ö' rīs	dū rī ö' rīs		dū rī ö' rūm	dū rī ö' rūm
Dat.	dū rī ö' rī	dū rī ö' rī		dū rī ö' rī būs	dū rī ö' rī būs
Acc.	dū rī ö' rēm	dū' rī ūs		dū rī ö' rēs	dū rī ö' rā
Voc.	dū' rī ör	dū' rī ūs		dū rī ö' rēs	dū rī ö' rā
Abl.	dū rī ö' rě	dū rī ö' rě		dū rī ö' rī būs	dū rī ö' rī būs

**Examples for Practice:**

excelsiör, -ūs, <i>higher</i>	ācriör, -ūs, <i>sharper</i>	mēliör, -ūs, <i>better</i>
libēriör, -ūs, <i>freer</i>	lēviör, -ūs, <i>lighter</i>	cāriör, -ūs, <i>dearer</i>
pulchriör, -ūs, <i>finer</i>	fēliciör, -ūs, <i>happier</i>	hēbētiör, -ūs, <i>duller</i>

[73. 74.]

**140.** As a rule, adjectives in **ör**, **īs**, **ě**, and **ūs**, **ě** form their ablative singular in **ī**, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter in **īā**, and the genitive plural in **īūm**; *cělēr*, *swift*, has *cělērūm*.

**141.** Adjectives of one termination have the same forms in all genders, except that in the accusative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine. They end in **l**, **r**, **s**, **x**, and are declined like substantives of the Third Declension.

fēlix, *happy, fortunate*      prūdēns, *prudent, sensible*

Singular.

	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	fē' lix	fē' lix	prū' dens	prū' dens
Gen.	fē' lī' cīs		prū' den' tīs	
Dat.	fē' lī' cī		prū' den' tī	
Acc.	fē' lī' cēm	fē' lix	prū' den' tēm	prū' dens
Voc.	fē' lix		prū' dens	
Abl.	fē' lī' cī		prū' den' tī	

Plural.

Nom.	fē' lī' cēs	fē' lī' cī ā	prū' den' tēs	prū' den' tī ā
Gen.	fē' lī' cī ūm		prū' den' tī ūm	
Dat.	fē' lī' cī būs		prū' den' tī būs	
Acc.	fē' lī' cēs	fē' lī' cī ā	prū' den' tēs	prū' den' tī ā
Voc.	fē' lī' cēs	fē' lī' cī ā	prū' den' tēs	prū' den' tī ā
Abl.	fē' lī' cī būs		prū' den' tī būs	

Examples for Practice:

mendax, -ācīs, <i>lying</i>	sāpiēns, -tīs, <i>wise</i>
lōquax, -ācīs, <i>loquacious</i>	pātēns, -tīs, <i>open</i>
rāpax, -ācīs, <i>rapacious</i>	diligēns, -tīs, <i>diligent</i>
vēlox, -ōcīs, <i>swift</i>	clēmēns, -tīs, <i>mild</i>

[57. 58.]

142. As a rule, adjectives of one termination have *ī* in the ablative singular, but to this there are many exceptions. The neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural ends in *īā*, and the genitive in *īūm* (see 144—147).

Remarks on Certain Cases.

Accusative Singular.

143. The **Accusative** in *īm* is found *exclusively*:

1. in Greek nouns in *īs*, as: *bāsīs, a base, bāsīm*;
2. in names of rivers and towns in *īs*, as: *Tībērīs, the Tiber, Tībērīm*; *Nēāpōlīs, Naples, Nēāpōlīm*;
3. in *āmussīs, a mason's rule, āmussīm*; *rāvīs, hoarseness, rāvīm*; *sītīs, thirst, sītīm*; *tussīs, a cough, tussīm*; *vīs, force, vīm*; and is regarded as *preferable*:
4. in *fēbrīs, a fever, fēbrīm (fēbrēm)*; *pelvīs, a basin, pelvīm (pelvēm)*; *puppīs, the stern, puppīm (puppēm)*; *restīs, a rope, restīm (restēm)*; *turrīs, a tower, turrīm (turrēm)*; *sēcūrīs, an axe, sēcūrīm (sēcūrēm)*.

**Ablative Singular.**

**144.** The Ablative in **ī** is found *exclusively*:

1. in all nouns which have or *may* have the accusative in **īm**, and in *clāvīs*, a *key*, Abl. *clāvī*; *nāvīs*, a *ship*, Abl. *nāvī*; *imbēr*, a *shower*, Abl. *imbrī*; *occipūt*, the *back part of the head*, Abl. *occipitī*;

2. in neuter nouns in **ě**, and those in **āl** and **ār** which have **ā** long in the genitive; also in *pār*, *pāris*, a *pair*, Abl. *pārī*;

3. in those Substantives in **īs** and **ěr** which are originally Adjectives, as: *fāmiliārīs*, a *friend*, Abl. *fāmiliārī*; also in the names of the months, as: *Septembēr*, *September*, Abl. *Septembrī*; but *jūvėnīs*, a *youth*, *aedilīs*, an *aedile*, have ablative in **ě**, *jūvėně*, *aedilě*.

4. In all Adjectives of the Third Declension, including Participial Adjectives in **ans** and **ens**; but to this, there are many exceptions:

paupěr, <i>poor</i>	Abl. paupěrě	caelebs, <i>single</i>	Abl. caelībě
dėsės, <i>indolent</i>	“ dėsídě	dīvės, <i>rich</i>	“ dīvítě
pūběr, <i>adult</i>	“ pūběrě	větūs, <i>old</i>	“ větěrě
sospěs, <i>safe</i>	“ sospítě	princeps, <i>first</i>	“ princípě
compōs, <i>possessed of</i>	“ compōtě	particeps, <i>sharing</i>	“ partícipě
	superstěs, <i>surviving</i>	Abl. superstítě	

All Comparatives, as: *altīōr*, *higher*, Abl. *altīōrě*;

Participles, when used as such or as Substantives, as: *sāpiens*, a *wise man*, Abl. *sāpiětě*; but *vīr sāpiens* has ablative *vīrō sāpiětī*;

Adjectives used as proper names, as: *Jūvėnālīs*, *Juvenal*, Abl. *Jūvėnālě*.

[59. 60.]

**Nominative Plural.**

**145.** Such Neuters of Nouns, Adjectives and Participles as have **ī** in the Ablative singular form their **Nominative Plural** in **īā** instead of **ā**.

Of Adjectives having **ě** in the ablative singular, only *větūs* has a neuter of the plural, *větěrā*. Of Comparatives, *complūrės*, *several*, has *complūrā* and *complūrīā*.

**Genitive Plural.**

**146.** The **Genitive Plural** in **īūm** is found:

1. in all nouns having **ī** in the ablative singular (see above **144.**);

2. in all nouns in **ēr**, **īs**, and **ēs** having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive (*parisyllabic*), and in all pure Latin words in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant, except the following which retain **ūm** in the genitive plural:

	Gen. Plural.		Gen. Plural.
vātēs, <i>a prophet</i>	vātūm	pātēr, <i>a father</i>	pātrūm
strūēs, <i>a heap</i>	strāūm	mātēr, <i>a mother</i>	mātrūm
sēdēs, <i>a seat</i>	sēdūm	frātēr, <i>a brother</i>	frātrūm
cānīs, <i>a dog</i>	cānūm	accīpītēr, <i>a hawk</i>	accīpitrūm
pānīs, <i>bread</i>	pānūm	ādeps, <i>fat</i>	ādīpūm
jūvēnīs, <i>a youth</i>	jūvēnūm	(ops), <i>help</i>	ōpūm
vōlūcrīs, <i>a bird</i>	vōlūcrūm	hiems, <i>winter</i>	hiēmūm

3. in the following words:

mās, <i>a male</i>	mārīūm	nox, <i>the night</i>	noctīūm
mūs, <i>a mouse</i>	mūrīūm	jūs, <i>right</i>	jūrīūm
glīs, <i>a dormouse</i>	glīrīūm	nix, <i>snow</i>	nīvīūm
līs, <i>a quarrel</i>	litīūm	ōs, <i>a bone</i>	ossīūm
vīs, <i>force</i>	vīrīūm	ās, <i>an as (Roman coin)</i>	assīūm
cārō, <i>flesh</i>	carnīūm	(faux), <i>the throat</i>	fauciūm

4. in names of nations in **ās**, **-ātīs**; **īs**, **-ītīs**, as:

Arpīnās, <i>an Arpinian</i>	Gen. Plural.	Arpīnātīūm
Samnīs, <i>a Samnite</i>	“ “	Samnitīūm

and likewise in:

pēnātēs, <i>penates</i>	“ “	pēnātīūm
optīmātēs, <i>the aristocrats</i>	“ “	optīmātīūm
nostrās, <i>our countryman</i>	“ “	nostrātīūm
vestrās, <i>your countryman</i>	“ “	vestrātīūm

147. Of Adjectives having **ī** in the ablative singular, the following have **ūm** in the Genitive plural:

ūbēr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>fertile</i>	Abl. Sing.	ūbērī	Gen. Pl.	ūbērūm
mēmōr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>mindful</i>	“	mēmōrī	“	mēmōrūm
immēmōr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>unmindful</i>	“	immēmōrī	“	immēmōrūm
cīcūr, <b>-īs</b> , <i>tame</i>	“	cīcūrī	“	cīcūrūm
vīgīl, <b>-īs</b> , <i>watchful</i>	“	vīgīlī	“	vīgīlūm

[103. 104.]

#### Accusative Plural.

148. The Accusative Plural in **īs** occurs side by side with **ēs** in all nouns which have **īūm** in the genitive plural, as: navēs and nāvīs; and seems preferable in nouns in **ēr** which have **ī** in the ablative, as: imbrīs and imbrēs.

**Dative and Ablative Plural.**

**149.** In the **Dative** and **Ablative Plural**, Neuters in **mǎ** have commonly **īs** instead of **ībūs**; thus: **põemātīs**, instead of **põemātībūs**. See **83**.

**Greek Nouns.**

**150.** Most Greek Nouns of the **Third Declension** are entirely regular; a few, however, retain certain peculiarities of the Greek.

**151.** Proper Names in  $\eta\varsigma$  of the first Greek Declension often follow the third in Latin, as: **Xerxēs**, **-īs**.

**152.** Several feminine nouns in **ō** have **Genitive sing.** **ūs**, all the other cases ending in **ō**, as: **ēchō**, **Gen.** **ēchūs**, **Dat.** **ēchō**, *an echo*.

**153.** Many Greek nouns have **Genitive ōs**, as: **lampās**, **lampādōs**, *a lamp* — and **Accusative ā**, as: **Sālāmīs**, **Acc.** **Sālāmīnā**, *Salamis*; **āēr**, **Acc.** **āērā**, *air*; **aethēr**, **Acc.** **aethērā**, *ether*.

**154.** The **Vocative sing.** drops **s** in nouns in **ēus**, **īs**, **ys**, and **ās** (**antīs**), as: **Daphnīs**, **Voc.** **Daphnī**, *Daphnis*; **Orphēus**, **Voc.** **Orphēu**, *Orpheus*; **Atlās**, **Voc.** **Atlā**, *Atlas*.

**155.** A few Neuters in **ōs**, as: **mēlōs**, *a song*; **pēlāgōs**, *the sea*, have **ē** in the plural: **mēlē**, **pēlāgē**.

**156.** The ending **ōn** occurs in the **Genitive plur.** of a few titles of books, as: **Mētāmorphōsēs**, **-ēōn**.

**157.** Many Greek nouns have **Plural Nom.** **ēs**, as: **lampās**, **lampādēs** — and **Accus.** **ās**, as: **Ārabs**, **Ārābās**, *Arabian*; **Cyclops**, **Cyclōpās**, *a Cyclops*.

**Gender in Third Declension.**

Nouns whose gender is determined by their meaning (see **40-42**) are not included in the following rules.

**I. MASCULINES.**

**158.** Nouns of the **Third Declension** in **ō**, **ōr**, **ōs**, **ēr**, and **ēs** or **ēs** increasing in the **Genitive**:

hīc sermō, *this speech*  
 hīc aggēr, *this mound*  
 hīc cōlōr, *this color*

hīc mōs, *this custom*  
 hīc pēs, *this foot* (gen. pēdis)  
 hīc caespēs, *this sod* (gen. caespītis)

**159.**

EXCEPTIONS in **ō**.

**Feminine:**

1. Nouns in **dō** and **gō**, as: *hīrundō*, a swallow; *ōrīgō*, origin; &c. Only the following in **dō** and **gō** are **Masculine**:

<i>ordō</i> , - <b>īnīs</b> , order	<i>līgō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a mattock
<i>cardō</i> , - <b>īnīs</b> , the hinge (of a door)	<i>harpāgō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a grapple-hook
	<i>margō</i> , - <b>īnīs</b> , a margin

2. *Abstract nouns in īō*, as: *ōpīnīō*, -**ōnīs**, an opinion; *actīō*, -**ōnīs**, a deed; *ōrātīō*, -**ōnīs**, speech; *vēnātīō*, -**ōnīs**, hunting; &c. The following (*concrete*) nouns in **īō** are **Masculine**:

<i>septentrīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , the north	<i>pāpīlīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a butterfly
<i>scorpīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a scorpion	<i>pūgīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a dagger
<i>vespertīlīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a bat	<i>scīpīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a staff
<i>tītīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a firebrand	<i>ūnīō</i> , - <b>ōnīs</b> , a pearl

3. *cārō*, *carnīs*, flesh                      *ēchō*, -**ūs**, an echo

**160.**

EXCEPTIONS in **ōr**.

**Neuter.**

<i>marmōr</i> , <i>marmōrīs</i> , marble	<i>ādōr</i> , <i>ādōrīs</i> , spelt
<i>aequōr</i> , <i>aequōrīs</i> , the sea	<i>cōr</i> , <i>cordīs</i> , the heart

**Feminine.**

*arbōr*, *arbōrīs*, a tree

**161.**

EXCEPTIONS in **ōs**, **ōs**.

**Feminine.**

<i>cōs</i> , <i>cōtīs</i> , a whetstone	<i>dōs</i> , <i>dōtīs</i> , a dowry
---	-------------------------------------

**Neuter.**

<i>ōs</i> , <i>ōrīs</i> , the mouth	<i>ōs</i> , <i>ossīs</i> , a bone
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

**162.**

EXCEPTIONS in **ēr**, **ēr**.

**Neuter.**

<i>cādāvēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , a corpse	<i>spīnthēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , a bracelet
<i>pīpēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , pepper	<i>tūbēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , a hump
<i>cīcēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , a chick-pea	<i>ūbēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , a teat
<i>ītēr</i> , <i>ītīnērīs</i> , a journey	<i>vēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , spring
<i>pāpāvēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> , the poppy	( <i>verbēr</i> , - <b>īs</b> ), a blow

**Common.**

*līntēr*, -**rīs**, a boat

**163.** EXCEPTIONS in *ēs*, *ēs* imparisyllabic.

Neuter.

*aes*, *aerīs*, *copper*

Feminine.

*mergēs*, *-ītīs*, *a sheaf*

*sēgēs*, *-ētīs*, *a crop*

*tēgēs*, *-ētīs*, *a covering*

*mercēs*, *-ēdīs*, *a reward*

*quīēs*, *-ētīs*

*rēquīēs*, *-ētīs* } *rest*

*inquīēs*, *-ētīs*, *restlessness*

*compēs*, *-ēdīs*, *a fetter*

Common.

*ālēs*, *-ītīs*, *a bird*

*quādrūpēs*, *-ēdīs*, *a quadruped*

II. FEMININES.

**164.** Nouns of the Third Declension in *ās*, *īs*, *aus*, *x*, *ēs* not increasing in the Genitive, and in *s* preceded by a consonant:

*haec tempestās*, *this storm*

*haec rādex*, *this root*

*haec aurīs*, *this ear*

*haec nūbēs*, *this cloud*

*haec laus*, *this praise*

*haec hīems*, *this winter.*

**165.** EXCEPTIONS in *ās*, *ās*.

Masculine.

*ās*, *assīs*, *an as (coin)*

*ēlēphās*, *-antīs*, *an elephant*

*vās*, *vādīs*, *a surety*

*ādāmās*, *-antīs*, *a diamond*

Neuter.

*vās*, *vāsīs*, *a vessel*; plur. *vāsā*, *-ōrūm* (2d decl.)

Indeclinable.

*fās*, *right*

*nēfās*, *wrong*

**166.** EXCEPTIONS in *īs*, *īs*.

Masculine.

1. All nouns in *nīs*, as: *ignīs*, *fire*; *amnīs*, *a river*; &c.

2. Also the following:

*axīs*, *-*, *an axis*

*pulvīs*, *-ērīs*, *dust*

*collīs*, *-*, *a hill*

*lāpīs*, *-īdīs*, *a stone*

*orbīs*, *-*, *a circle*

*vermīs*, *-*, *a worm*

*angūīs*, *-*, *a serpent*

*mensīs*, *-*, *a month*

*fascīs*, *-*, *a bundle*

*piscīs*, *-*, *a fish*

*postīs*, *-*, *a post*

*ungūīs*, *-*, *a claw*

*torquīs*, *-*, *a collar*

*fustīs*, *-*, *a club*

*sangūīs*, *-īnīs*, *blood*

*ensīs*, *-*, *a sword*



**167.**

EXCEPTIONS in **x**.

**Masculine.**

1. Greek nouns in **ax**, as: *thōrax, a breast-plate;*

2. Most nouns in **ex**, **-īcīs**, as: *cortex, -īcīs, bark;* *cūlex, -īcīs, a gnat;* &c. Only the following in **ex** are **Feminine**:

<i>lex, lēgīs, a law</i>	<i>faex, faecīs, lees</i>
<i>nex, nēcīs, a murder</i>	<i>sūpellex, -ectīlīs, furniture</i>
	<i>(prex), prēcēs, prayers</i>

3. Two in **ix**:

<i>cālix, -īcīs, a cup</i>	<i>fornix, -īcīs, an arch</i>
----------------------------	-------------------------------

**168.** EXCEPTIONS in **s** preceded by a consonant.

**Masculine.**

<i>fons, -tīs, a spring</i>	<i>pons, -tīs, a bridge</i>
<i>mons, -tīs, a mountain</i>	<i>ādeps, -īpīs, fat</i>
	<i>dens, -tīs, a tooth</i>

2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally Adjectives with a masculine noun understood, as:

<i>ōriens, -tīs (sōl), east</i>	<i>rūdens, -tīs (fūnīs), a cable</i>
<i>occidens, -tīs (sōl), west</i>	<i>torrens, -tīs (flūviūs), a torrent</i>

III. NEUTERS.

**169.** Nouns of the Third Declension in

**ā, ě, ī, c, l, n, t, ŷ, ār, ūr, ūs:**

<i>hōc aenigmā, this riddle</i>	<i>hōc nōmĕn, this name</i>
<i>hōc mārĕ, this sea</i>	<i>hōc cāpūt, this head</i>
<i>hōc lāc, this milk</i>	<i>hōc calcār, this spur</i>
<i>hōc ānimāl, this animal</i>	<i>hōc fulgūr, this lightning</i>
	<i>hōc tempūs, this time.</i>

**170.**

EXCEPTIONS.

**Masculine.**

<i>sāl, sālīs, salt</i>	<i>lĕpūs, -ōrīs, a hare</i>
<i>sōl, sōlīs, the sun</i>	<i>mūs, mūrīs, a mouse</i>
<i>turtūr, -īs, a turtle-dove</i>	<i>rĕn, rĕnīs, kidney</i>
<i>furfūr, -īs, bran</i>	<i>lĕn, lĕnīs, } spleen</i>
<i>vultūr, -īs, a vulture</i>	<i>splĕn, splĕnīs }</i>
<i>sālār, -īs, trout</i>	<i>pectĕn, -īnīs, a comb</i>

**Feminine.**

jūventūs, -ūtīs, *youth*  
 sēnectūs, -ūtīs, *old age*  
 virtūs, -ūtīs, *virtue*  
 servītūs, -ūtīs, *slavery*  
 sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety*  
 sūs, sūīs, *a swine*

incūs, -ūdīs, *an anvil*  
 pālūs, -ūdīs, *a marsh*  
 pęcūs, -ūdīs, *a head of cattle*  
 tellūs, -ūrīs, *the earth*  
 grūs, grūīs, *a crane*

**Fourth Declension.**

**171.** Latin nouns whose genitive ends in ūs, are of the **Fourth Declension**.

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fourth Declension* ends in ū. Masculine and Feminine nouns end in the Nominative in ūs; Neuters in ū.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	fruc' tūs, <i>fruit</i>		fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>
Gen.	fruc' tūs, <i>of fruit</i>		fruc' tū ūm, <i>of fruits</i>
Dat.	fruc' tū ī, <i>to fruit</i>		fruc' tī būs, <i>to fruits</i>
Acc.	fruc' tūm, <i>fruit</i>		fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>
Voc.	fruc' tūs, <i>O fruit</i>		fruc' tūs, <i>O fruits</i>
Abl.	fruc' tū, <i>with fruit</i>		fruc' tī būs, <i>with fruits</i>
Nom.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>		cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>
Gen.	cor' nūs, <i>of a horn</i>		cor' nū ūm, <i>of horns</i>
Dat.	cor' nū (ūī), <i>to a horn</i>		cor' nī būs, <i>to horns</i>
Acc.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>		cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>
Voc.	cor' nū, <i>O horn</i>		cor' nū ā, <i>O horns</i>
Abl.	cor' nū, <i>with a horn</i>		cor' nī būs, <i>with horns</i>

**Examples for Practice :**

sensūs, -ūs, <i>sense</i>	olfactūs, -ūs, <i>smell</i>	ōbitūs, -ūs, <i>death</i>
visūs, -ūs, <i>sight</i>	mōtūs, -ūs, <i>motion</i>	nūtūs, -ūs, <i>a nod</i>
gustūs, -ūs, <i>taste</i>	fluctūs, -ūs, <i>a flood</i>	gělū, -ūs, ( <i>icy</i> ) <i>cold</i>
tactūs, -ūs, <i>touch</i>	cantūs, -ūs, <i>a song</i>	gēnū, -ūs, <i>the knee</i>

**172.** The following have the **Dative** and **Ablative** plural in ūbūs:

ācūs, ācūbūs, <i>a needle</i>	artūs, artūbūs, <i>a joint</i>
arcūs, arcūbūs, <i>a bow</i>	partūs, partūbūs, <i>birth</i>
lācūs, lācūbūs, <i>a lake</i>	portūs, portūbūs, <i>a harbor</i>
pęcū, pęcūbūs, <i>cattle</i>	trībūs, trībūbūs, <i>a tribe</i>
quercūs, quercūbūs, <i>an oak</i>	vērū, vērūbūs, <i>a spit</i>
	spęcūs, spęcūbūs, <i>a cave</i>

**173.** *dómūs, a house, is declined thus:*

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	dǒ' mūs, <i>a house</i>		dǒ' mūs, <i>houses</i>
Gen.	{ dǒ' mūs, <i>of a house</i>		dǒ' mū ūm, } <i>of houses</i> dǒ mō' rūm, }
	{ dǒ' mī, <i>at home</i>		
Dat.	dǒ' mū ī, <i>to a house</i>		dǒ' mī būs, <i>to houses</i>
Acc.	dǒ' mūm, <i>a house, home</i>		dǒ' mūs & dǒ' mōs, <i>houses</i>
Voc.	dǒ' mūs, <i>O house</i>		dǒ' mūs, <i>O houses</i>
Abl.	dǒ' mō, <i>with a house, from home</i>		dǒ' mī būs, <i>with houses</i>

**Rule of Gender.**

**174.** Most nouns of the Fourth Declension in ūs are masculine. The few words in ū are all neuter.

**175.**

EXCEPTIONS.

**Feminine.**

ācūs, -ūs, <i>a needle</i>	mānūs, -ūs, <i>the hand</i>
dómūs, -ūs, <i>a house</i>	porticūs, -ūs, <i>a gallery</i>
Idūs, -ūm (pl.), <i>the Ides</i>	tribūs, -ūs, <i>a tribe</i>

[67. 68. 105. 106.]

**Fifth Declension.**

**176.** Nouns which have ēī or ěī in the genitive from ēs in the nominative are of the **Fifth Declension**.

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fifth Declension* ends in e, which appears in all the cases.

Singular.

Nom.	dī' ēs, <i>a day</i>	rēs, <i>a thing</i>
Gen.	dī' ē' ī, <i>of a day</i>	rě' ī, <i>of a thing</i>
Dat.	dī' ē' ī, <i>to a day</i>	rě' ī, <i>to a thing</i>
Acc.	dī' ěm, <i>a day</i>	rĕm, <i>a thing</i>
Voc.	dī' ēs, <i>O day</i>	rēs, <i>O thing</i>
Abl.	dī' ē, <i>with a day</i>	rē, <i>with a thing</i>

Plural.

Nom.	dī' ēs, <i>days</i>	rēs, <i>things</i>
Gen.	dī' ē' rūm, <i>of days</i>	rē' rūm, <i>of things</i>
Dat.	dī' ē' būs, <i>to days</i>	rē' būs, <i>to things</i>
Acc.	dī' ēs, <i>days</i>	rēs, <i>things</i>
Voc.	dī' ēs, <i>O days</i>	rēs, <i>O things</i>
Abl.	dī' ē' būs, <i>with days</i>	rē' būs, <i>with things</i>

Examples for Practice :

fāciēs, -ēī, *the face*  
 effigiēs, -ēī, *a likeness*  
 spēs, -ēī, *hope*  
 glāciēs, -ēī, *ice*

sēriēs, -ēī, *a series*  
 sūperficiēs, -ēī, *a surface*  
 fidēs, -ēī, *faith*  
 prōgēniēs, -ēī, *offspring*

177. Of all the nouns of the Fifth Declension only two are complete in the plural, viz.: dīēs and rēs.

178. The e of ei in the genitive and dative is long when preceded by a vowel, as: dī-ē-ī, and short when preceded by a consonant, as: fī-dē-ī.

Rule of Gender.

179. All Nouns of this declension are feminine, except mērīdīēs, *mid-day*, and the plural of dīēs, *a day*, which are always masculine.

180. In the singular, dīēs is usually masculine, but sometimes feminine, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, or time in general, as: constitūtā diē, *on the appointed day*.

[69. 70. 105. 106.]

Irregular Nouns.

181. The Latin has only a few **Indeclinable Nouns**; viz.:

fās, *right*

nēfās, *wrong*

instār, *an image, kind*

nēcessē, *necessary*

mānē, *morning*

nīhīl, *nothing*

pondō, (lit. *in weight*), *pounds*

ōpūs, *need*

besides the names of the Latin and Greek letters, as: A, D, alphā, deltā, and some foreign words, as: sīnāpī, *mustard*.

182. Some nouns are **Defective in Case**, i. e., they want one or more cases.

The commonest of them are:

(dīcīō), *sway*, Nom. sing. wanting.

fors, *chance*, only in Nom. & Abl. sing. fortē, *by chance*.

(frux), *fruit*, Nom. sing. wanting.

grātēs, *thanks*, only in Nom. & Acc. plur.

impētūs, *attack*, only in Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing. & Nom. & Acc. plur.

infītīās, *denial*, only in Acc. with īrē, as: infītīās ire, *to deny*.

nēmō, *no one*, only in **Dat. & Acc.** — **Gen. & Abl.** supplied by nulliūs, nullō.

(ops), *aid*, **Nom. sing.** wanting; plur. ōpēs, *wealth*, entire.

(prex), *prayer*, only in **Dat. & Abl. sing.** přeci, přecē; — plur. přecēs, *prayers*, entire.

(sordēs), *filth*, only **Acc. & Abl. sing.** sordēm, sordē; plural entire.

(spons), *will*, only in **Abl. sing.** spontē, as: mĕā spontē, *of my own accord*.

vĕnūm, *sale*, only in **Acc. sing.** as: vĕnūm dārĕ, *to put up for sale*.

(verbĕr), *whip*, only in **Abl. sing.** verbĕrĕ; plur. verbĕrā, *whipping*.

(vix or vĕcis), *change*, only in **Gen., Acc. & Abl. sing.** (vĕcis, vĕcĕm, vĕcĕ). In the plural, only the **Genitive** is wanting.

vĭs, *force*, only in **Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing.** — **Plural** entire.

**183.** Of many verbal nouns in **sūs** or **tūs** of the *Fourth Declension*, only the **Ablative singular** is used; as: jussū mĕō, *by my command*; concessū, impulsū, permissū, rōgātū mĕō.

**184.** The **Genitive Plural** of many monosyllabic words does not occur; such are:

cōs, cōr, fāx, lūx, ōs, pāx, rōs, sāl, sōl, tūs, vĕr.

**185.** Monosyllabic neuters, such as: aes, jūs, rūs, are found only in the **Nominative** and **Accusative Plural**: aerā, jūrā, rurā.

**186.** **Defective in Number** are those which want either the singular or the plural.

**187.** Nouns used in the **Singular** only: **Singularia tantum**. Some nouns, from the nature of the things meant, have no plural, as: justitĭā, *justice*; fāmēs, *hunger*; aurūm, *gold*. There are also other nouns which lack the plural, without any obvious reason, as: spĕcĭmĕn, *a sample*; vespĕr, *evening*; mĕridĭēs, *mid-day*; vĕr, *spring*.

**188.** Nouns used in the **Plural** only: **Pluralia tantum**. The commonest of them are:

**First Declension.**

dĕlicĭae, -ārūm, *delight*

dĭvĭtĭae, -ārūm, *riches*

exsĕquĭae, -ārūm, *a funeral*

fĕriāe, -ārūm, *holidays*

indūtĭae, -ārūm, *a truce*

insĭdĭae, -ārūm, *an ambush*

nundĭnae, -ārūm, *market-day*

nuptĭae, -ārūm, *a wedding*

tĕnĕbrae, -ārūm, *darkness*

Athĕnae, -ārūm, *Athens*

Second Declension.

armā, -ōrūm, arms, weapons	libērī, -ōrūm, children
fastī, -ōrūm, an almanac	postērī, -ōrūm, descendants
gēminī, -ōrūm, twins	Delphī, -ōrūm, Delphi

Third Declension.

Alpēs, -īŭm, the Alps	faucēs, -īŭm, the throat
mājōrēs, -ūm, ancestors	mānēs, -īŭm, the shades of the dead

189. Some words have, besides the *general* meaning for both numbers, a *special* meaning for the **Plural**.

Singular.	Plural.
aedēs, -īs, a temple	aedēs, -īŭm, a house
āquā, -ae, water	āquae, -ārūm, medicinal springs
auxiliūm, -ī, help	auxiliā, -ōrūm, auxiliary troops
castrūm, -ī, a fort	castrā, -ōrūm, a camp
cōpiā, -ae, abundance	cōpiae, -ārūm, troops
finīs, -, an end, limit	finēs, -īŭm, borders; a territory
fortūnā, -ae, fortune	fortūnae, -ārūm, wealth
grātiā, -ae, favor	grātiāe, -ārūm, favors; thanks
littērā, -ae, a letter (of the alphabet)	littērae, -ārūm, an epistle; learning; literature
impēdimentūm, -ī, a hindrance	impēdimentā, -ōrūm, baggage
ōpērā, -ae, a task; service	ōpērae, -ārūm, workmen
(ops) ōpis, help; power	ōpēs, -ūm, wealth
pars, -tis, a part	partēs, -īŭm, a part (on the stage); a party
rostrūm, -ī, a beak	rostrā, -ōrūm, a speaker's platform
sāl, sālīs, salt	sālēs, -īŭm, witty sayings

190. Some nouns have two or more forms of Declension (**Heteroclites**). Such are:

laurūs, -ī	laurūs, -ūs, a laurel-tree
ēventūs, -ūs	ēventūm, -ī, an event
luxūrīā, -ae	luxūrīēs, -ēī, luxury
mātērīā, -ae	mātērīēs, -ēī, matter
segnītiā, -ae	segnītiēs, -ēī, slothfulness
ēlēphantūs, -ī	ēlēphās, -antīs, an elephant
plēbs, -īs	plēbēs, -ēī, the common people

vās, vāsīs, a vessel, etc. etc.

191. The following have the plural in a gender different from that of the singular (**Heterogeneous Nouns**):

Singular.	Plural.
jōcūs, -ī, a <i>joke, jest</i>	jōcī, -ōrūm, & jōcā, -ōrūm, <i>jokes</i>
lōcūs, -ī, a <i>place</i>	{ lōcī, -ōrūm, <i>passages (in books)</i>
	{ lōcā, -ōrūm, <i>places</i>
margārītā, -ae, a <i>pearl</i>	{ margārītae, -ārūm } <i>pearls</i>
	{ margārītā, -ōrūm }
caelūm, -ī, <i>heaven</i>	caelī, -ōrūm, <i>heavens</i>
ēpūlūm, -ī, a <i>banquet</i>	ēpūlae, -ārūm, a <i>meal</i>
balnēūm, -ī, a <i>bath</i>	balnēae, -ārūm, <i>baths, a bathhouse</i>
frēnūm, -ī, a <i>bridle</i>	frēnī, -ōrūm, & frēnā, -ōrūm, a <i>bit</i>

[107. 108.]

192. Sometimes a Noun in combination with an adjective takes a special signification, both parts being regularly inflected, as: jūsjūrandūm, *an oath*; rēspublīcā, *a commonwealth*.

**Singular.**

	<i>an oath</i>	<i>a commonwealth</i>
Nom.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Gen.	jū ris jū ran' dī	rē ī pu' blī cae
Dat.	jū rī jū ran' dō	rē ī pu' blī cae
Acc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēm pu' blī cām
Voc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Abl.	jū rē jū ran' dō	rē pu' blī cā

**Plural.**

Nom.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cae
Gen.	—	rē rūm pu blī cā' rūm
Dat.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs
Acc.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cās
Voc.	—	rēs pu' blī cae
Abl.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs

[109. 110.]

**Proper Names.**

193. The Romans regularly had **three names**, as: Marcus Tullius Cicero.

194. Marcus, the **praenomen**, corresponded to our *Christian name*; Tullius, the **nomen**, was the *name* of the gens or clanship; the **cognomen**, or *surname*, as Cicero, indicated the particular family to which one belonged. Another species of *surname*, **agnomen**,

was some significant epithet, as: Publius Cornelius Scipio **Africānus**, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

**195.** The three names, however, were not always used, commonly two. The Romans, when addressing a person, generally used the praenomen.

**196.** Women had no personal names, but were known only by that of their gens with a feminine termination, as: *Julia, the daughter of Gaius Julius Caesar.*

**197.** The commonest praenomens are thus abbreviated:

A. = Aulus	L. = Lucius	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus
App. = Appius	M. = Marcus	S. (Sex.) = Sextus
C. (G.) = Gaius	M'. = Manius	Serv. = Servius
Cn. (Gn.) = Gnaeus	Mam. = Mamercus	Sp. = Spurius
D. = Decimus	N. (Num.) = Numerius	T. = Titus
K. = Kaeso	P. = Publius	Ti. (Tib.) = Tiberius.

### ADJECTIVES.

**198.** **Adjectives** and **Participles** are in general declined like substantives. They distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, corresponding with their substantives in **Number, Gender, and Case.**

**199.** Some Adjectives denote each gender by a different termination, and consequently have **three terminations**, viz.:

Of the **First and Second Declensions:**

**ūs, ā, ūm**, as: *bōnūs, -ā, -ūm, good* (see **72.**)

**ēr, ā, ūm**, as:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lībēr, -ā, -ūm, free (see 74.)} \\ \text{nīgēr, -rā, -rūm, black (see 76.)} \end{array} \right.$

**ūr, ā, ūm**, only *sātūr, -ā, -ūm, sated* (see **66.**)

[21. 22. 25. 26.]

Of the **Third Declension:**

**ēr, is, ě**, as: *ācēr, -rīs, -rĕ, sharp* (see **137.**) [55. 56.]

**200.** Some Adjectives of the **Third Declension** have **two terminations** — one for the masculine and feminine, and the other for the neuter; they end in:

**is, ě**, as: *tristīs, -ě, sad* (see **139.**)

**ōr, ūs**, as: *dūrīōr, -ūs, harder* (see **139.**)

[55. 56. 73. 74.]



**201.** Some Adjectives of the Third Declension have only one termination which is common to all genders; they end in:

- l**, as: vīgīl, *wakeful* (see **90**.)  
**r**, as: paupēr, *poor* (see **95**.)  
**s**, as: prūdēns, *sensible* (see **141**.)  
**x**, as: fēlix, *happy* (see **141**.)

[57—60.]

## Irregular Adjectives.

**202.** The following Adjectives with their Compounds have the Genitive singular in **īūs**, and the Dative in **ī** for all genders (see **77**.).

ālīūs, -ā, -ūđ, <i>another</i>	ullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>any</i>
nullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>no</i>	ūnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>one</i>
sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>alone</i>	altēr, -ā, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>
tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>whole</i>	ūtēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>which (of two)</i>
neutēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>neither</i>	

### Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	sō' lūs	sō' lā	sō' lūm, <i>alone</i>
Gen.	sō lī' ūs	sō lī' ūs	sō lī' ūs
Dat.	sō' lī	sō' lī	sō' lī

Like ūtēr are declined its compounds, as ūterque, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē, *either*. Of altērūtēr, *the one or the other of the two*, either both parts are declined; altēr ūtēr, altērā ūtrā, altērūm ūtrūm; or only the latter: altērūtēr, altērūtrā, altērūtrūm.

[71. 72.]

**203.** Many Adjectives of one termination, especially such as end in **ēr**, **ēs**, **ōr**, **ōs**, **fex**, are not used in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural of the neuter gender, viz.:

dēgēnēr, -īs, <i>degenerate</i>	compōs, -ōtīs, <i>capable</i>
paupēr, -īs, <i>poor</i>	artīfex, -īcīs, <i>artificial</i>
ālēs, -ītīs, <i>winged</i>	īnops, īnōpīs, <i>needy</i>
bīpēs, -ēđīs, <i>two-footed</i>	rēdux, -ūcīs, <i>returning</i>
divēs, -ītīs, <i>rich</i>	sons, -tīs, <i>guilty</i>
sospēs, -ītīs, <i>safe</i>	supplex, -īcīs, <i>suppliant</i>
concolōr, -ōrīs, <i>of the same color</i>	trux, -ūcīs, <i>fierce</i>
mēmōr, -īs, <i>mindful</i>	[lor vīgīl, -īs, <i>wakeful</i>

**204.** Of cētērī, -ae, -ā, *the rest*, the Nominative singular masculine is not used. singūlī, -ae, -ā, *one at a time*; paucī, -ae, -ā, *few*; and plērīquē, plēraequē, plērāquē are not used in the singular.

**205.** The following Adjectives are **Indeclinable**:

frūgī, <i>frugal</i>	tōt, <i>so many</i>
nēquām, <i>worthless</i>	quōt, <i>how many</i>

**206.** The Substantives: victōr, victrix, *conqueror*, and ultōr, ultrix, *avenger*, are also used as Adjectives — *victorious, revengeful* — and, in poetry, they admit even a neuter of the plural, as: armā victriciā, *victorious arms*.

### Comparison.

**207.** Adjectives have three degrees of **Comparison**: the **Positive**, the **Comparative**, and the **Superlative**.

**208.** The **Positive Degree** is expressed by the adjective in its simple form, as: dūrūs, *hard*.

**209.** The **Comparative Degree** ends in **ōr** for the masculine and feminine, and in **ūs** for the neuter, and is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **īs** of the positive into **iōr**, **iūs**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Comparative.
excelsūs, <i>high</i>	excelsī	excelsiōr, excelsiūs
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libēriōr, libēriūs
pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrī	pulchriōr, pulchriūs
ācēr, <i>sharp</i>	ācrīs	ācriōr, ācriūs
lēvīs, <i>light</i>	lēvīs	lēviōr, lēviūs
sāgax, <i>sagacious</i>	sāgācīs	sāgāciōr, sāgāciūs
prūdēns, <i>prudent</i>	prudentīs	prudentiōr, prudentiūs

**210.** Comparatives are of the *Third Declension*; they are declined like dūriōr, dūriūs (see **139**.)

**211.** The **Superlative** is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **īs** of the positive into **issimūs**, **issimā**, **issimūm**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Superlative.
prētiosūs, <i>valuable</i>	prētiosī	prētiosissimūs
diligēns, <i>diligent</i>	diligētīs	diligētissimūs

**212.** Superlatives are declined like bōnūs, -ā, -ūm of the *First* and *Second Declensions*.

**213.** Adjectives in **ēr** add **rīmūs** to the positive to form the **Superlative**, as:

pulchēr, *beautiful*, pulcherrīmūs; ācēr, *sharp*, ācerrīmūs.

**214.** *vētūs, old*, has **Superlative** *vēterrīmūs*, and *mātūrūs, ripe, mātūrrissīmūs* and sometimes *māturrīmūs*.

**215.** Six adjectives in *īlīs* form their **Superlative** by changing the ending *īs* into *īmūs*, as: *fācilīs, fācillīmūs*. These are:

<i>fācilīs, easy, fācillīmūs</i>	<i>difficilīs, difficult, difficillīmūs</i>
<i>sīmīlīs, like, sīmīllīmūs</i>	<i>dissīmīlīs, unlike, dissīmīllīmūs</i>
<i>grācilīs, slender, grācillīmūs</i>	<i>hūmilīs, low, hūmillīmūs</i>

**216.** Compound adjectives in *dīcūs, fīcūs, and vōlūs* form their **Comparative** and **Superlative** by changing *ūs* into *entīōr, entissīmūs*, as:

<i>bēnēvōlūs, benevolent</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentīōr</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentissīmūs</i>
<i>bēnēfīcūs, beneficent</i>	<i>bēnēfīcentīōr</i>	<i>bēnēfīcentissīmūs</i>
<i>magnīfīcūs, magnificent</i>	<i>magnīfīcentīōr</i>	<i>magnīfīcentissīmūs</i>

**217.** In like manner are compared:

<i>ēgēnūs (ēgens), needy</i>	<i>ēgentīōr</i>	<i>ēgentissīmūs</i>
<i>prōvīdūs, provident</i>	<i>prōvīdentīōr</i>	<i>prōvīdentissīmūs</i>

**218.** Adjectives in *ūs*, preceded by a vowel, are compared by means of *māgīs* and *maxīmē, more* and *most*:

<i>dūbīūs, doubtful</i>	<i>māgīs dūbīūs</i>	<i>maxīmē dūbīūs</i>
-------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

**219.** But adjectives in *quūs* are regular:

<i>antīquūs, old</i>	<i>antīquīōr</i>	<i>antīquīssīmūs</i>
----------------------	------------------	----------------------

[73—76.]

## Irregular and Defective Comparison.

**220.** The following adjectives have different words for expressing the different degrees of comparison:

<i>bōnūs, good</i>	<i>mēlīōr, better</i>	<i>optīmūs, best</i>
<i>mālūs, bad</i>	<i>pējōr, worse</i>	<i>pessīmūs, worst</i>
<i>magnūs, great</i>	<i>mājōr, greater</i>	<i>maxīmūs, greatest</i>
<i>parvūs, little</i>	<i>mīnōr, less, lesser</i>	<i>mīnīmūs, least</i>
<i>multūs, much</i>	<i>plūs, more</i>	<i>plūrīmūs, most</i>

**221.** *plūs, more*, is thus declined:

### Singular.

### Plural.

Nom. & Acc.	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plū' rēs</i>	<i>plū' rā (plū' rī ā)</i>
Gen.	<i>plū' rīs</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>
Dat. & Abl.	—	<i>plū' rī būs</i>	<i>plū' rī būs</i>

*complūrēs, several, very many*, is declined like *plūrēs*.

222. Mark the degrees of the two **Indeclinable** adjectives:

nēquām, <i>worthless</i>	nēquiōr	nēquissimūs
frūgī, <i>frugal</i>	frūgālīor	frūgālissimūs

223. The following adjectives have two **Irregular Superlatives**:

extērūs, <i>outward</i>	extērīor, <i>outer</i>	extrēmūs, (extīmūs), <i>outmost</i>
infērūs, <i>below</i>	infērīor, <i>lower</i>	infīmūs, imūs, <i>lowest</i>
postērūs, <i>next</i>	postērīor, { <i>latter</i>	postrēmūs, } <i>last</i>
	{ <i>later</i>	postūmūs, } <i>latest</i>
sūpērūs, <i>above</i>	sūpērīor, <i>upper</i>	suprēmūs, summūs, <i>highest</i>

224. The following adjectives are **Defective** in their comparison:

I. **Positive wanting.**

Comparative.	Superlative.
cītērīor, <i>more on this side</i>	cītīmūs, <i>most on this side</i>
intērīor, <i>inner</i>	intīmūs, <i>innermost, intimate</i>
prīor, <i>prior, former</i>	prīmūs, <i>foremost, first</i>
prōpīor, <i>nearer</i>	proxīmūs, <i>nearest</i>
ultērīor, <i>ulterior, further</i>	ultīmūs, <i>furthest, last</i>
ōcīor, <i>swifter</i>	ōcissimūs, <i>swiftest</i>
pōtīor, <i>preferable</i>	pōtissimūs, <i>most important</i>
dētērīor, <i>worse</i>	dēterrimūs, <i>worst</i>

II. **Comparative wanting.**

Positive.	Superlative.
dīversūs, <i>different</i>	dīversissimūs, <i>most different</i>
falsūs, <i>false</i>	falsissimūs, <i>falsest</i>
inclūtūs, <i>renowned</i>	inclūtissimūs, <i>most renowned</i>
invītūs, <i>unwilling</i>	invītissimūs, <i>most unwilling</i>
nōvūs, <i>new</i>	nōvissimūs, <i>latest, last</i>
sācēr, <i>sacred</i>	sācerrimūs, <i>most sacred</i>
vētūs, <i>old</i>	vēterrimūs, <i>oldest</i>

III. **Superlative wanting.**

Positive.	Comparative.
jūvēnīs, <i>young</i>	jūnīor, <i>younger</i>
sēnex, <i>old</i>	sēnīor, <i>older</i>
ālācēr, <i>gay</i>	ālācērīor, <i>gayer</i>
longinquūs, <i>far</i>	longinquīor, <i>farther</i>
propinquūs, <i>near</i>	propinquīor, <i>nearer</i>
pōpūlārīs, <i>popular</i>	pōpūlārīor, <i>more popular</i>
sālūtārīs, <i>salutary</i>	sālūtārīor, <i>more salutary</i>

**225.** Some Adjectives are, by their meaning, excluded from comparison. Among these are certain words implying *matter, time, place, and person*, as: *ferrĕūs, iron; hōdiernūs, of to-day; Rōmānūs, Roman; paternūs, paternal*; also words denoting the lowest or highest degree of a quality, as: *singŭlārīs, alone of its kind*, and Compounds with **pĕr** and **prae**; but *praeclārūs, renowned*, and *pertĭnax, very tenacious*, are found in the Comparative and Superlative.

**226.** Again, there are Adjectives which, from their form, or without any obvious reason, are incapable of comparison, viz.:

1. Adjectives in **ūs**, after a vowel (see **218.**).

2. Compound Adjectives containing a verb or a substantive, as: *particeps, sharing; ĩnops, needy*; except Compounds of *dĭcō, faciō, vōlō* (see **216.**), and Compounds of *ars, cōr, mens*, as: *ĭners, unskilled; concors, harmonious; āmens, senseless*; which are regularly compared.

3. Adjectives in **ĭcūs, ĭmūs, ĭnūs, ĭnūs, ōrūs, ūlūs**, as: *mōdĭcūs, moderate; lĕgĭtĭmūs, lawful; dĭtĭnūs, lasting; mātĭtĭnūs, early; cānōrūs, melodious; sĕdŭlūs, busy*.

4. Many Adjectives which cannot be classed under distinct headings:

<i>cādŭcūs, drooping</i>	<i>mĕrūs, mere</i>
<i>cĭcŭr, tame</i>	<i>mĕdĭōerĭs, middling</i>
<i>curvūs, curved</i>	<i>mĕmōr, mindful</i>
<i>fĕrūs, wild</i>	<i>mĭrūs, wonderful</i>
<i>gnārūs, skilful</i>	<i>pār, equal</i>
<i>ĭmpĭgĕr, active</i>	<i>ĭmpār, unequal</i>
<i>lācĕr, torn</i>	<i>rŭdĭs, rude</i>
<i>lassūs, wearied</i>	<i>trŭx, fierce</i>
<i>mŭtĭlūs, maimed</i>	<i>vāgūs, vagrant.</i>

**227.** Participles, when used as Adjectives, are regularly compared, as: *doctŭs, learned, doctĭōr, doctĭssĭmūs; abstĭnens, abstinent, abstĭnentĭōr, abstĭnentĭssĭmūs*.

**Adverbs** formed from Adjectives are compared as follows (see **440**):

<i>cārūs, dear:</i>	<i>cārĕ,</i>	<i>cārĭūs,</i>	<i>cārĭssĭmĕ</i>
<i>mĭsĕr, wretched:</i>	<i>mĭsĕrĕ,</i>	<i>mĭsĕrĭūs,</i>	<i>mĭsĕrĭmĕ</i>
<i>lĕvĭs, light:</i>	<i>lĕvĭtĕr,</i>	<i>lĕvĭūs,</i>	<i>lĕvĭssĭmĕ</i>

NUMERALS.

Numeral Adjectives.

**228. Cardinal Numerals** express number in its simplest form, and answer the question *quōt? how many?*

1	I	ūnūs, ūnā, ūnūm
2	II	dūō, dūae, dūō
3	III	trēs, triā
4	IV	quattūr
5	V	quinqūē
6	VI	sex
7	VII	septēm
8	VIII	octō
9	IX	nōvēm
10	X	dēcēm
11	XI	undēcīm
12	XII	dūdēcīm
13	XIII	trédēcīm (dēcēm ēt trēs)
14	XIV	quattūordēcīm (dēcēm ēt quattūr)
15	XV	quindēcīm (dēcēm ēt quinqūē)
16	XVI	sēdēcīm (dēcēm ēt sex)
17	XVII	septendēcīm (dēcēm ēt septēm)
18	XVIII	dūdēvīgintī (dēcēm ēt octō)
19	XIX	undēvīgintī (dēcēm ēt nōvēm)
20	XX	vīgintī
21	XXI	ūnūs ēt vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī ūnūs
22	XXII	dūō ēt vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī dūō
23	XXIII	trēs ēt vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī trēs
30	XXX	trīgintā
40	XXXX or XL	quādrāgintā
50	L	quinqūāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septūāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	LXXXX or XC	nōnāgintā
100	C	centūm
101	CI	centūm ēt ūnūs <i>or</i> centūm ūnūs
200	CC	dūcentī, -ae, -ā
300	CCC	trēcentī, -ae, -ā
400	CCCC	quādringentī, -ae, -ā

500	D or IO	quingentī, -ae, -ă
600	DC or IOC	sescentī, -ae, -ă
700	DCC or IOCC	septingentī, -ae, -ă
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ă
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ă
1000	M or CIO	millē
2000	MM or IIM	dŭō mīliă
5000	IOO	quinquē mīliă
6000	IOOM	sex mīliă
10 000	CCIOO	dēcēm mīliă
50 000	IOOO	quinguăgintă mīliă
100 000	CCCIOOO	centŭm mīliă
1 000 000	CCCCIOOOO	dēcīēs centēnă mīliă or dēcīēs centŭm

229. The three first are declined; the rest, as far as one hundred, are indeclinable. Hundreds, as: dŭcentī, *ae, ă, trĕcentī, ae, ă*, etc., are declined like the plural of bŏnŭs.

ŭnŭs, ŭnă, ŭnŭm, *one*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. ŭ' nŭs	ŭ' nă	ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nae	ŭ' nă
G. ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nŏ' rūm	ŭ nă' rūm	ŭ nŏ' rūm
D. ŭ' nī	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs
A. ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' năm	ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' nŏs	ŭ' năs	ŭ' nă
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
A. ŭ' nŏ	ŭ' nă	ŭ' nŏ	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs

The plural of ŭnŭs occurs only with such nouns as have no singular, as: ŭnă castră, *one camp*; ŭnae nuptīae, *one marriage*.

dŭō, dŭae, dŭō, *two*

trĕs, trĭă, *three*

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. dŭ' ŏ	dŭ' ae	dŭ' ŏ	trĕs	trĭ' ă
G. dŭ ŏ' rūm	dŭ ā' rūm	dŭ ŏ' rūm	trĭ' ŭm	trĭ' ŭm
D. dŭ ŏ' bŭs	dŭ ā' bŭs	dŭ ŏ' bŭs	trĭ' bŭs	trĭ' bŭs
A. dŭ' ŏs, dŭ' ŏ	dŭ' ăs	dŭ' ŏ	trĕs	trĭ' ă
V. —	—	—	—	—
A. dŭ ŏ' bŭs	dŭ ā' bŭs	dŭ ŏ' bŭs	trĭ' bŭs	trĭ' bŭs

ambŏ, ambae, ambŏ, *both*, is declined like dŭō.

230. In the singular millē is an **Indeclinable Adjective**; in the plural it is a **Substantive** and takes the genitive, as: millē mīlītēs, *a thousand soldiers*; dŭō mīliă mīlītŭm, *two thousand soldiers*.

**231.** From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English, as: *vīgintī ūnūs*, *twenty-one*, or *ūnūs ēt vīgintī*, *one and twenty*.

**232.** From 100 on, units follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; *ēt*, *and*, is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations, as:

*centūm ēt quinquāgintā or centūm quinquāgintā*, 150  
*centūm ēt quinquāgintā trēs or centūm quinquāgintā trēs*, 153.

**233.** *sexcentī* is used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* in English. [79. 80.]

**234. Ordinal Numerals** denote a series, and answer the question *quōtūs?* *which one in the series?*

1st, <i>prīmūs, -ā, -ūm</i> ( <i>prīōr, -ūs</i> )	23d, <i>tertīūs ēt vīcēsīmūs</i>
2d, <i>sēcundūs</i> ( <i>altēr</i> )	30th, <i>trīcēsīmūs or trīgēsīmūs</i>
3d, <i>tertīūs</i>	40th, <i>quādrāgēsīmūs</i>
4th, <i>quartūs</i>	50th, <i>quīquāgēsīmūs</i>
5th, <i>quintūs</i>	60th, <i>sexāgēsīmūs</i>
6th, <i>sextūs</i>	70th, <i>septuāgēsīmūs</i>
7th, <i>septīmūs</i>	80th, <i>octōgēsīmūs</i>
8th, <i>octāvūs</i>	90th, <i>nōnāgēsīmūs</i>
9th, <i>nōnūs</i>	100th, <i>centēsīmūs</i>
10th, <i>dēcīmūs</i>	101st, <i>centēsīmūs (ēt) prīmūs</i>
11th, <i>undēcīmūs</i>	200th, <i>dūcentēsīmūs</i>
12th, <i>dūdēcīmūs</i>	300th, <i>trēcentēsīmūs</i>
13th, <i>tertīūs dēcīmūs</i>	400th, <i>quādrīngentēsīmūs</i>
14th, <i>quartūs dēcīmūs</i>	500th, <i>quīngentēsīmūs</i>
15th, <i>quintūs dēcīmūs</i>	600th, <i>sescentēsīmūs</i>
16th, <i>sextūs dēcīmūs</i>	700th, <i>septīngentēsīmūs</i>
17th, <i>septīmūs dēcīmūs</i>	800th, <i>octīngentēsīmūs</i>
18th, <i>octāvūs dēcīmūs or dūdēvīcēsīmūs</i>	900th, <i>nongentēsīmūs</i>
19th, <i>nōnūs dēcīmūs or undēvīcēsīmūs</i>	1000th, <i>millēsīmūs</i>
20th, <i>vīcēsīmūs or vīgēsīmūs</i>	2000th, <i>bīs millēsīmūs</i>
21st, <i>ūnūs ēt vīcēsīmūs or vīcēsīmūs prīmūs</i>	3000th, <i>tēr millēsīmūs</i>
22d, <i>altēr ēt vīcēsīmūs or vīcēsīmūs sēcundūs</i>	10 000th, <i>dēcīēs millēsīmūs</i>
	100 000th, <i>centīēs millēsīmūs</i>
	1 000 000th, <i>dēcīēs centīēs millēsīmūs</i>



**235.** All **Ordinals** are adjectives in **ūs, ā, ūm**; except **prīor**, *prīus*, *first*, which is used instead of *prīmūs* in speaking of *two*; *altēr* is often used for *sēcundūs*. In compounding **Ordinals**, observe the same practice as with **Cardinals** (see **231**).

**236.** **Ordinals** with *pars*, *part*, expressed or understood, may be used to denote fractions, as: *tertiā pars*, *a third*; *quartā pars*, *a fourth*; *duae quintae*, *two fifths*. [81. 82.]

**237.** **Distributive Numerals** answer the question *quōtēnī?* *how many at a time?* and are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

1. singŭlī, -ae, -ā, <i>one by one</i>	22. vīcēnī binī
2. binī, -ae, -ā, <i>two by two, etc.</i>	23. vīcēnī ternī
3. ternī (trīnī)	30. tricēnī
4. quāternī	40. quādrāgēnī
5. quīnī	50. quinquāgēnī
6. sēnī	60. sexāgēnī
7. septēnī	70. septuāgēnī
8. octōnī	80. octōgēnī
9. nōvēnī	90. nōnāgēnī
10. dēnī	100. centēnī
11. undēnī	200. dūcēnī
12. dūōdēnī	300. tricēnī
13. ternī dēnī	400. quādringēnī
14. quāternī dēnī	500. quīngēnī
15. quīnī dēnī	600. sexcēnī
16. sēnī dēnī	700. septingēnī
17. septēnī dēnī	800. octingēnī
18. octōnī dēnī <i>or</i> dūōdēvīcēnī	900. nongēnī
19. nōvēnī dēnī <i>or</i> undēvīcēnī	1000. singŭlā milīā
20. vīcēnī	2000. binā milīā
21. vīcēnī singŭlī	3000. ternā milīā, etc.

**238.** **Distributives** are used as follows:

In the meaning of *so many a piece* or *on each side*, as: *Scipio et Hannibal cum singulis interpretibus congressi sunt*, *Scipio and Hannibal met, with an interpreter on each side*;

In multiplication, as: *bis bina*, *twice two*;

Instead of **Cardinals**, when a noun is plural in form, but singular in meaning, as: *binā castrā*, *two camps*. But with these, *ūnī, -ae, -ā* is used instead of *singŭlī*, and *trīnī* instead of *ternī*; as: *ūnae littērae*, *one letter*; *trīnae littērae*, *three letters*.

**239. Multiplicative Numerals** answer the question *quōtūplex?* *how many fold?* They are adjectives in *ex, icis*.

simplex, *-īcis, single*  
 dūplex, *twofold, double*  
 triplex, *threefold, triple*  
 quādrūplex, *fourfold*

quincūplex, *fivefold*  
 septemplex, *sevenfold*  
 dēcemplex, *tenfold*  
 centūplex, *a hundredfold*

**240. Proportional Numerals** answer the question *quōtūplūs?* *how many times as great?* and are adjectives in *ūs, ā, ūm*. Only a few are commonly used.

simplūs, *-ā, -ūm, simple*  
 dūplūs, *twice as great*  
 triplūs, *three times as great*

quādrūplūs, *four times as great*  
 septūplūs, *seven times as great*  
 octūplūs, *eight times as great*

### Numeral Adverbs.

**241. Numeral Adverbs** answer the question *quōtīens?* *how often?* Being adverbs, they are indeclinable.

1. sēmēl, *once*
2. bīs, *twice*
3. tēr, *thrice*
4. quāter, *four times, etc.*
5. quinquīēs
6. sexīēs
7. septīēs
8. octīēs
9. nōvīēs
10. dēcīēs
11. undēcīēs
12. dūōdēcīēs
13. terdēcīēs (*trēdēcīēs*)
14. quāterdēcīēs (*quattūōrdēcīēs*)
15. quinquīēsdēcīēs (*quindēcīēs*)
16. sexīēsdēcīēs
17. septīēsdēcīēs
18. dūōdēvīcīēs (*octīēs dēcīēs*)
19. undēvīcīēs (*nōvīēs dēcīēs*)
20. vīcīēs

21. sēmēl ēt vīcīēs
22. bīs ēt vīcīēs
23. tēr ēt vīcīēs
30. trīcīēs
40. quādrāgīēs
50. quinquāgīēs
60. sexāgīēs
70. septūāgīēs
80. octōgīēs
90. nōnāgīēs
100. centīēs
200. dūcentīēs
300. trēcentīēs
400. quādringentīēs
500. quingentīēs
600. sescentīēs
700. septingentīēs
800. octingentīēs
900. nongentīēs
1000. milīēs

2000. bīs miljēs	100 000. centjēs miljēs
3000. tēr miljēs	1 000 000. miljēs miljēs
10 000. dēcjēs miljēs	2 000 000. bīs miljēs miljēs

**242.** The Accusative and Ablative neuter of Ordinals are used as **Adverbs of order**, thus:

prīmūm, prīmō, *first, at first*;  
 (sēcundūm, sēcundō) commonly: itērūm, *secondly*;  
 tertjūm, tertjō, *thirdly*.

[81. 82.]

### PRONOUNS.

**243.** Pronouns distinguish the Person speaking, or the **First Person**, from the Person spoken to, or the **Second Person**, and the object spoken of, **Third Person**. Accordingly, we have pronouns of the First, Second, and Third persons which are used either substantively or adjectively, or both substantively and adjectively.

**244.** Strictly speaking, the Pronouns of the *First* and *Second Persons* are the only **Personal Pronouns**, because they apply to Persons, *and to these only*.

**245.** The **Personal Pronouns** of the *First Person* are:

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.	
		Singular.	
Nom.	ě' gŏ, <i>I</i>		
Gen.	mě' ĭ, <i>of me</i>		
Dat.	mĭ' hĭ, <i>to me</i>		
Acc.	mě, <i>me</i>	měūs, měā, měūm, <i>my</i>	
Voc.	—		
Abl.	mě, <i>from me</i>		
		Plural.	
Nom.	nōs, <i>we</i>		
Gen.	no' strūm } <i>of us</i>		
	no' strĭ }		
Dat.	nō' bīs, <i>to us</i>	nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm, <i>our</i>	
Acc.	nōs, <i>us</i>		
Voc.	—		
Abl.	nō' bīs, <i>from us</i>		

**246. The Personal Pronouns of the *Second Person* are:**

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.	
Singular.			
Nom.	tū, <i>thou</i>		
Gen.	tū' ī, <i>of thee</i>		
Dat.	tī' bī, <i>to thee</i>		
Acc.	tē, <i>thee</i>	tūīs, tūā, tūūm,	<i>thy, your</i>
Voc.	tū, <i>O thou</i>		
Abl.	tē, <i>from thee</i>		

Plural.			
Nom.	vōs, <i>ye or you</i>		
Gen.	ve' strūm } ve' strī }	<i>of you</i>	
Dat.	vō' bīs, <i>to you</i>	vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm,	<i>your</i>
Acc.	vōs, <i>you</i>		
Voc.	vōs, <i>O ye or O you</i>		
Abl.	vō' bīs, <i>from you</i>		

The Genitives nostrūm, vestrūm are used *partitively* in reference to number.

**247. The Personal Pronouns of the *Third Person* (*he, she, it, they*) are wanting in Latin; they are represented by the Determinative īs, ēā, īd, *he, she, it*.**

SUBSTANTIVE.			POSSESSIVE.	
Singular.				
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		
N. īs	ē' ā	īd	<i>he, she, it</i>	
G. ē' jūs	ē' jūs	ē' jūs	<i>of him, etc.</i>	<i>(supplied by the Gen.)</i>
D. ē' ī	ē' ī	ē' ī	<i>to, for him</i>	ējūs, <i>his, hers,</i>
A. ē' ūm	ē' ām	īd	<i>him, her, it</i>	<i>its</i>
A. ē' ō	ē' ā	ē' ō	<i>from, by him</i>	
Plural.				
N. ī' ī, ē' ī	ē' ae	ē' ā	<i>they</i>	
G. ē' ō' rūm	ē' ā' rūm	ē' ō' rūm	<i>of them</i>	ēōrūm, ēārūm,
D. ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	<i>to, for them</i>	ēōrūm, <i>their</i>
A. ē' ōs	ē' ās	ē' ā	<i>them</i>	<i>or theirs</i>
A. ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	<i>from, by them</i>	

Pronouns of the *Third Person*, from their signification, cannot have a *Vocative*.

248. The Reflexive Pronoun of the *Third Person* is:

SUBSTANTIVE.

POSSESSIVE.

Singular.

Nom.	—	
Gen.	sũ' ĭ, <i>of him(self), her(self), it(self)</i>	sũũs, sũă, sũũm, <i>his,</i>
Dat.	sĩ' bĩ, <i>to him(self), her(self), it(self)</i>	<i>her(s), its own</i>
Acc.	sē, <i>him(self), her(self), it(self)</i>	
Abl.	sē, <i>with him(self), her(self), it(self)</i>	

Plural.

Nom.	—	
Gen.	sũ' ĭ, <i>of them(selves)</i>	sũũs, sũă, sũũm, <i>their</i>
Dat.	sĩ' bĩ, <i>to them(selves)</i>	<i>own</i>
Acc.	sē, <i>them(selves)</i>	
Abl.	sē, <i>with them(selves)</i>	

249. Possessives are declined like Adjectives of the first and second Declensions; but mēũs has the Voc. Sing. Masc. mĩ (see 67).

250. From nostr̄ and vest̄ come the Patrial Adjectives: nostr̄as, -āt̄is, *of our country*; vest̄r̄as, -āt̄is, *of your country*.

251. The particle -mēt̄ is joined for emphasis to all forms of ěgō, except nostr̄m; to all forms of tũ, except tũ and vest̄r̄m; to sībĩ, sē and the forms of sũũs; as: ěgōmēt̄, *I myself*. -tē is joined to tũ: tũtē, *yourself*; -ptē is joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessive, as: suaptē m̄nũ, *by his own hand*; sē, the Accusative of sũĩ, is often doubled, as: sēsē. [27. 28. 33. 34.]

Pronouns of the Third Person.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

252. The proper Demonstratives are:

hĩc, *this*; istē, *that*; illē, *that (yonder)*.

Singular.

Plural.

hĩc, haec, hōc, *this (of mine)*

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	hĩc	haec	hōc	hĩ	hae	haec
G.	hũ' jũs	hũ' jũs	hũ' jũs	hō' rũm	hã' rũm	hō' rũm
D.	hũ' ĩc	hũ' ĩc	hũ' ĩc	hĩs	hĩs	hĩs
A.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hãs	haec
A.	hōc	hãc	hōc	hĩs	hĩs	hĩs

**istě, istā, istūd, that (of yours)**

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. i' stě	i' stā	i' stūd	i' stī	i' stae	i' stā
G. i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stō' rūm	i stā' rūm	i stō' rūm
D. i' stī	i' stī	i' stī	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs
A. i' stūm	i' stām	i' stūd	i' stōs	i' stās	i' stā
A. i' stō	i' stā	i' stō	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs

**illě, illā, illūd, that (yonder)**

N. il' lě	il' lā	il' lūd	il' lī	il' lae	il' lā
G. il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lō' rūm	il lā' rūm	il lō' rūm
D. il' lī	il' lī	il' lī	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs
A. il' lūm	il' lām	il' lūd	il' lōs	il' lās	il' lā
A. il' lō	il' lā	il' lō	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs

**253.** *istě* and *illě* have forms in **c**, but only in the Nominative, Accusative and Ablative singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative plural (*neuter only*), thus:

	Singular.			Plural.
Nom.	istĕc	istaec	istōc (commonly istūc)	istaec
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istōc ( " istūc)	istaec
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc	

**254.** Forms of *hĕc* ending in **s**, and the neuter *hōc* are found with the intensive **-cě**, *ās*: *hūjuscě*, *hoccě*. There is also an interrogative form with **-ně**, *hĕcĭně*, *haecĭně*, *hōcĭně*? *this here?*

[85. 86.]

**Determinative Pronouns.**

**255.** Certain pronouns connected with the Demonstratives in meaning, are ordinarily called **Determinatives**. These are:

**ĭs**, *he, that*; **ĭdĕm**, *the same*; **ĭpsĕ**, *he, self*.

*ĭs*, *ěā*, *ĭd*, *he, she, it; that.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ĭs	ě' ā	ĭd	ĭ' ĭ, ĕ' ĭ	ě' ae	ě' ā
Gen.	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' ō' rūm	ě' ā' rūm	ě' ō' rūm
Dat.	ě' ĭ	ě' ĭ	ě' ĭ	ĭ' ĭs, ĕ' ĭs	ĭ' ĭs, ĕ' ĭs	ĭ' ĭs, ĕ' ĭs
Acc.	ě' ūm	ě' ām	ĭd	ě' ōs	ě' ās	ě' ā
Abl.	ě' ō	ě' ā	ě' ō	ĭ' ĭs, ĕ' ĭs	ĭ' ĭs, ĕ' ĭs	ĭ' ĭs, ĕ' ĭs

Idēm, ěādēm, idēm, *the same.*

**Singular.**

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ī' dēm	ě' ā dēm	ī' dēm
Gen.	ě jūs' dēm	ě jus' dēm	ě jus' dēm
Dat.	ě ī' dēm	ě ī' dēm	ě ī' dēm
Acc.	ě un' dēm	ě an' dēm	ī' dēm
Abl.	ě ō' dēm	ě ā' dēm	ě ō' dēm

**Plural.**

Nom.	ī ī' dēm, ě ī' dēm	ě ae' dēm	ě' ā dēm
Gen.	ě ō run' dēm	ě ā run' dēm	ě ō run' dēm
Dat.	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm
Acc.	ě ōs' dēm	ě ās' dēm	ě' ā dēm
Abl.	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm

ipsě, ipsā, ipsūm, *he, she, it; self.*

**Singular.**

**Plural.**

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	ip' sě	ip' sǎ	ip' sūm	ip' sī	ip' sae	ip' sǎ
G.	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sō' rūm	ip' sā' rūm	ip' sō' rūm
D.	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs
A.	ip' sūm	ip' sām	ip' sūm	ip' sōs	ip' sās	ip' sǎ
A.	ip' sō	ip' sā	ip' sō	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs

[85. 86.]

**Relative Pronouns.**

**256. The Relative Pronoun is**

quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that.*

**Singular.**

**Plural.**

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cū' jūs	cū' jūs	cū' jūs	quō' rūm	quā' rūm	quō' rūm
D.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs
A.	quēm	quām	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs

**257. Ancient and rare forms:** quīs (queis) for quībūs; quī for quō, quā, chiefly with -cūm; quīcūm = quōcūm, *with whom.*

**258.** The following are **General Relatives**:

Adjective.	quicunquē	quaecunquē	quodcunquē, <i>whichever</i>
Substantive.	quisquīs, <i>whoever</i>	—	quidquīd, <i>whatever</i>

**259.** They are declined in the same manner as the simple words; **cunquē** is invariable; of **quisquīs** both parts are declined, but it is generally used in these two forms only: **quisquīs**, *whoever*; **quidquīd**, *whatever*. [87. 88.]

**Interrogative Pronouns.**

**260.** The **Interrogative** (that is question-asking) pronouns are:

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Substantive.	quīs? <i>who?</i>		quīd? <i>what?</i>
Adjective.	quī?	quae?	quōd? <i>which?</i>
Subst. and Adj.	ūtēr?	ūtrā?	ūtrūm? <i>who? which of two?</i>

**Singular.**

Nom.	quīs? <i>who?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Gen.	cū' jūs? <i>whose?</i>	cū' jūs? <i>of what?</i>
Dat.	cuī? <i>to or for whom?</i>	cuī? <i>to or for what?</i>
Acc.	quém? <i>whom?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Abl.	quō? <i>from or with whom?</i>	quō? <i>from or with what?</i>

**261.** The Plural of **quīs**, **quīd?** *who, what?* and both numbers of **quī**, **quae**, **quōd?** *which?* are the same as the forms of the Relative **quī**, **quae**, **quōd**, *who, which*.

**262.** For the Declension of **ūtēr** see **77**.

**263.** To all cases of **quīs?** **quīd?** the particle **nām** (literally *for*) may be appended for the sake of emphasis, answering to our English *pray*, as: **quidnām** *āgīs?* *pray, what are you doing?*

**264.** From **cūjūs**, *whose?* comes the **Patrial Adjective**

**cūjās**, **-ātīs**, *of whose country?* [87. 88.]

**Indefinite Pronouns.**

**265.** The following are **Indefinite Pronouns**:

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
quīs (subst. & adj.)	quae or quā	quīd (subst.), <i>any one</i>
quī (adj.)	quae or quā	quōd (adj.), <i>any one, any</i>
āliquīs (subst. & adj.)	āliquā	āliquīd (subst.), <i>some, some one</i>
āliquī (adj.)	āliquā	āliquōd (adj.), <i>some, some one</i>
quīdām (subst. & adj.)	quaedām	{ quiddām (subst.) } <i>a certain</i> { quoddām (adj.) } <i>one</i>



quispiām (subst. & adj.)	quaepiām	{ quidpiām (subst.)	{ some one,
quisquām (subst.)	—	{ quodpiām (adj.)	{ some
quisquē (subst. & adj.)	quaequē	quidquām (subst.),	any one (no pl.)
quīvis (subst. & adj.)	quaevis	{ quidquē (subst.)	{ each one
quīlibēt (subst. & adj.)	quaelībēt	{ quodquē (adj.)	{ each one
		{ quidvis (subst.)	{ any one
		{ quodvis (adj.)	{ you please,
		{ quidlibēt (subst.)	{ any one
		{ quodlibēt (adj.)	{ you like

**266.** They are all declined like the **Interrogatives**, except *āliquis*, which has in the feminine singular and the neuter plural *āliquā*. They take *quid* in the neuter when used substantively, and *quod* when used adjectively; *quisquām*, *any one*, is almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences.

**267.** *ūnusquisquē*, *ūnāquaeque*, *ūnumquidquē*, *ūnumquodquē*, *each one*, *every one*, *each*, is used only in the singular, and both *ūnūs* and *quisquē* are declined: Gen. *ūnūscūjusquē*, Dat. *ūnīcūiquē*, and so on.

**268.** Akin to *Indefinite Pronouns* are **Indefinite Adjectives**:  
*ullūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm*, *any*                      *āliūs*, *-ā*, *-ūd*, *another*  
*nullūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm*, *no*                      *altēr*, *-ā*, *-ūm*, *the other (of two)*  
*nonnullūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm*, *some*              *neutēr*, *-rā*, *-rūm*, *neither*

To *ullūs* and *nullūs* the corresponding nouns are: *nēmō* (*-īnis*), *nobody*, and *nīhīl* (indeclinable), *nothing*.

**269.** Mark the following **Pronominal Adjectives**:

<b>Demonstrative.</b>		<b>Relative.</b>	
<i>tālīs</i> , <i>-ē</i> , <i>such</i>		<i>quālīs</i> , <i>-ē</i> , <i>such as</i>	
<i>tantūs</i> , <i>-ā</i> , <i>-ūm</i> , <i>so great</i>		<i>quantūs</i> , <i>-ā</i> , <i>-ūm</i> , <i>as great</i>	
<i>tōt</i> , <i>so many</i>		<i>quōt</i> , <i>as many as</i>	
<b>Interrogative.</b>		<b>Indefinite.</b>	
<i>quālīs</i> , <i>-ē</i> ? <i>what? of what sort?</i>		<i>āliquantūs</i> , <i>-ā</i> , <i>-ūm</i> , <i>some, con-</i>	
<i>quantūs</i> , <i>-ā</i> , <i>-ūm</i> ? <i>how great?</i>		<i>siderable</i>	
<i>quōt</i> ? <i>how many?</i>		<i>āliquōt</i> , <i>some</i>	

Of these *tōt*, *quōt*, *āliquōt* are indeclinable, the rest are declined like adjectives.

They are called **Correlatives**, when used in pairs, so that one refers or answers to the other, as: *tālīs*..*quālīs*, *such*..*as*; *like*..*like*; *tantūs*..*quantūs*, *so great*..*as*; *tōt*..*quōt*, *so many*..*as*;

## VERBS.

**270.** The **Essential Characteristic** of a verb is that it ascribes some action, state, or quality to a subject. Verbs, like Nouns and Pronouns, have their inflection, or changes of form in order to express certain changes of meaning; this inflection is called their **Conjugation**.

The forms of **Conjugation** are:

**Voices**, genēra; **Tenses**, tempōra; **Moods**, mōdi;  
**Numbers** and **Persons**, numēri et persōnae.

### Voices.

**271.** Some verbs are usually followed by an object signifying that at which the action of the verb is directed. They are said to be **Transitive Verbs** and express an assertion in two forms, called the **Active Voice** and the **Passive Voice**.

**272.** The **Active Voice** denotes that the action proceeds from the subject, as: canis puērum mordēbat, *the dog bit the boy*. The **Passive** denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb, as: puer mordebātur a cane, *the boy was bitten by the dog*.

**273.** Other verbs, again, express an action which is limited to the subject, as: puer currit, *the boy runs*. They are called **Intransitive Verbs**, and from their nature cannot be regularly used in the **Passive Voice**.

**274.** Transitive verbs may be used without any expressed object (*absolutely*), as: puer scribit, *the boy writes*.

**275.** A **Reflexive Verb** is one that represents the action as exerted by the subject upon itself. The **Passive Voice** often has a reflexive meaning, as: occasiō datur, *the occasion offers, presents itself*.

**276.** The **Active** and **Passive** Voices in Latin are equivalent to the corresponding English forms. Many verbs are only used in the **Passive** form, but with an active or reflexive signification; they are called **Deponents**.

**277.** Some verbs which form their Perfect like *Deponents*, are called **Semi-Deponents**, as:

audēō, -ērē, to dare	ausūs sūm, I dared
gaudēō, -ērē, to rejoice	gāvīsūs sūm, I rejoiced
sōlēō, -ērē, to be wont	sōlītūs sūm, I was wont
fidō, -ērē, to trust	fīsūs sūm, I trusted

**278.** Some Active Verbs have a Perfect **Passive** Participle with **Active** meaning, viz.:

cēnō, -ārē, to dine	cēnātūs, having dined
prandēō, -ērē, to breakfast	pransūs, having breakfasted
pōtō, -ārē, to drink	pōtūs, having drunk
jūrō, -ārē, to swear	jūrātūs, having sworn

**279.** Again, a few **Active** verbs have a **Passive** meaning; they are sometimes called **Neutral Passives**, viz.:

vāpūlārē, to be flogged; vēnīrē (vēnūm īrē, to go to sale), to be sold.

### Tenses.

**280.** There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

#### Of Continued Action

the **Present**, as: scrībō, *I am writing*;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: scrībēbām, *I was writing*;

the **Future**, as: scrībām, *I shall write*.

#### Of Completed Action

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: scripsī, *I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: scripsērām, *I had written*;

the **Future Perfect**, as: scripsērō, *I shall have written*.

The **Passive** has the same tenses. (For Particulars see *Syntax*.)

### Moods.

**281.** The **Moods** are three, **Indicative**, **Subjunctive**, and **Imperative**.

**282.** The **Indicative** is used for direct assertions or interrogations, corresponding, without any auxiliary, to the three forms of an English verb, viz.: the **Simple**, **Progressive**, and **Emphatic**, as: scrībō, *I write, am writing, do write*.

**283.** The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances, as: *āmārēm, I should love.*

**284.** The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice, or exhortation*, as: *este diligentes, puēri, be diligent, boys!*

**285.** These three moods which are limited by *person, number, and time* are called the **Finite Verb**.

### Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.

**286.** Outside of the Finite Verb, and partaking of the nature of nouns, are certain **Verbal Forms** which are so important that they are always given with the inflectional forms, as part of the conjugation of the verb.

**287.** The **Infinitive** is not limited to a particular number or person, as the ordinary verbal forms, but is really a **Verbal Noun**, as: *āmārē, to love.*

**288.** The **Gerund** is a verbal noun of the *Second Declension*, used only in the singular, and wanting the nominative and vocative; it corresponds to the English Participial Infinitive in *ing*, as: *āmandī, of loving.*

**289.** The **Gerundive** differs from the Gerund only in having adjective terminations in *ūs, ā, ūm*, thus: **Gerund**, *āmandī, of loving*; **Gerundive**, *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm, to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

**290.** The **Participle** gives, like the English Participle, the meaning of the verb in the form of an Adjective.

**291.** A Latin verb may have four **Participles**: two in the **Active**, the Present and the Future—*āmans, loving*; *āmātūrūs, about to love*; and two in the **Passive**, the Perfect, *āmātūs, loved*, and the Future, commonly called Gerundive; *āmandūs, deserving to be loved.*

**292.** The **Supine** is a verbal noun of the *Fourth Declension*, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm, āmātū, to love.*

## Numbers and Persons.

**293.** There are two **Numbers**, *Singular* and *Plural*, and three **Persons**: *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

**294.** The **Personal Endings** for each of the three persons, both singular and plural, active and passive, are as follows:

	PERSON.	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
Sing.	1. <i>I</i>	-ō, -m	ăm-ō	-r	ămō-r
	2. <i>thou, you</i>	-s	ămā-s	-rīs	ămā-rīs
	3. <i>he, she, it</i>	-t	ămă-t	-tūr	ămă-tūr
Plur.	1. <i>we</i>	-mūs	ămā-mūs	-mūr	ămā-mūr
	2. <i>you</i>	-tīs	ămā-tīs	-mīnī	ămā-mīnī
	3. <i>they</i>	-nt	ăma-nt	-ntūr	ăma-ntūr

The *Imperative* has the following terminations:

Sing.	2.	-	ămā	-rē	ămā-rē
"	3.	-tō	ămā-tō	-tōr	ămā-tōr
Plur.	2.	-tē, -tōtē	ămā-tē	-mīnī	ămā-mīnī
"	3.	-ntō	ăma-ntō	-ntōr	ăma-ntōr

The *Perfect Indicative (active)* has the special terminations:

Sing.	2.	-stī	ămāvi-stī	Plur.	2.	-stīs	ămāvi-stīs
				"	3.	-ērunt	ămāv-ērunt

## The Four Conjugations.

**295.** Verbs are inflected in four regular **Conjugations**, distinguished by the ending of the **Present Infinitive Active**, viz.:

- I. **First Conjugation** -ārē; stem ending in ā;
- II. **Second Conjugation** -ērē; " " in ē;
- III. **Third Conjugation** -ērē; " " in a consonant or ū;
- IV. **Fourth Conjugation** -īrē; " " in ī.

**296.** Besides the **Present Infinitive** we need to know the **Present Indicative Active**, *First Person*, the **Perfect Indicative Active**, *First Person*, the **Former Supine**, in order to understand the whole inflection of any verb. Hence these four are called the **Principal Parts**

or **Stem-forms**, and in describing any verb these are given. Their regular forms are seen in the following:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
I. <i>āmō</i>	<i>āmārē, to love</i>	<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmātūm</i>
II. <i>mōnēō</i>	<i>mōnērē, to advise</i>	<i>mōnūī</i>	<i>mōnitūm</i>
III. <i>lēgō</i>	<i>lēgērē, to read</i>	<i>lēgī</i>	<i>lectūm</i>
IV. <i>audīō</i>	<i>audīrē, to hear</i>	<i>audīvī</i>	<i>audītūm</i>

**297.** The **Principal Parts** being known, the rest of the conjugation is found by the following rules.

### Simple Forms of the Verb.

**298.** From the **PRESENT INDICATIVE** are formed: the **Present Subjunctive** by changing

I.	<i>-ō</i>	into	<i>-ēm</i>	<i>ām-ō</i>	<i>ām-ēm</i>
II.	<i>-ēō</i>	"	<i>-ěām</i>	<i>mōn-ēō</i>	<i>mōn-ěām</i>
III.	<i>-ō</i>	"	<i>-ām</i>	<i>lēg-ō</i>	<i>lēg-ām</i>
IV.	<i>-īō</i>	"	<i>-īām</i>	<i>aud-īō</i>	<i>aud-īām</i>

the **Imperfect Indicative** by changing

I.	<i>-ō</i>	into	<i>-ābām</i>	<i>ām-ō</i>	<i>ām-ābām</i>
II.	<i>-ēō</i>	"	<i>-ēbām</i>	<i>mōn-ēō</i>	<i>mōn-ēbām</i>
III.	<i>-ō</i>	"	<i>-ēbām</i>	<i>lēg-ō</i>	<i>lēg-ēbām</i>
IV.	<i>-īō</i>	"	<i>-īēbām</i>	<i>aud-īō</i>	<i>aud-īēbām</i>

the **Future Indicative** by changing

I.	<i>-ō</i>	into	<i>-ābō</i>	<i>ām-ō</i>	<i>ām-ābō</i>
II.	<i>-ēō</i>	"	<i>-ēbō</i>	<i>mōn-ēō</i>	<i>mōn-ēbō</i>
III.	<i>-ō</i>	"	<i>-ām</i>	<i>lēg-ō</i>	<i>lēg-ām</i>
IV.	<i>-īō</i>	"	<i>-īām</i>	<i>aud-īō</i>	<i>aud-īām</i>

the **Present Participle** by changing

I.	<i>-ō</i>	into	<i>-ans</i>	<i>ām-ō</i>	<i>ām-ans</i>
II.	<i>-ēō</i>	"	<i>-ens</i>	<i>mōn-ēō</i>	<i>mōn-ens</i>
III.	<i>-ō</i>	"	<i>-ens</i>	<i>lēg-ō</i>	<i>lēg-ens</i>
IV.	<i>-īō</i>	"	<i>-iens</i>	<i>aud-īō</i>	<i>aud-iens</i>

the **Gerundive** (and the **Gerund**) by changing

I.	<i>-ō</i>	into	<i>-andūs</i>	<i>ām-ō</i>	<i>ām-andūs</i>
II.	<i>-ēō</i>	"	<i>-endūs</i>	<i>mōn-ēō</i>	<i>mōn-endūs</i>
III.	<i>-ō</i>	"	<i>-endūs</i>	<i>lēg-ō</i>	<i>lēg-endūs</i>
IV.	<i>-īō</i>	"	<i>-iendūs</i>	<i>aud-īō</i>	<i>aud-iendūs</i>

**299.** From the **PRESENT INFINITIVE** are formed:

the **Imperfect Subjunctive Active** by adding **m**:

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I. āmārē, āmārē- <b>m</b>    | III. lēgērē, lēgērē- <b>m</b> |
| II. mōnērē, mōnērē- <b>m</b> | IV. audirē, audirē- <b>m</b>  |

the **Imperfect Subjunctive Passive** by adding **r**:

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I. āmārē, āmārē- <b>r</b>    | III. lēgērē, lēgērē- <b>r</b> |
| II. mōnērē, mōnērē- <b>r</b> | IV. audirē, audirē- <b>r</b>  |

the **Present Imperative Active** by dropping **rē**:

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| I. āmā- <b>rē</b> , āmā    | III. lēgē- <b>rē</b> , lēgē |
| II. mōnē- <b>rē</b> , mōnē | IV. audī- <b>rē</b> , audī  |

the **Present Imperative Passive** identically:

- |          |            |             |            |
|----------|------------|-------------|------------|
| I. āmārē | II. mōnērē | III. lēgērē | IV. audirē |
|----------|------------|-------------|------------|

the **Present Infinitive Passive** by changing

- |          |      |   |                 |                 |
|----------|------|---|-----------------|-----------------|
| I. ē     | into | ī | āmār- <b>ē</b>  | āmār- <b>ī</b>  |
| II. ē    | "    | ī | mōnēr- <b>ē</b> | mōnēr- <b>ī</b> |
| III. ērē | "    | ī | lēg- <b>ērē</b> | lēg- <b>ī</b>   |
| IV. ē    | "    | ī | audīr- <b>ē</b> | audīr- <b>ī</b> |

**300.** From the **PERFECT INDICATIVE** are formed:

the **Pluperfect Indicative** by changing **ī** into **ērām**:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. āmāv- <b>ī</b> , āmāv- <b>ērām</b>  | III. lēg- <b>ī</b> , lēg- <b>ērām</b>    |
| II. mōnū- <b>ī</b> , mōnū- <b>ērām</b> | IV. audīv- <b>ī</b> , audīv- <b>ērām</b> |

the **Future Perfect** by changing **ī** into **ērō**:

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| I. āmāv- <b>ī</b> , āmāv- <b>ērō</b>  | III. lēg- <b>ī</b> , lēg- <b>ērō</b>    |
| II. mōnū- <b>ī</b> , mōnū- <b>ērō</b> | IV. audīv- <b>ī</b> , audīv- <b>ērō</b> |

the **Perfect Subjunctive** by changing **ī** into **ērīm**:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. āmāv- <b>ī</b> , āmāv- <b>ērīm</b>  | III. lēg- <b>ī</b> , lēg- <b>ērīm</b>    |
| II. mōnū- <b>ī</b> , mōnū- <b>ērīm</b> | IV. audīv- <b>ī</b> , audīv- <b>ērīm</b> |

the **Pluperfect Subjunctive** by changing **ī** into **issēm**:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I. āmāv- <b>ī</b> , āmāv- <b>issēm</b>  | III. lēg- <b>ī</b> , lēg- <b>issēm</b>    |
| II. mōnū- <b>ī</b> , mōnū- <b>issēm</b> | IV. audīv- <b>ī</b> , audīv- <b>issēm</b> |

the **Perfect Infinitive** by changing **ī** into **issē**:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. āmāv- <b>ī</b> , āmāv- <b>issē</b>  | III. lēg- <b>ī</b> , lēg- <b>issē</b>    |
| II. mōnū- <b>ī</b> , mōnū- <b>issē</b> | IV. audīv- <b>ī</b> , audīv- <b>issē</b> |

301. From the SUPINE are formed:

the Perfect Participle by changing ūm into ūs:

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| I. āmāt-ūm, āmāt-ūs    | III. lect-ūm, lect-ūs  |
| II. mōnīt-ūm, mōnīt-ūs | IV. audīt-ūm, audīt-ūs |

the Future Participle by changing ūm into ūrūs:

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| I. āmāt-ūm, āmāt-ūrūs    | III. lect-ūm, lect-ūrūs  |
| II. mōnīt-ūm, mōnīt-ūrūs | IV. audīt-ūm, audīt-ūrūs |

302. Of the active tenses of continued action, viz.: Present, Imperfect, and Future, those ending in ō become passive by changing ō into ōr; those ending in m, by changing m into r, as:

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| I. ām-ō, ām-ōr      | III. lēg-ō, lēg-ōr  |
| āmē-m, āmē-r        | lēgā-m, lēgā-r      |
| II. mōnē-ō, mōnē-ōr | IV. audī-ō, audī-ōr |
| mōnēā-m, mōnēā-r    | audiā-m, audiā-r    |

To TEACHERS. As the *theory* of conjugation is beset, to the beginner, by some special difficulties, it seems best that the *Paradigms themselves* should be made very familiar, before the *systematic study* of the foregoing rules is taken up. At this stage, *AHN-HENNS Paradigm Charts* exhibiting the *Essentials of Latin Conjugation*, will greatly help in mastering one of the numerous difficulties of the language.

### Compound Forms.

303. All the rest are compound forms, made by the aid of the **Auxiliary** verb *essē, to be*:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
sūm	essē, to be	fūī	—

#### INDICATIVE.

Present.	Perfect.
sūm, I am	fū' ī, I have been (was)
ēs, thou art	fū' ī' stī, thou hast been
est, he, she, it is	fū' īt, he has been
sū' mūs, we are	fū' ī mūs, we have been
e' stīs, you are	fū' ī' stīs, you have been
sunt, they are	fū' ē' runt, they have been



INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

ě' rām, *I was*  
 ě' rās, *thou wast*  
 ě' rāt, *he was*  
 ě' rā' mūs, *we were*  
 ě' rā' tīs, *you were*  
 ě' rant, *they were*

Future.

ě' rō, *I shall be*  
 ě' rīs, *thou wilt be*  
 ě' rīt, *he will be*  
 ě' rī mūs, *we shall be*  
 ě' rī tīs, *you will be*  
 ě' runt, *they will be*

Pluperfect.

fŭ' ě rām, *I had been*  
 fŭ' ě rās, *thou hadst been*  
 fŭ' ě rāt, *he had been*  
 fŭ' ě rā' mūs, *we had been*  
 fŭ' ě rā' tīs, *you had been*  
 fŭ' ě rant, *they had been*

Future Perfect.

fŭ' ě rō, *I shall have been*  
 fŭ' ě rīs, *thou wilt have been*  
 fŭ' ě rīt, *he will have been*  
 fŭ' ě rī mūs, *we shall have been*  
 fŭ' ě rī tīs, *you will have been*  
 fŭ' ě rint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sīm, *may I be\**  
 sīs, *be thou, or may you be*  
 sīt, *let him be (may he be)*  
 sī' mūs, *let us be*  
 sī' tīs, *be ye, or may ye be*  
 sint, *let them be (may they be)*

Imperfect.

es' sēm, *I should be (were)*  
 es' sēs, *thou wouldst be*  
 es' sēt, *he would be*  
 es' sē' mūs, *we should be*  
 es' sē' tīs, *you would be*  
 es' sent, *they would be*

Perfect.

fŭ' ě rīm, *I may have been*  
 fŭ' ě rīs, *thou mayest have been*  
 fŭ' ě rīt, *he may have been*  
 fŭ' ě rī mūs, *we may have been*  
 fŭ' ě rī tīs, *you may have been*  
 fŭ' ě rint, *they may have been*

Pluperfect.

fŭ' is' sēm, *I should have been*  
 fŭ' is' sēs, *thou wouldst have been*  
 fŭ' is' sēt, *he would have been*  
 fŭ' is' sē' mūs, *we should have been*  
 fŭ' is' sē' tīs, *you would have been*  
 fŭ' is' sent, *they would have been*

Future.

fŭ' tŭ' rūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	sīm, <i>I may be about to be</i>
		sīs, <i>thou mayest be about to be</i>
fŭ' tŭ' rī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sīt, <i>he may be about to be</i>
		sī' mūs, <i>we may be about to be</i>
		sī' tīs, <i>you may be about to be</i>
		sint, <i>they may be about to be</i>

\* The rendering of the Subjunctive here given shows the most frequent meanings of its forms *when used independently*.

IMPERATIVE,

	Singular.	Plural.
Present.	ěs, <i>be thou</i>	e' stě, <i>be ye</i>
Future.	e' stō, <i>thou shalt be</i> e' stō, <i>he shall be</i>	e stō' tě, <i>ye shall be</i> sun' tō, <i>they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	es' sě, <i>to be</i>
Perfect.	fŭ is' sě, <i>to have been</i>
Future.	fŭ tŭ' rūm, -ām, -ŭm es' sě, or fō'rě, <i>to be about to be</i>
Future Participle.	fŭ tŭ' rūs, -ā, -ŭm, <i>about to be</i>

**304.** The Future Perfect is wanting in the **Subjunctive** which is represented, when necessary, by the Subjunctive of the Perfect or Pluperfect, according to the connection of the sentence.

**305.** The verb *essě* has no **Gerund** or **Supine**, and no **Participle** but the **Future**.

[111—114.]

**306.** Compounds of *essě*.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
absŭm	ăbessě, <i>to be absent, be away</i>	ăfŭi	—
adsŭm	ădessě, <i>to be present</i>	adfŭi	—
dēsŭm	dēessě, <i>to be wanting</i>	děfŭi	—
insŭm	inessě, <i>to be in</i>	infŭi	—
intersŭm	intěressě, <i>to be between</i>	interfŭi	—
obsŭm	ōbessě, <i>to be in the way</i>	obfŭi	—
praesŭm	praeessě, <i>to be over</i>	praefŭi	—
prōsŭm	prōdessě, <i>to be useful</i>	prōfŭi	—
subsŭm	sŭbessě, <i>to be under</i>	wanting	--
sŭpersŭm	sŭpěressě, <i>to remain over</i>	sŭperfŭi	—

**307.** All these Compounds are conjugated like *sŭm*; but *prōsŭm* inserts a **d** when **prō** would be followed by **e**, thus:

Present.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.	Future.
prōsŭm	prōděrām	prōdessēm	prōděrō
prōdēs	prōděrās	prōdessēs	prōděrīs
prōdest	prōděrāt	prōdessēt	prōděrīt
prōsŭmŭs	prōděrāmŭs	prōdessēmŭs	prōděrīmŭs
prōdestīs	prōděrātīs	prōdessētīs	prōděrītīs
prōsunt	prōděrant	prōdessent	prōděrunt

Imperative.	Infinitive.
prōdēs	prōdestě
prōdestō	prōdestōtě

**308.** Neither *sūm* nor any of its compounds has a present participle, except: *praesens*, *-tīs*, *present*; *absens*, *-tīs*, *absent*; *essē* is also compounded with *pōtīs*, *pōtē*, *able*, in the verb *possē*. For its inflection see **401**. [115. 116.]

**309.** The **Perfect**, **Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect**, and also the **Perfect Infinitive** in the **Passive Voice** are compound forms, made up of the **Perfect Participle** and the verb *essē* as an auxiliary, as:

Perf.      *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sūm*, *I have been or was loved*  
 Perf. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm es'sē*, *to have been loved*  
 Pluperf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērām*, *I had been loved*  
 Fut. Perf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērō*, *I shall have been loved*  
 Fut. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fōrē*, *to be about to be loved*

**310.** In the compound tenses of the **Passive**, the **Participle** is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb, as:

*bellum parātum est*, *war has been prepared*.

### Periphrastic Conjugation.

**311.** The **Periphrastic Conjugation** is formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the **Future Participle** (**Active**), and with the **Gerundive** (**Passive**).

### 312. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

#### INDICATIVE.

Present.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sūm*, *I am about to love*  
 Imperf.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērām*, *I was about to love*  
 Future.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērō*, *I shall be about to love*  
 Perfect.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūī*, *I have been, or was about to love*  
 Pluperf.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērām*, *I had been about to love*  
 Fut. Perf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērō*, *I shall have been about to love*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sīm*, *I may be about to love*  
 Imperf.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm essēm*, *I should be about to love*  
 Future.   *(wanting)*  
 Perfect.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērīm*, *I may have been about to love*  
 Pluperf.   *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūissēm*, *I should have been about to*  
 Fut. Perf. *(wanting)* [love

INFINITIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm* *essē, to be about to love*  
 Perfect. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissē, to have been about to love*

**313. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.**

INDICATIVE.

Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *sūm, I have to be loved*  
 Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *ērām, I had to be loved.*  
 Future. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *ērō, I shall have to be loved*  
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūī, I (have) had to be loved*  
 Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērām, I had had to be loved*  
 Fut. Perf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērō, I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *sīm, I may have to be loved*  
 Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *essēm, I should have to be loved*  
 Future. (*wanting*)  
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērīm, I may have had to be loved*  
 Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissēm, I should have had to be loved*  
 Fut. Perf. (*wanting*)

INFINITIVE.

Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *essē, to have to be loved*  
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissē, to have had to be loved*

**314. Impersonal Periphrastic Conjugation.**

The Neuter of the Gerundive with *est, ērāt, etc.*, is used impersonally, if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vīvendūm est, we or you must live; mōriendūm est, we or you must die.* But the person *by whom* may also be added in the dative, thus:

*mihi* scribendum est, *I must or should write*  
*tibi* scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*  
*ei* scribendum est, *he must or should write*  
*nobis* scribendum est, *we must or should write*  
*vobis* scribendum est, *you must or should write*  
*eis* scribendum est, *they must or should write*

[171. 172.]

**315.** The **Future Infinitive Passive** is a compound form made up of the **Supine** and **īrī** (lit. *to be gone*), which is the *Infinitive Passive* of the verb *īrē, to go.*

I. *āmātūm īrī*  
 II. *mōnītūm īrī*

III. *lectūm īrī*  
 IV. *auditūm īrī*

316. First Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.  
 āmō, -āre, to love

Perfect.  
 āmāvi

Supine.  
 āmātūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ā' mō, I love  
 ā' mās, thou lovest  
 ā' māt, he loves  
 ā mā' mūs, we love  
 ā mā' tīs, you love  
 ā' mant, they love

ā' mēm, may I love  
 ā' mēs, love thou  
 ā' mēt, let him love  
 ā mē' mūs, let us love  
 ā mē' tīs, love ye  
 ā' ment, let them love

Imperfect.

ā mā' bām, I was loving  
 ā mā' bās, thou wast loving  
 ā mā' bāt, he was loving  
 ā mā bā' mūs, we were loving  
 ā mā bā' tīs, you were loving  
 ā mā' bant, they were loving

ā mā' rēm, I should love  
 ā mā' rēs, thou wouldst love  
 ā mā' rēt, he would love  
 ā mā rē' mūs, we should love  
 ā mā rē' tīs, you would love  
 ā mā' rent, they would love

Future.

ā mā' bō, I shall love  
 ā mā' bīs, thou wilt love  
 ā mā' bīt, he will love  
 ā mā' bī mūs, we shall love  
 ā mā' bī tīs, you will love  
 ā mā' bunt, they will love

ā mā tū' rūš, { sīm  
 -ā, -ūm { sīs  
 { sīt } be about  
 ā mā tū' rī, { sī' mūs } to love  
 -ae, -ā { sī' tīs }  
 { sit }

Perfect.

ā mā' vī, I have loved  
 ā mā vi' stī, thou hast loved  
 ā mā' vīt, he has loved  
 ā mā' vī mūs, we have loved  
 ā mā vi' stīs, you have loved  
 ā mā vē' runt, they have loved

ā mā' vē rīm, I may have loved  
 ā mā' vē rīs, thou mayest have l.  
 ā mā' vē rīt, he may have loved  
 ā mā vē rī mūs, we may have l.  
 ā mā vē rī tīs, you may have l.  
 ā mā' vē rint, they may have l.

Pluperfect.

ā mā' vē rām, I had loved  
 ā mā' vē rās, thou hadst loved  
 ā mā' vē rāt, he had loved  
 ā mā vē rā' mūs, we had loved  
 ā mā vē rā' tīs, you had loved  
 ā mā' vē rant, they had loved

ā mā vis' sēm, I should have l.  
 ā mā vis' sēs, thou wouldst h. l.  
 ā mā vis' sēt, he would have l.  
 ā mā vis sē' mūs, we should h. l.  
 ā mā vis sē' tīs, you would h. l.  
 ā mā vis' sent, they would h. l.

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ã mā' vē rō,	<i>I shall have loved</i>	(wanting)
ã mā' vē rīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved</i>	
ã mā' vē rīt,	<i>he will have loved</i>	
ã mā vē rī mūs,	<i>we shall have loved</i>	
ã mā vē rī tīs,	<i>you will have loved</i>	
ã mā' vē rint,	<i>they will have loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Present.	ã' mā,	<i>love thou</i>	ã mā' tē,	<i>love ye</i>
Future.	ã mā' tō,	<i>thou shalt love</i>	ã mā tō' tē,	<i>ye shall love</i>
	ã mā' tō,	<i>he shall love</i>	ã man' tō,	<i>they shall love</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	ã mā' rē,	<i>to love</i>
Perfect.	ã mā vis' sē,	<i>to have loved</i>
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	ã mā tū' rūš, -ã, -ũm es' sē
"	Acc.	ã mā tū' rūm, -ãm, -ũm es' sē
Plur.	Nom.	ã mā tū' rī, -ae, -ã es' sē
"	Acc.	ã mā tū' rōš, -ãš, -ã es' sē

} *to be about to love*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	ã' mans, ã man' tīs,	<i>loving</i>
Future.	ã mā tū' rūš, ã mā tū' rã, ã mā tū' rūm,	<i>about to love</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	ã man' dī,	<i>of loving</i>
Dat.	ã man' dō,	<i>for loving</i>
Acc.	ã man' dũm,	<i>loving</i>
Abl.	ã man' dō,	<i>by loving</i>
	ã mā' tũm	} <i>to love</i>
	ã mā' tū	

[117-120.]

317. First Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ã mōr,	<i>I am loved</i>	ã' mēr,	<i>may I be loved</i>
ã mā' rīs,	<i>thou art loved</i>	ã mē' rīs,	<i>be thou loved</i>
ã mā' tūr,	<i>he is loved</i>	ã mē' tūr,	<i>let him be loved</i>
ã mā' mūr,	<i>we are loved</i>	ã mē' mūr,	<i>let us be loved</i>
ã mā' mī nī,	<i>you are loved</i>	ã mē' mī nī,	<i>be ye loved</i>
ã man' tūr,	<i>they are loved</i>	ã men' tūr,	<i>let them be loved</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

ǎ mā' bǎr, <i>I was loved</i>	ǎ mā' rěr, <i>I should be loved</i>
ǎ mā' bǎ' rīs, <i>thou wast loved</i>	ǎ mā' rěr' rīs, <i>thou wouldst be l.</i>
ǎ mā' bǎ' tūr, <i>he was loved</i>	ǎ mā' rěr' tūr, <i>he would be loved</i>
ǎ mā' bǎ' mūr, <i>we were loved</i>	ǎ mā' rěr' mūr, <i>we should be loved</i>
ǎ mā' bǎ' mī nī, <i>you were loved</i>	ǎ mā' rěr' mī nī, <i>you would be l.</i>
ǎ mā' ban' tūr, <i>they were loved</i>	ǎ mā' ren' tūr, <i>they would be l.</i>

Future.

ǎ mā' bōr, <i>I shall be loved</i>	(wanting)
ǎ mā' bě rīs, <i>thou wilt be loved</i>	
ǎ mā' bī tūr, <i>he will be loved</i>	
ǎ mā' bī mūr, <i>we shall be loved</i>	
ǎ mā' bī' mī nī, <i>you will be loved</i>	
ǎ mā' bun' tūr, <i>they will be loved</i>	

Perfect.

<i>I have been or was loved</i>	<i>I may have been loved</i>
ǎ mā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { sūm	ǎ mā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { sīm
{ ěs	{ sīs
{ est	{ sīt
ǎ mā' tī, -ae, -ǎ { sū' mūs	ǎ mā' tī, -ae, -ǎ { sī' mūs
{ e' stīs	{ sī' tīs
{ sunt	{ sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>I might have been loved</i>
ǎ mā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { ě' rǎm	ǎ mā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { es' sēm
{ ě' rās	{ es' sēs
{ ě' rǎt	{ es' sēt
ǎ mā' tī, -ae, -ǎ { ǎ rā' mūs	ǎ mā' tī, -ae, -ǎ { es sē' mūs
{ ě rā' tīs	{ es sē' tīs
{ ě' rant	{ es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have been loved</i>	(wanting)
ǎ mā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { ě' rō	
{ ě' rīs	
{ ě' rīt	
ǎ mā' tī, -ae, -ǎ { ě' rī mūs	
{ ě' rī tīs	
{ ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres.	ă mā' rĕ, <i>be thou loved</i>	ă mā' mī nī, <i>be ye loved</i>
Fut.	ă mā' tōr, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>	
	ă mā' tōr, <i>he shall be loved</i>	ă man' tōr, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	ă mā' rī, <i>to be loved</i>	
Perfect Sing.	Nom. ă mā' tūs, -ă, -ŭm es' sĕ	} <i>to have been loved</i>
	Acc. ă mā' tŭm, -ăm, -ŭm es' sĕ	
Plur.	Nom. ă mā' tī, -ae, -ă es' sĕ	
	Acc. ă mā' tōs, -ăs, -ă es' sĕ	
Future.	ă mā' tŭm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	ă mā' tūs, ă mā' tă, ă mā' tŭm, <i>loved, beloved, or having been loved</i>
Gerundive.	ă man' dŭs, ă man' dă, ă man' dŭm, <i>to be loved, deserving to be loved</i>

Examples for Practice:

ăgītō, -ārĕ, <i>to agitate</i>	spērō, -ārĕ, <i>to hope for</i>
ēdŭcō, -ārĕ, <i>to bring up</i>	occō, -ārĕ, <i>to harrow</i>
ēvitō, -ārĕ, <i>to avoid, shun</i>	compārō, -ārĕ, <i>to compare</i>
admīnistrō, -ārĕ, <i>to govern</i>	cāvō, -ārĕ, <i>to (make) hollow</i>
turbō, -ārĕ, <i>to trouble</i>	lăcĕrō, -ārĕ, <i>to tear into pieces</i>
conservō, -ārĕ, <i>to preserve</i>	expugnō, -ārĕ, <i>to capture</i>
multō, -ārĕ, <i>to punish</i>	vastō, -ārĕ, <i>to lay waste</i>

[121. 122.]

318. Second Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
mōnĕō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to advise</i>	mōnŭī	mōnītŭm

INDICATIVE.

mō' nĕ ō, <i>I advise</i>
mō' nĕs, <i>thou advisest</i>
mō' nĕt, <i>he advises</i>
mō nĕ' mŭs, <i>we advise</i>
mō nĕ' tīs, <i>you advise</i>
mō' nent, <i>they advise</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

mō' nĕ ăm, <i>may I advise</i>
mō' nĕ ăs, <i>advise thou</i>
mō' nĕ ăt, <i>let him advise</i>
mō nĕ ă' mŭs, <i>let us advise</i>
mō nĕ ă' tīs, <i>advise ye</i>
mō' nĕ ant, <i>let them advise</i>



INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

<i>mǒ nē' bām, I was advising</i>	<i>mǒ nē' rēm, I should advise</i>
<i>mǒ nē' bās, thou wast advising</i>	<i>mǒ nē' rēs, thou wouldst advise</i>
<i>mǒ nē' bāt, he was advising</i>	<i>mǒ nē' rēt, he would advise</i>
<i>mǒ nē bā' mūs, we were advis'g</i>	<i>mǒ nē rē' mūs, we should advise</i>
<i>mǒ nē bā' tīs, you were advis'g</i>	<i>mǒ nē rē' tīs, you would advise</i>
<i>mǒ nē' bant, they were advis'g</i>	<i>mǒ nē' rent, they would advise</i>

Future.

<i>mǒ nē' bō, I shall advise</i>	<i>mǒ nī tū' rūš,</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{be about} \\ \text{to advise} \end{array}$
<i>mǒ nē' bīs, thou wilt advise</i>	<i>-ā, -ūm</i>	
<i>mǒ nē' bīt, he will advise</i>	<i>mǒ nī tū' rī,</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sī' mūs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>mǒ nē' bī mūs, we shall advise</i>	<i>-ae, -ā</i>	
<i>mǒ nē' bī tīs, you will advise</i>		
<i>mǒ nē' bunt, they will advise</i>		

Perfect.

<i>mǒ' nū ī, I (have) advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū' ě rīm, I may have adv'd</i>
<i>mǒ nū i' stī, thou hast advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū' ě rīs, thou mayest have a.</i>
<i>mǒ' nū it, he has advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū' ě rīt, he may have adv'd</i>
<i>mǒ nū' ī mūs, we have advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū ě rī mūs, we may have a.</i>
<i>mǒ nū i' stīs, you have advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū ě rī tīs, you may have a.</i>
<i>mǒ nū ě' runt, they have advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū' ě rint, they may have a.</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>mǒ nū' ě rām, I had advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū is' sēm, I should have a.</i>
<i>mǒ nū' ě rās, thou hadst advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū is' sēs, thou wouldst h. a.</i>
<i>mǒ nū' ě rāt, he had advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū is' sēt, he would have a.</i>
<i>mǒ nū ě rā' mūs, we had adv'd</i>	<i>mǒ nū is sē' mūs, we should h. a.</i>
<i>mǒ nū ě rā' tīs, you had adv'd</i>	<i>mǒ nū is sē' tīs, you would h. a.</i>
<i>mǒ nū' ě rant, they had advised</i>	<i>mǒ nū is' sent, they would h. a.</i>

Future Perfect.

<i>mǒ nū' ě rō, I shall have advised</i>	(wanting)
<i>mǒ nū' ě rīs, thou wilt have adv'd</i>	
<i>mǒ nū' ě rīt, he will have advised</i>	
<i>mǒ nū ě rī mūs, we shall have a.</i>	
<i>mǒ nū ě rī tīs, you will have a.</i>	
<i>mǒ nū' ě rint, they will have a.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres.	mǒ' nē, <i>advise thou</i>	mǒ nē' tě, <i>advise ye</i>
Fut.	mǒ nē' tō, <i>thou shalt advise</i>	mǒ nē tō' tě, <i>ye shall advise</i>
	mǒ nē' tō, <i>he shall advise</i>	mǒ nen' tō, <i>they shall advise</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mǒ nē' rě, <i>to advise</i>		
Perf.	mǒ nū is' sě, <i>to have advised</i>		
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	mǒ nī tū' rūš, -ǎ, -ŭm es' sě	} <i>to be about to advise</i>
	Acc.	mǒ nī tū' rūm, -ǎm, -ŭm es' sě	
Plur.	Nom.	mǒ nī tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě	
	Acc.	mǒ nī tū' rōš, -ās, -ǎ es' sě	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	mǒ' nens, mǒ nen' tīs, <i>advising</i>
Fut.	mǒ nī tū' rūš, mǒ nī tū' rǎ, mǒ nī tū' rūm, <i>about to advise</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	mǒ nen' dī, <i>of advising</i>	
Dat.	mǒ nen' dō, <i>for advising</i>	
Acc.	mǒ nen' dŭm, <i>advising</i>	mǒ' nī tŭm } <i>to advise</i>
Abl.	mǒ nen' dō, <i>by advising</i>	mǒ' nī tŭ }

[125. 126]

319. Second Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

mǒ' nē ōr, <i>I am advised</i>	mǒ' nē ār, <i>may I be advised</i>
mǒ nē' rīs, <i>thou art advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' rīs, <i>be thou advised</i>
mǒ nē' tŭr, <i>he is advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' tŭr, <i>let him be advised</i>
mǒ nē' mŭr, <i>we are advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' mŭr, <i>let us be advised</i>
mǒ nē' mī nī, <i>you are advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' mī nī, <i>be ye advised</i>
mǒ nen' tŭr, <i>they are advised</i>	mǒ nē an' tŭr, <i>let them be adv'd</i>

Imperfect.

mǒ nē' bār, <i>I was advised</i>	mǒ nē' rēr, <i>I should be advised</i>
mǒ nē bā' rīs, <i>thou wast advised</i>	mǒ nē rē' rīs, <i>thou wouldst b. a.</i>
mǒ nē bā' tŭr, <i>he was advised</i>	mǒ nē rē' tŭr, <i>he would b. a.</i>
mǒ nē bā' mŭr, <i>we were advised</i>	mǒ nē rē' mŭr, <i>we should b. a.</i>
mǒ nē bā' mī nī, <i>you were adv'd</i>	mǒ nē rē' mī nī, <i>you would b. a.</i>
mǒ nē ban' tŭr, <i>they were adv'd</i>	mǒ nē ren' tŭr, <i>they would b. a.</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

mō nē' bōr, *I shall be advised*  
 mō nē' bē rīs, *thou wilt be adv'd*  
 mō nē' bī tūr, *he will be advised*  
 mō nē' bī mūr, *we shall be adv'd*  
 mō nē' bī' mī nī, *you will be adv'd*  
 mō nē' bun' tūr, *they will be a.*

(wanting)

Perfect.

<i>I have been or was advised</i>	<i>I may have been advised</i>
mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm	mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm
{ sūm	{ sīm
{ ěs	{ sīs
{ est	{ sīt
mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā	mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā
{ sū' mūs	{ sī' mūs
{ e' stīs	{ sī' tīs
{ sunt	{ sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had been advised</i>	<i>I should have been advised</i>
mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm	mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm
{ ě' rām	{ es' sēm
{ ě' rās	{ es' sēs
{ ě' rāt	{ es' sēt
mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā	mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā
{ ě rā' mūs	{ es sē' mūs
{ ě rā' tīs	{ es sē' tīs
{ ě' rant	{ es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have been advised</i>	(wanting)
mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm	
{ ě' rō	
{ ě' rīs	
{ ě' rīt	
mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā	
{ ě' rī mūs	
{ ě' rī tīs	
{ ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. mō nē' rē, <i>be thou advised</i>	mō nē' mī nī, <i>be ye advised</i>
Fut. mō nē' tōr, <i>thou shalt be a.</i>	mō nen' tōr, <i>they shall be adv.</i>
mō nē' tōr, <i>he shall be adv.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mǒ nē' rī, to be advised	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	mǒ' nī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sě	} to have been advised
“ Acc.	mǒ' nī tūm, -ǎm, -ūm es' sě	
Plur. Nom.	mǒ' nī tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě	
“ Acc.	mǒ' nī tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě	
Fut.	mǒ' nī tūm ī' rī, to be about to be advised	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	mǒ' nī tūs, mǒ' nī tā, mǒ' nī tūm, advised
Gerundive.	mǒ nen' dūs, mǒ nen' dā, mǒ nen' dūm, to be advised, deserving to be advised

Examples for Practice:

hābēō, -ērē, to have, maintain	dēbēō, -ērē, to owe
ādhībēō, -ērē, to employ, apply	exercēō, -ērē, to exercise
pārēō, -ērē, to obey	nōcēō, -ērē, to hurt, do harm
tācēō, -ērē, to be silent	terrēō, -ērē, to frighten
plācēō, -ērē, to please	vālēō, -ērē, to avail, be well
praebēō, -ērē, to afford, give	cōercēō, -ērē, to restrain

[127. 128.]

320. Third Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
lěgō, -ērē, to read	lěgī	lectūm

INDICATIVE.

lě' gō, I read
lě' gīs, thou readest
lě' gīt, he reads
lě' gī mūs, we read
lě' gī tīs, you read
lě' gunt, they read

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

lě' gām, may I read
lě' gās, read thou
lě' gāt, let him read
lě' gā' mūs, let us read
lě' gā' tīs, read ye
lě' gant, let them read

Imperfect.

lě' gē' bām, I was reading	lě' gē' rēm, I should read
lě' gē' bās, thou wast reading	lě' gē' rēs, thou wouldst read
lě' gē' bāt, he was reading	lě' gē' rēt, he would read
lě' gē' bā' mūs, we were reading	lě' gē' rē' mūs, we should read
lě' gē' bā' tīs, you were reading	lě' gē' rē' tīs, you would read
lě' gē' bant, they were reading	lě' gē' rent, they would read

INDICATIVE.

lē' gām, *I shall read*  
 lē' gēs, *thou wilt read*  
 lē' gēt, *he will read*  
 lē gē' mūs, *we shall read*  
 lē gē' tīs, *you will read*  
 lē' gent, *they will read*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

lec tū' rūš,	}	sīm	}	be about
-ā, -ūm				
lec tū' rī,	}	sīt	}	to read
-ae, -ā				
		sī' tīs		
		sint		

Perfect.

lē' gī, <i>I (have) read</i>	lē' gē rīm, <i>I may have read</i>
lē gi' stī, <i>thou hast read</i>	lē' gē rīs, <i>thou mayest have read</i>
lē' gīt, <i>he has read</i>	lē' gē rīt, <i>he may have read</i>
lē' gī mūs, <i>we have read</i>	lē gē rī mūs, <i>we may have read</i>
lē gi' stīs, <i>you have read</i>	lē gē rī tīs, <i>you may have read</i>
lē gē' runt, <i>they have read</i>	lē' gē rint, <i>they may have read</i>

Pluperfect.

lē' gē rām, <i>I had read</i>	lē' gis' sēm <i>I should have read</i>
lē' gē rās, <i>thou hadst read</i>	lē' gis' sēs, <i>thou wouldst have read</i>
lē' gē rāt, <i>he had read</i>	lē' gis' sēt, <i>he would have read</i>
lē gē rā' mūs, <i>we had read</i>	lē' gis' sē' mūs, <i>we should have r.</i>
lē gē rā' tīs, <i>you had read</i>	lē' gis' sē' tīs, <i>you would have r.</i>
lē' gē rant, <i>they had read</i>	lē' gis' sent, <i>they would have read</i>

Future Perfect.

lē' gē rō, <i>I shall have read</i>	(wanting)
lē' gē rīs, <i>thou wilt have read</i>	
lē' gē rīt, <i>he will have read</i>	
lē gē rī mūs, <i>we shall have read</i>	
lē gē rī tīs, <i>you will have read</i>	
lē' gē rint, <i>they will have read</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. lē' gē, <i>read thou</i>	Plur. lē' gī tē, <i>read ye</i>
Fut. " lē' gī tō, <i>thou shalt read</i>	" lē' gī tō' tē, <i>ye shall read</i>
" lē' gī tō, <i>he shall read</i>	" lē' gun' tō, <i>they shall read</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	lē' gē rē, <i>to read</i>	
Perf.	lē' gis' sē, <i>to have read</i>	
Fut. Sing. Nom.	lec tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm	es' sē
" Acc.	lec tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sē
Plur. Nom.	lec tū' rī, -ae, -ā	es' sē
" Acc.	lec tū' rōs, -ās, -ā	es' sē

} *to be about to read*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. lě' gens, lě gen' tīs, *reading*

Fut. lec tū' rūs, lec tū' rǎ, lec tū' rŭm, *about to read*

GERUND.

Gen. lě gen' dī, *of reading*

Dat. lě gen' dō, *for reading*

Acc. lě gen' dŭm, *reading*

Abl. lě gen' dō, *by reading*

SUPINE.

lec' tŭm } *to read*  
lec' tū }

[133. 134.]

321. Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

lě' gōr, *I am read*

lě' gē rīs, *thou art read*

lě' gī tŭr, *he is read*

lě' gī mŭr, *we are read*

lě gī' mī nī, *you are read*

lě gun' tŭr, *they are read*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

lě' gār, *may I be read*

lě gā' rīs, *be thou read*

lě gā' tŭr, *let him be read*

lě gā' mŭr, *let us be read*

lě gā' mī nī, *be ye read*

lě gan' tŭr, *let them be read*

Imperfect.

lě gē' bār, *I was read*

lě gē bā' rīs, *thou wast read*

lě gē bā' tŭr, *he was read*

lě gē bā' mŭr, *we were read*

lě gē bā' mī nī, *you were read*

lě gē ban' tŭr, *they were read*

lě' gē rēr, *I should be read*

lě gē rē' rīs, *thou wouldst be read*

lě gē rē' tŭr, *he would be read*

lě gē rē' mŭr, *we should be read*

lě gē rē' mī nī, *you would be read*

lě gē ren' tŭr, *they would be read*

Future.

lě' gār, *I shall be read*

lě gē' rīs, *thou wilt be read*

lě gē' tŭr, *he will be read*

lě gē' mŭr, *we shall be read*

lě gē' mī nī, *you will be read*

lě gen' tŭr, *they will be read*

(wanting)

Perfect.

*I was or have been read*

*I may have been read*

lec' tŭs, -ǎ, -ŭm { sŭm  
                                  { ěs  
                                  { est

lec' tŭs, -ǎ, -ŭm { sŭm  
                                  { sīs  
                                  { sīt

lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ { sŭ' mŭs  
                          { es' tīs  
                          { sunt

lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ { sī' mŭs  
                          { sī' tīs  
                          { sint

INDICATIVE.

*I had been read*

lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rām
		ě' rās
		ě' rāt
lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě rā' mūs
		ě rā' tīs
		ě' rant

Pluperfect.

*I should have been read*

lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	es' sēm
		es' sēs
		es' sēt
lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es sē' mūs
		es sē' tīs
		es' sent

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future Perfect.

*I shall have been read*

lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ām	{	ě' rō	(wanting)
		ě' rīs	
		ě' rīt	
lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mūs	
		ě' rī tīs	
		ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

	<b>Singular.</b>		<b>Plural.</b>
Pres.	lē' gě rě, <i>be thou read</i>	lē' gī' mī nī,	<i>be ye read</i>
Fut.	lē' gī tōr, <i>thou shalt be read</i>	lē' gun' tōr,	<i>they shall be read</i>
	lē' gī tōr, <i>he shall be read</i>		

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	lē' gī, <i>to be read</i>	
Perf. Sing.	Nom. lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sē
	Acc. lec' tūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sē
Plur.	Nom. lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sē
	Acc. lec' tōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sē
Fut.	lec' tūm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be read</i>	

} *to have been read*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	lec' tūs, lec' tǎ, lec' tūm, <i>read</i>
Gerundive.	lē gen' dūs, lē gen' dǎ, lē gen' dūm, <i>to be read, de-serving to be read</i>

Examples for Practice:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
ēmō, -ērě, <i>to buy</i>	ēmī	emptūm
scribō, -ērě, <i>to write</i>	scripsī	scriptūm
āgō, -ērě, <i>to drive</i>	ēgī	actūm
ācūō, -ērě, <i>to whet</i>	ācūī	ācūtūm

### 322. Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.  
audīō, -īrē, *to hear*

Perfect.  
audīvī

Supine.  
audītūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

au' dī ō, *I hear*  
au' dīs, *thou hearest*  
au' dīt, *he hears*  
au dī' mūs, *we hear*  
au dī' tīs, *you hear*  
au' dī unt, *they hear*

au' dī ām, *may I hear*  
au' dī ās, *hear thou*  
au' dī āt, *let him hear*  
au dī ā' mūs, *let us hear*  
au dī ā' tīs, *hear ye*  
au' dī ant, *let them hear*

Imperfect.

au dī ē' bām, *I was hearing*  
au dī ē' bās, *thou wast hearing*  
au dī ē' bāt, *he was hearing*  
au dī ē' bā' mūs, *we were hearing*  
au dī ē' bā' tīs, *you were hearing*  
au dī ē' bant, *they were hearing*

au dī' rēm, *I should hear*  
au dī' rēs, *thou wouldst hear*  
au dī' rēt, *he would hear*  
au dī rē' mūs, *we should hear*  
au dī rē' tīs, *you would hear*  
au dī' rent, *they would hear*

Future.

au' dī ām, *I shall hear*  
au' dī ēs, *thou wilt hear*  
au' dī ēt, *he will hear*  
au dī ē' mūs, *we shall hear*  
au dī ē' tīs, *you will hear*  
au' dī ent, *they will hear*

au dī tū' rūš,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{be about} \\ \text{to hear} \end{array}$
-ā, -ūm	
au dī tū' rī,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sī' mūs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right\}$
-ae, -ā	

Perfect.

au dī' vī, *I (have) heard*  
au dī vi' stī, *thou hast heard*  
au dī' vīt, *he has heard*  
au dī' vī mūs, *we have heard*  
au dī vi' stīs, *you have heard*  
au dī vē' runt, *they have heard*

au dī' vē rīm, *I may have heard*  
au dī' vē rīs, *thou mayest have h.*  
au dī' vē rīt, *he may have heard*  
au dī vē rī mūs, *we may have h.*  
au dī vē rī tīs, *you may have h.*  
au dī' vē rint, *they may have h.*

Pluperfect.

au dī' vē rām, *I had heard*  
au dī' vē rās, *thou hadst heard*  
au dī' vē rāt, *he had heard*  
au dī vē rā' mūs, *we had heard*  
au dī vē rā' tīs, *you had heard*  
au dī' vē rant, *they had heard*

au dī vis' sēm, *I should have h.*  
au dī vis' sēs, *thou wouldst h. h.*  
au dī vis' sēt, *he would have h.*  
au dī vis sē' mūs, *we should h. h.*  
au dī vis sē' tīs, *you would h. h.*  
au dī vis' sent, *they would h. h.*



INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

au dī' vē rō, *I shall have heard*  
 au dī' vē rīs, *thou wilt have heard*  
 au dī' vē rīt, *he will have heard*  
 au dī' vē rī mūs, *we shall have h.*  
 au dī' vē rī tīs, *you will have h.*  
 au dī' vē rint, *they will have h.*

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. au' dī, *hear thou*                      au dī' tē, *hear ye*  
 Fut. au dī' tō, *thou shalt hear*          au dī tō' tē, *ye shall hear*  
       au dī' tō, *he shall hear*              au dī un' tō, *they shall hear*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.                      au dī' rē, *to hear*  
 Perf.                      au dī vis' sē, *to have heard*  
 Fut. Sing. Nom. au dī tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē  
       "    Acc.    au dī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē  
 Plur. Nom. au dī tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē  
       "    Acc.    au dī tū' rōš, -ās, -ā es' sē

} *to be about to hear*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. au' dī ens, au dī en' tīs, *hearing*  
 Future. au dī tū' rūš, au dī tū' rā, au dī tū' rūm, *about to hear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. au dī en' dī, *of hearing*  
 Dat. au dī en' dō, *for hearing*  
 Acc. au dī en' dūm, *hearing*  
 Abl. au dī en' dō, *by hearing*

au dī' tūm } *to hear*  
 au dī' tū

[155. 156.]

323. Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

au' dī ōr, *I am heard*                      au' dī ār, *may I be heard*  
 au dī' rīs, *thou art heard*              au dī ā' rīs, *be thou heard*  
 au dī' tūr, *he is heard*                  au dī ā' tūr, *let him be heard*  
 au dī' mūr, *we are heard*              au dī ā' mūr, *let us be heard*  
 au dī' mī nī, *you are heard*          au dī ā' mī nī, *be ye heard*  
 au dī un' tūr, *they are heard*        au dī an' tūr, *let them be heard*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

au dī ē' bār, <i>I was heard</i>	au dī' rēr, <i>I should be heard</i>
au dī ē' bā' rīs, <i>thou wast heard</i>	au dī rē' rīs, <i>thou wouldst be h.</i>
au dī ē' bā' tūr, <i>he was heard</i>	au dī rē' tūr, <i>he would be heard</i>
au dī ē' bā' mūr, <i>we were heard</i>	au dī rē' mūr, <i>we should be h.</i>
au dī ē' bā' mī nī, <i>you were h.</i>	au dī rē' mī nī, <i>you would be h.</i>
au dī ē' ban' tūr, <i>they were h.</i>	au dī ren' tūr, <i>they would be h.</i>

Future.

au' dī ār, <i>I shall be heard</i>	(wanting)
au dī ē' rīs, <i>thou wilt be heard</i>	
au dī ē' tūr, <i>he will be heard</i>	
au dī ē' mūr, <i>we shall be heard</i>	
au dī ē' mī nī, <i>you will be heard</i>	
au dī en' tūr, <i>they will be heard</i>	

Perfect.

<i>I was or have been heard</i>	<i>I may have been heard</i>
au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { sūm	au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { sīm
{ ēs	{ sīs
{ est	{ sīt
au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ { sū' mūs	au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ { sī' mūs
{ e' stīs	{ sī' tīs
{ sunt	{ sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had been heard</i>	<i>I should have been heard</i>
au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { ě' rām	au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { es' sēm
{ ě' rās	{ es' sēs
{ ě' rāt	{ es' sēt
au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ { ě rā' mūs	au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ { es sē' mūs
{ ě rā' tīs	{ es sē' tīs
{ ě' rant	{ es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have been heard</i>	(wanting)
au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm { ě' rō	
{ ě' rīs	
{ ě' rīt	
au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ { ě' rī mūs	
{ ě' rī tīs	
{ ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres.	au dī' rē, <i>be thou heard</i>	au dī' mī nī, <i>be ye heard</i>
Fut.	au dī' tōr, <i>thou shalt be h.</i> au dī' tōr, <i>he shall be heard</i>	au dī un' tōr, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	au dī' rī, <i>to be heard</i>	
Perf. Sing.	Nom.	au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē
	Acc.	au dī' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē
Plur.	Nom.	au dī' tī, -ae, -ā es' sē
	Acc.	au dī' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē
Fut.	au dī' tūm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be heard</i>	

} *to have been heard*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	au dī' tūs, au dī' tā, au dī' tūm, <i>heard</i>
Gerundive.	au dī en' dūs, au dī en' dā, au dī en' dūm, <i>to be heard, deserving to be heard</i>

Examples for Practice:

dormiō, -īrē, <i>to sleep</i>	vestiō, -īrē, <i>to clothe</i>
custōdiō, -īrē, <i>to guard</i>	lēniō, -īrē, <i>to appease</i>
ērūdiō, -īrē, <i>to instruct</i>	nūtriō, -īrē, <i>to nourish</i>
impēdiō, -īrē, <i>to hinder</i>	pūniō, -īrē, <i>to punish</i>
condiō, -īrē, <i>to season</i>	fīniō, -īrē, <i>to finish</i>

[157. 158.]

Deponent Verbs.

324. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice with an active signification, as: hortōr, hortātūs sūm, hortārī, *to exhort*, the Perfect hortātūs sūm representing at the same time the Supine hortātūm.

325. Deponent Verbs have Four Participles:

- the Present Participle, as: hortans, *exhorting*
- the Perfect Participle, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*
- the Fut. Part. Act., as: hortātūrūs, *being about to exhort*
- the Fut. Part. Pass., as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted*.

326. The Future Infinitive is always to be given in the active form, thus: hortātūrūs essē, *to be about to exhort* (not hortātūm irī).

### 327. Deponent of the First Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.  
hortōr, -ārī, to exhort

Perfect.  
hortātūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

*I exhort*  
hor' tōr  
hor tā' rīs  
hor tā' tūr  
hor tā' mūr  
hor tā' mī nī  
hor tan' tūr

*I may exhort*  
hor' tēr  
hor tē' rīs  
hor tē' tūr  
hor tē' mūr  
hor tē' mī nī  
hor ten' tūr

Imperfect.

*I was exhorting*  
hor tā' bār  
hor tā bā' rīs  
hor tā bā' tūr  
hor tā bā' mūr  
hor tā bā' mī nī  
hor tā ban' tūr

*I should exhort*  
hor tā' rēr  
hor tā rē' rīs  
hor tā rē' tūr  
hor tā rē' mūr  
hor tā rē' mī nī  
hor tā ren' tūr

Future.

*I shall exhort*  
hor tā' bōr  
hor tā' bē rīs  
hor tā' bī tūr  
hor tā' bī mūr  
hor tā bī' mī nī  
hor tā bun' tūr

*I may be about to exhort*

hor tā tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm	}	sīm sīs sīt
hor tā tū' rī, -ae, -ā	}	sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

Perfect.

*I (have) exhorted*

hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm	}	sūm ēs est
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā	}	sū' mūs e' stīs sunt

*I may have exhorted*

hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm	}	sīm sīs sīt
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā	}	sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

*I had exhorted*

*I should have exhorted*

hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rām ě' rās ě' rāt	hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rā' mūs ě' rā' tīs ě' rant	hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es' sē' mūs es' sē' tīs es' sent

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have exhorted*

(wanting)

hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rō ě' rīs ě' rīt
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mūs ě' rī tīs ě' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. hor tā' rě, <i>exhort thou</i>	hor tā' mī nī, <i>exhort ye</i>
Fut. hor tā' tōr, <i>thou shalt exhort</i>	hor tan' tōr, <i>they shall exhort</i>
hor tā' tōr, <i>he shall exhort</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	hor tā' rī, <i>to exhort</i>	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sě
Plur. Nom.	hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě
} <i>to have exhorted</i>		
Fut. Sing. Nom.	hor tā' tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sě
Plur. Nom.	hor tā' tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě
} <i>to be about to exhort</i>		

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	hor' tans, hor tan' tīs, <i>exhorting</i>
Perfect.	hor tā' tūs, hor tā' tā, hor tā' tūm, <i>having exhorted</i>
Fut. Act.	hor tā' tū' rūs, hor tā' tū' rā, hor tā' tū' rūm, <i>about to exhort</i>
Gerundive.	hor tan' dūs, hor tan' dā, hor tan' dūm, <i>to be exhorted</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. hor tan' dī, of exhorting  
 Dat. hor tan' dō, for exhorting  
 Acc. hor tan' dūm, exhorting  
 Abl. hor tan' dō, by exhorting

hor tā' tūm } to exhort  
 hor tā' tū }

Examples for Practice:

pisĉōr, -āri, to fish  
 ĩmĭtōr, -āri, to imitate  
 rĕcōrdōr, -āri, to remember  
 proeliōr, -āri, to fight  
 laetōr, -āri, to rejoice (at)  
 vĕnōr, -āri, to hunt

arbĭtrōr, -āri, to regard  
 cōnōr, -āri, to try  
 cōmĭtōr, -āri, to accompany  
 vāgōr, -āri, to roam  
 mĭrōr, -āri, to admire  
 mĭnōr, -āri, to threaten

[161. 162.]

328. Deponent of the Second Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

vĕrĕōr, -ĕri, to fear

INDICATIVE.

*I fear*

vĕ' rĕ ōr  
 vĕ rĕ' rĭs  
 vĕ rĕ' tŭr  
 vĕ rĕ' mŭr  
 vĕ rĕ' mĭ nĭ  
 vĕ ren' tŭr

*I was fearing*

vĕ rĕ' bŕr  
 vĕ rĕ bŕ' rĭs  
 vĕ rĕ bŕ' tŭr  
 vĕ rĕ bŕ' mŭr  
 vĕ rĕ bŕ' mĭ nĭ  
 vĕ rĕ ban' tŭr

*I shall fear*

vĕ rĕ' bŕr  
 vĕ rĕ' bĕ rĭs  
 vĕ rĕ' bĭ tŭr  
 vĕ rĕ' bĭ mŭr  
 vĕ rĕ bĭ' mĭ nĭ  
 vĕ rĕ bun' tŭr

Perfect.

vĕrĭtŭs sŭm

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

*I may fear*

vĕ' rĕ ōr  
 vĕ rĕ ā' rĭs  
 vĕ rĕ ā' tŭr  
 vĕ rĕ ā' mŭr  
 vĕ rĕ ā' mĭ nĭ  
 vĕ rĕ an' tŭr

Imperfect.

*I should fear*

vĕ rĕ' rĕr  
 vĕ rĕ rĕ' rĭs  
 vĕ rĕ rĕ' tŭr  
 vĕ rĕ rĕ' mŭr  
 vĕ rĕ rĕ' mĭ nĭ  
 vĕ rĕ ren' tŭr

Future.

*I may be about to fear*

vĕ rĭ tŭ' rŭs, { sĭm  
 -ā, -ŭm } sĭs  
 sĭt  
 vĕ rĭ tŭ' rĭ, { sĭ' mŭs  
 -ac, -ā } sĭ' tĭs  
 sint

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

<i>I (have) feared</i>		<i>I may have feared</i>	
vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ sŭm ěs est	vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ sĭm sĭs sĭt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ sŭ' mŭs e' stĭs sunt	vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ sĭ' mŭs sĭ' tĭs sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had feared</i>		<i>I should have feared</i>	
vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ ě' rām ě' rās ě' rāt	vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě rā' mŭs ě rā' tĭs ě' rant	vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ es sē' mŭs es sē' tĭs es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have feared</i>		<i>(wanting)</i>
vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ ě' rō ě' rĭs ě' rĭt	
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě' rĭ mŭs ě' rĭ tĭs ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. vě rē' rě, <i>fear thou</i>	vě rē' mĭ nĭ, <i>fear ye</i>
Fut. vě rē' tōr, <i>thou shalt fear</i>	
vě rē' tōr, <i>he shall fear</i>	vě ren' tōr, <i>they shall fear</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	vě rē' rĭ, <i>to fear</i>	
Perf. Sing.	Nom. vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	} <i>to have feared</i>
"	Acc. vě' rī tŭm, -ǎm, -ŭm	
Plur.	Nom. vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	}
"	Acc. vě' rī tōs, -ās, -ǎ	
Fut. Sing.	Nom. vě rĭ tŭ' rŭs, -ǎ, -ŭm	} <i>to be about to</i>
"	Acc. vě rĭ tŭ' rŭm, -ǎm, -ŭm	
Plur.	Nom. vě rĭ tŭ' rĭ, -ae, -ǎ	} <i>fear</i>
"	Acc. vě rĭ tŭ' rōs, -ās, -ǎ	

PARTICIPLES.

Present. vě' rens, vě ren' tīs, *fearing*  
 Perfect. vě' rī tūs, vě' rī tá, vě' rī tūm, *having feared*  
 Fut. Act. vě rī tū' rūs, vě rī tū' ră, vě rī tū' rūm, *about to fear*  
 Gerundive. vě ren' dūs, vě ren' dă, vě ren' dūm, *to be feared*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. vě ren' dī, *of fearing*  
 Dat. vě ren' dō, *for fearing*  
 Acc. vě ren' dūm, *fearing*  
 Abl. vě ren' dō, *by fearing*

vē' rī tūm } *to fear*  
 vē' rī tū }

Examples for Practice:

licěōr, -ērī, *to bid*                      tūěōr, -ērī, *to look to*  
 pollicěōr, -ērī, *to promise*            intūěōr, -ērī, *to look at*  
 měřěōr, -ērī, *to deserve*              řevěřěōr, -ērī, *to respect*

[163. 164.]

329. Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

sěquōr, -ī, *to follow*

sěcūtūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sě' quōr, *I follow*  
 sě' quě rīs  
 sě' quī tūr  
 sě' quī mūr  
 sě quī' mī nī  
 sě quon' tūr

sě' quār, *I may follow*  
 sě quā' rīs  
 sě quā' tūr  
 sě quā' mūr  
 sě quā' mī nī  
 sě quan' tūr

Imperfect.

sě quē' bār, *I was following*  
 sě quē bā' rīs  
 sě quē bā' tūr  
 sě quē bā' mūr  
 sě quē bā' mī nī  
 sě quē ban' tūr

sě' quě rēr, *I should follow*  
 sě quě rē' rīs  
 sě quě rē' tūr  
 sě quě rē' mūr  
 sě quě rē' mī nī  
 sě quě ren' tūr

Future.

*I shall follow*

*I may be about to follow*

sě' quār  
 sě quē' rīs  
 sě quē' tūr  
 sě quē' mūr  
 sě quē' mī nī  
 sě quen' tūr

sě cū tū' rūs, { sīm  
 -ā, -ūm } sīs  
 sīt  
 sě cū tū' rī, { sī' mūs  
 -ae, -ă } sī' tīs  
 sint



INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

*I (have) followed*

*I may have followed*

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	sŭm	sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	sīm
		ěs			sīs
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	est	sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sīt
		sŭ' mŭs			sī' mŭs
		e' stīs			sī' tīs
		sunt			sint

Pluperfect.

*I had followed*

*I should have followed*

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	ě' rām	sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	es' sēm
		ě' rās			es' sēs
		ě' rāt			es' sēt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě rā' mŭs	sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es sē' mŭs
		ě rā' tīs			es sē' tīs
		ě' rant			es' sent

Future Perfect.

*I shall have followed*

(wanting)

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	ě' rō
		ě' rīs
		ě' rīt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mŭs
		ě' rī tīs
		ě' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres.	sě' quě rě, follow thou	sě quī' mī nī, follow ye
Fut.	sě' quī tōr, thou shalt follow	
	sě' quī tōr, he shall follow	sě quun' tōr, they shall follow

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	sě' quī, to follow			
Perf. Sing.	Nom	sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm es' sě	} to have followed	
	Acc.	sě cū' tŭm, -ǎm, -ŭm es' sě		
	Plur.	Nom.		sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě
		Acc.		sě cū' tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	sě cū tū' rūs -ǎ, -ŭm es' sě	} to be about to follow	
	Acc.	sě cū tū' rūm, -ǎm, -ŭm es' sě		
	Plur.	Nom.		sě cū tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ es' se
		Acc.		sě cū tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě

PARTICIPLES.

**Present.** sě' quens, sě quen' tīs, *following*  
**Perfect.** sě cū' tūs, sě cū' tǎ, sě cū' tūm, *having followed*  
**Fut. Act.** sě cū' tū' rūš, sě cū' tū' rǎ, sě cū' tū' rūm, *about to follow*  
**Gerundive.** sě quen' dūs, sě quen' dǎ, sě quen' dūm, *to be followed*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. sě quen' dī, *of following*  
 Dat. sě quen' dō, *for following*  
 Acc. sě quen' dūm, *following*  
 Abl. sě quen' dō, *by following*

sě cū' tūm }  
 sě cū' tū } *to follow*

Examples for Practice:

<b>Pres. Ind. &amp; Pres. Inf.</b>	<b>Perfect.</b>
lōquōr, -ī, <i>to speak</i>	lōcūtūs sūm
frūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy</i>	fructūs sūm
fungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>	functūs sūm

[165. 166.]

330. Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

**Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.**

**Perfect.**

blandiōr, -īrī

blandītūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Present.**

blan' dī ōr, *I flatter*  
 blan dī' rīs  
 blan dī' tūr  
 blan dī' mūr  
 blan dī' mī nī  
 blan dī un' tūr

blan' dī ār, *I may flatter*  
 blan dī ā' rīs  
 blan dī ā' tūr  
 blan dī ā' mūr  
 blan dī ā' mī nī  
 blan dī an' tūr

**Imperfect.**

blan dī ē' bār, <i>I was flattering</i>	blan dī' rēr, <i>I should flatter</i>
blan dī ē' bā' rīs	blan dī rē' rīs
blan dī ē' bā' tūr	blan dī rē' tūr
blan dī ē' bā' mūr	blan dī rē' mūr
blan dī ē' bā' mī nī	blan dī rē' mī nī
blan dī ē' ban' tūr	blan dī ren' tūr

**Future.**

blan' dī ār, *I shall flatter*  
 blan dī ē' rīs  
 blan dī ē' tūr  
 blan dī ē' mūr  
 blan dī ē' mī nī  
 blan dī en' tūr

blan dī tū' rūš,	{ sīm sīs sīt	} <i>be about                  to flatter</i>
-ǎ, -ūm		
blan dī tū' rī,	{ sī' mūs sī' tīs sint	
-ae, -ǎ		

INDICATIVE.

*I (have) flattered*

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	sŭm
		ěs
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	est
		sŭ' mŭs
		e' stīs
		sunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

*I may have flattered*

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	sīm
		sīs
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sīt
		sī' mŭs
		sī' tīs
		sint

Pluperfect.

*I had flattered*

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	ě' rām
		ě' rās
		ě' rāt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě rā' mŭs
		ě rā' tīs
		ě' rant

*I should have flattered*

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	es' sēm
		es' sēs
		es' sēt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es sē' mŭs
		es sē' tīs
		es' sent

Future Perfect.

*I shall have flattered*

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{	ě' rō
		ě' rīs
		ě' rīt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mŭs
		ě' rī tīs
		ě' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE

Singular.

Pres.	blan dī' rě, flatter thou
Fut.	blan dī' tōr, thou shalt flatter
	blan dī' tōr, he shall flatter

Plural.

blan dī' mī nī, flatter ye
blan dī un' tōr, they shall flatter

INFINITIVE.

Pres. blan dī' rī, to flatter

Perf. Sing. Nom.	blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	es' sě	} to have flattered
" Acc.	blan dī' tŭm, -ǎm, -ŭm	es' sě	
Plur. Nom.	blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sě	
" Acc.	blan dī' tōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě	

Fut. Sing. Nom.	blan dī tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	es' sě	} to be about to flatter
" Acc.	blan dī tū' rūm, -ǎm, -ŭm	es' sě	
Plur. Nom.	blan dī tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sě	
" Acc.	blan dī tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě	

PARTICIPLES.

**Present.** blan' dī ens, blan dī en' tīs, *flattering*  
**Perfect.** blan dī' tūs, blan dī' tǎ, blan dī' tŭm, *having flattered*  
**Fut. Act.** blan dī tŭ' rūš, blan dī tŭ' ră, blan dī tŭ' rūm, *about to flatter*  
**Gerundive.** blan dī en' dūs, blan dī en' dǎ, blan dī en' dŭm, *to be flattered*

GEBUND.

SUPINE.

**Gen.** blan dī en' dī, *of flattering*  
**Dat.** blan dī en' dō, *for flattering*  
**Acc.** blan dī en' dŭm, *flattering*  
**Abl.** blan dī en' dō, *by flattering*

blan dī' tŭm } *to flatter*  
 blan dī' tŭ }

Examples for Practice:

largiōr, -īrī, *to bestow*                      partiōr, -īrī, *to share, divide*  
 mentiōr, -īrī, *to lie*                          pōtiōr, -īrī, *to possess one's self*  
 mōliōr, -īrī, *to strive*                      sortiōr, -īrī, *to draw lots*

[167. 168.]

Appendix to the Third Conjugation.

Verbs in iō.

**331.** Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert **ī** before the ending of the Present, as: cǎpĕrĕ, *to take*; cǎpiō, *I take*. This **ī** appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another **ī** or **ĕ**, except in the third person of the future active: cǎpiĕt, *he will take*.

Active Voice.

**Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.**  
 cǎpiō, -ĕrĕ, *to take*

**Perfect.**  
 cĕpī

**Supine.**  
 captŭm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I take*  
 cǎ' pī ō  
 cǎ' pīs  
 cǎ' pīt  
 cǎ' pī mŭš  
 cǎ' pī tīs  
 cǎ' pī unt

Present.

*I may take*  
 cǎ' pī ăm  
 cǎ' pī ăs  
 cǎ' pī ăt  
 cǎ pī ă' mŭš  
 cǎ pī ă' tīs  
 cǎ' pī ant

INDICATIVE.

*I was taking*

cā' pī ē' bām  
cā' pī ē' bās  
cā' pī ē' bāt  
cā' pī ē' bā' mūs  
cā' pī ē' bā' tīs  
cā' pī ē' bant

*I shall take*

cā' pī ām  
cā' pī ēs  
cā' pī ēt  
cā' pī ē' mūs  
cā' pī ē' tīs  
cā' pī ent

*I have taken or I took*  
cē' pī (like lēgī)

*I had taken*  
cē' pē rām (like lēgērām)

*I shall have taken*  
cē' pē rō (like lēgērō)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

*I might take*

cā' pē rēm  
cā' pē rēs  
cā' pē rēt  
cā' pē rē' mūs  
cā' pē rē' tīs  
cā' pē rent

Future.

*I may be about to take*

cap tū' rūš,	}	sīm
-ā, -ūm		sīs
		sīt
cap tū' rī,	}	sī' mūs
-ae, -ā		sī' tīs
		sint

Perfect.

*I may have taken*  
cē' pē rīm (like lēgērīm)

Pluperfect.

*I might have taken*  
cē' pis' sēm (like lēgissēm)

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Pres. cā' pē, *take thou*  
Fut. cā' pī tō, *thou shalt take*  
cā' pī tō, *he shall take*

Plural.

cā' pī tē, *take ye*  
cā' pī tō' tē, *ye shall take*  
cā' pī un' tō, *they shall take*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	cā' pē rē, <i>to take</i>		}	<i>to be about to take</i>
Perf.	cē' pis' sē, <i>to have taken</i>			
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	cap tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē		
	Acc.	cap tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē		
Plur.	Nom.	cap tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē		
	Acc.	cap tū' rōs, -ās, -ā es' sē		

PARTICIPLES.

Present. cā' piens, -tīs, *taking*  
Future. cap tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm, *about to take*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. cǎ pī en' dī, *of taking*  
 Dat. cǎ pī en' dō, *for taking*  
 Acc. cǎ pī en' dūm, *taking*  
 Abl. cǎ pī en' dō, *by taking*

cap' tūm } *to take*  
 cap' tū }

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

*I am taken*  
 cǎ' pī ōr  
 cǎ' pē rīs  
 cǎ' pī tūr  
 cǎ' pī mūr  
 cǎ pī' mī nī  
 cǎ pī un' tūr

*I may be taken*  
 cǎ' pī ār  
 cǎ pī ā' rīs  
 cǎ pī ā' tūr  
 cǎ pī ā' mūr  
 cǎ pī ā' mī nī  
 cǎ pī an' tūr

Imperfect.

*I was taken*  
 cǎ pī ē' bār  
 cǎ pī ē bā' rīs  
 cǎ pī ē bā' tūr  
 cǎ pī ē bā' mūr  
 cǎ pī ē bā' mī nī  
 cǎ pī ē ban' tūr

*I might be taken*  
 cǎ' pē rēr  
 cǎ pē rē' rīs  
 cǎ pē rē' tūr  
 cǎ pē rē' mūr  
 cǎ pē rē' mī nī  
 cǎ pē ren' tūr

Future.

*I shall be taken*  
 cǎ' pī ār  
 cǎ pī ē' rīs  
 cǎ pī ē' tūr  
 cǎ pī ē' mūr  
 cǎ pī ē' mī nī  
 cǎ pī en' tūr

(wanting)

Perfect.

*I was or have been taken*  
 cap' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm sūm, &c.

*I may have been taken*  
 cap' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm sīm, &c.

Pluperfect.

*I had been taken*  
 cap' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm ē' rām, &c.

*I might have been taken*  
 cap' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

*I shall have been taken*  
 cap' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm ē' rō, &c.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres.	că' pĕ rĕ, <i>be thou taken</i>	că pĭ' mĭ nĭ, <i>be ye taken</i>
Fut.	că' pĭ tŏr, <i>thou shalt be taken</i>	
	că' pĭ tŏr, <i>he shall be taken</i>	că pĭ un' tŏr, <i>they shall be taken</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	că' pĭ, <i>to be taken</i>	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	cap' tŭs, -ă, -ŭm	es' sĕ
“ Acc.	cap' tŭm, -ăm, -ŭm	es' sĕ
Plur. Nom.	cap' tĭ, -ae, -ă	es' sĕ
“ Acc.	cap' tŏs, -ăs, -ă	es' sĕ
Fut.	cap' tŭm ĭ' rĭ, <i>to be about to be taken</i>	

} *to have been taken*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	cap' tŭs, -ă, -ŭm, <i>taken</i>
Gerundive.	că pĭ en' dŭs, că pĭ en' dă, că pĭ en' dŭm, <i>to be taken</i>

**332.** Verbs of the **Third Conjugation** ending in **ĭŏ, ĭŏr**, are the following:

Active Verbs.

căpĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to take</i>	jăcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to throw</i>
cŭpĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to desire</i>	păriŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to bring forth</i>
făcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to make</i>	quătiŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to shake</i>
fŏdĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to dig</i>	răpiŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to seize</i>
fŭgĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to flee</i>	săpiŏ, -ĕrĕ, <i>to be wise</i>

and Compounds of the obsolete

[-lăcĭŏ, *I entice*]

[-spĕcĭŏ, *I see*]

Deponent Verbs.

grădĭŏr, -ĭ, <i>to go</i>	pătĭŏr, -ĭ, <i>to suffer</i>
mŏriŏr, -ĭ, <i>to die</i>	

[137. 138.]

For their Principal Parts see **368**.

Special Forms in Conjugation.

**333.** The following **Special Forms** are found in many verbs:

Perfects in **ăvĭ, ĕvĭ, ĭvĭ**, and the tenses derived from them, drop the **v** before **s** or **r**, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in **ĭvĭ**, which do not admit the contraction of **i-e** before **r**. In like manner **nŏvĭ**, *I know*, and its compounds are contracted.

	āvī		ēvī	
	Perfect.			
IND.	āmāvistī	āmāstī	dēlēvistī	dēlēstī
	āmāvistīs	āmāstīs	dēlēvistīs	dēlēstīs
	āmāvērunt	āmārunt	dēlēvērunt	dēlērunt
SUBJ.	āmāvērīm	āmārīm, &c.	dēlēvērīm	dēlērīm, &c.
INF.	āmāvissē	āmāssē	dēlēvissē	dēlēssē

Pluperfect.

IND.	āmāvērām	āmārām, &c.	dēlēvērām	dēlērām, &c.
SUBJ.	āmāvissēm	āmāssēm, &c.	dēlēvissēm	dēlēssēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

IND.	āmāvērō	āmārō, &c.	dēlēvērō	dēlērō, &c.
------	---------	------------	----------	-------------

	ivī		ōvī	
	Perfect.			
IND.	audīvistī	audīstī	nōvistī	nōstī
	audīvistīs	audīstīs	nōvistīs	nōstīs
	audīvērunt	audīērunt	nōvērunt	nōrunt
SUBJ.	audīvērīm	audīērīm, &c.	nōvērīm	nōrīm, &c.
INF.	audīvissē	audīssē	nōvissē	nōssē

Pluperfect.

IND.	audīvērām	audīērām, &c.	nōvērām	nōrām, &c.
SUBJ.	audīvissēm	audīssēm, &c.	nōvissēm	nōssēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

IND.	audīvērō	audīērō, &c.	nōvērō	—
------	----------	--------------	--------	---

Mark that the Future Perfect of nōvī is nōvērō uncontracted.

**334.** In the Perfect Ind. Act. (3rd pers. plur.) ērē for ērunt is often found, thus:

āmāvērē for āmāvērunt, *they (have) loved*  
 mōnūērē “ mōnūērunt, *they (have) advised*  
 lēgērē “ lēgērunt, *they (have) read*  
 audīvērē “ audīērunt, *they (have) heard*



**335.** In the second person of the **Passive** we often find **rě** for **rīs**, thus:

ămērě for ămērīs, *thou mayest be loved*  
 ămābārě “ ămābārīs, *thou wast loved*  
 ămārērě “ ămārērīs, *thou mightest be loved*  
 ămābērě “ ămābērīs, *thou wilt be loved*

This ending, however, is rarely used in the Present Indicative, but almost exclusively in the Future.

**336.** The **Imperatives** of *dīcērě, to say; dūcērě, to lead; făcērě, to make, and ferrě, to bear,* are: *dīc, dūc, făc, fěr,* respectively. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *făciō* which change **ă** into **ī**, as: *perfīcě, achieve thou* (see **368.**).

**337.** The **Gerund** and **Gerundive** of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of **endī, endūs,** may end in **undī** and **undūs,** especially after **ī**, as:

*căpiundūs, to be taken; rěpětundūs, to be reclaimed.*

**338.** For the **Imperative** of *scīō, I know,* the future form *scītō* is always used in the singular, and *scītōtě* in the plural.

[169. 170.]

### Formation of the Principal Parts.

**339.** In forming the principal parts of any verb, we take for a starting point its stem, which is either a **Vowel-stem** or a **Consonant-stem**, according as it ends either in a vowel or a consonant.

**340.** The **First Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ā**, as: *ămā-rě, Stem: ămā.*

**341.** The **Second Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ē**, as: *mōnē-rě, Stem: mōnē.*

**342.** The **Fourth Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ī**, as: *audī-rě, Stem: audī.*

**343.** The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in a consonant, as: *lěg-ěrě, Stem: lěg;* or in **u (v)**, as: *stătŭ-ěrě, Stem: stătŭ.* Stems in **u** follow the Consonant-conjugation.

**344.** As a rule, **Vowel-stems** undergo no change except in some cases the contracting of the final

vowel with the termination, as: *ămō* contracted from *ămă-ō*; they form the Perfect and Supine by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, to the stem, thus:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
I. <i>ămă-rě, to love</i>	<i>ămă-vī</i>	<i>ămă-tūm</i>
II. <i>dělē-rě, to destroy</i>	<i>dělē-vī</i>	<i>dělē-tūm</i>
IV. <i>audī-rě, to hear</i>	<i>audī-vī</i>	<i>audī-tūm</i>

**345. Consonant-stems** are liable to various changes which will be considered below under Third Conjugation.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

**346.** As already explained, the **First Conjugation** contains all the vowel-stems in **ā**, and forms the **Perfect** and **Supine** by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, to the stem. Or, in other words, in the First Conjugation the **Regular Forms** of the **Principal Parts** are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-ō                    -ārě	-āvī	-ātūm
<i>ămō                ămārě, to love</i>	<i>ămāvī</i>	<i>ămātūm</i>

Those **Verbs** of the **First Conjugation** which form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently are the following:

**347. Perfect in ūī, Supine in Itūm (tūm).**

<i>crěpō, -ārě, to creak</i>	<i>crěpūī</i>	<i>crěpītūm</i>
<i>incrěpō, -ārě, to scold</i>	<i>incrěpūī</i>	<i>incrěpītūm</i>
<i>discrěpō, -ārě, to disagree</i>	<i>discrěpūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>cūbō, -ārě, to lie down</i>	<i>cūbūī</i>	<i>cūbītūm</i>
<i>incūbō, -ārě, to lie upon</i>	<i>incūbūī</i>	<i>incūbītūm</i>
<i>accūbō, -ārě, to lie near</i>	<i>accūbūī</i>	<i>accūbītūm</i>

Some Compounds insert **m**, and are of the **Third Conjugation**.

<i>dōmō, -ārě, to tame</i>	<i>dōmūī</i>	<i>dōmītūm</i>
<i>sōnō, -ārě, to sound</i>	<i>sōnūī</i>	<i>sōnītūm, sōnātūrūs</i>
<i>rēsōnō, -ārě, to resound</i>	<i>rēsōnāvī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>tōnō, -ārě, to thunder</i>	<i>tōnūī</i>	<i>tōnītūm</i>
<i>větō, -ārě, to forbid</i>	<i>větūī</i>	<i>větītūm</i>
<i>frícō, -ārě, to rub</i>	<i>frícūī</i>	<i>fricātūm, frictūm</i>
<i>mícō, -ārě, to shine</i>	<i>mícūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ēmícō, -ārě, to shine forth</i>	<i>ēmícūī</i>	<i>ēmicātūm</i>
<i>dīmícō, -ārě, to fight</i>	<i>dīmícāvī</i>	<i>dīmicātūm</i>

[plicō, *I fold*] \*

applicō, -ārē, to apply	{ applicāvī applicūī	applicātūm applicītūm
explicō, -ārē, to unfold	{ explicāvī explicūī	explicātūm explicītūm
implicō, -ārē, to involve	{ implicāvī implicūī	implicātūm implicītūm

Compounds in -plicō from nouns in -plex are regular, as: multiplicō, -ārē, to multiply, from multiplex.

pōtō, -ārē, to drink	pōtāvī	pōtūm
sēcō, -ārē, to cut	sēcūī	sectūm, sēcātūrūs
dēsēcō, -ārē, to cut down	dēsēcūī	dēsectūm
ēnēcō, -ārē, to slay	{ ēnēcāvī ēnēcūī	ēnēcātūm ēnectūm

### 348. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm

with lengthened stem-vowel.

jūvō, -ārē	} to assist	jūvī	jūtūm
adjūvō, -ārē		adjūvī	adjūtūm
Fut. Participles: jūvātūrūs, but adjūtūrūs or adjūvātūrūs			
lāvō, -ārē, to wash		lāvī	lāvātūm (lautūm, lōtūm)

### 349. With Reduplicated Perfect.

Some Verbs of the *First, Second and Third Conjugations* repeat in the *Perfect* the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it, or with *ē*. Compound Verbs omit the reduplication, but Compounds of *dō, I give; stō, I stand; discō, I learn; poscō, I demand*, and some of those of *currō, I run*, retain it.

dō, -ārē, to give	dēdī	dātūm
circumdō, -ārē, to surround	circumdēdī	circumdātūm
pessumdō, -ārē, to ruin	pessumdēdī	pessumdātūm
sātsisdō, -ārē, to give bail	sātsisdēdī	sātsisdātūm
vēnumdō, -ārē, to sell	vēnumdēdī	vēnumdātūm

**a** is everywhere short, except in **dās**, thou givest; **dā**, give thou.

Like **dō**, are conjugated the Compounds with words of *two syllables*, as: *circumdō, I surround*. The Compounds with words of *one syllable* pass over into the **3d Conjugation**.

\* Obsolete forms are inclosed within brackets [ ].

stō, stārē, to stand	stētī	stātūm
antistō, -ārē, to excel	antistētī	wanting
circumstō, -ārē, to stand around	circumstētī	wanting
constō, -ārē, to consist	constītī	wanting
praestō, -ārē, to afford	praestītī	wanting
distō, -ārē, to be distant	wanting	wanting
exstō, -ārē, to exist	wanting	wanting

Like **antistō**, all Compounds of **stārē** with prepositions of two syllables have **stētī** in the Perfect, but no **Supine**. Those compounded with prepositions of one syllable have **stītī** in the Perfect, and likewise no **Supine**. **distō** and **exstō** have neither Perfect nor **Supine**. [123. 124.]

**350.** More than half of all **Deponents** in the language are of the **First Conjugation**, and all of these are regular (see **327**).

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

**351.** The **Second Conjugation**, as we have seen, includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ē**. In these the **Perfect** and **Supine** regularly add **vī**, **tūm** to the stem, thus:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
dēlē-rē, to destroy	dēlē-vī	dēlē-tūm

**352.** However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the stem-vowel **ē** in the **Perfect**, **vī** becomes **ūī**, and in the **Supine I** is inserted before **tūm**; thus:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-ēō      -ērē	-ūī	-ītūm
mōnēō      mōnērē, to advise	mōnūī	mōnītūm

This is considered the **Regular** formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

**353.** Many verbs with a regular Perfect in **ūī** want the **Supine**. Such are:

arcēō, -ērē, to keep off	horrēō, -ērē, to shudder
ārēō, -ērē, to be dry	languēō, -ērē, to be weary
callēō, -ērē, to be versed	lātēō, -ērē, to be hid
candēō, -ērē, to shine	liquēō, -ērē, to be fluid
ēgēō, -ērē	mādēō, -ērē, to be wet
indīgēō, -ērē } to be in want	nītēō, -ērē, to glitter
ēmīnēō, -ērē, to be prominent	ōlēō, -ērē, to smell
flōrēō, -ērē, to blossom	pallēō, -ērē, to look pale

pátěō, -ěřě, to stand open	stūděō, -ěřě, to busy one's self
rīgěō, -ěřě, to be stiff	stūpěō, -ěřě, to be amazed
rūběō, -ěřě, to be red	succensěō, -ěřě, to be angry
sīlēō, -ěřě, to be silent	tīměō, -ěřě, to fear
sorběō, -ěřě, to sip	torpěō, -ěřě, to be numb
sorděō, -ěřě, to be dirty	tūměō, -ěřě, to swell
splenděō, -ěřě, to gleam	vīgěō, -ěřě, to be vigorous
vīřěō, -ěřě, to be green	

**354.** Some verbs, derived mostly from Adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine:

alběō, -ěřě, to be white	flāvěō, -ěřě, to be golden yellow
āvěō, -ěřě, to long for	hěběō, -ěřě, to be blunt
calvěō, -ěřě, to be bald	pollěō, -ěřě, to be powerful
hūměō, -ěřě, to be moist	maerěō, -ěřě, to grieve
immīněō, -ěřě, to threaten	rěniděō, -ěřě, to shine
līvěō, -ěřě, to be pale	scătěō, -ěřě, to gush
căněō, -ěřě, to be gray	squālěō, -ěřě, to be filthy

[125. 126.]

**355.** A great many Verbs of the Second Conjugation deviate from the regular formation mentioned in 352.

**356.** Perfect in *ěvī*, Supine in *ětŭm* (*itŭm*, *tŭm*):

dělěō, -ěřě, to destroy	dělěvī	dělětŭm
flěō, -ěřě, to weep	flěvī	flětŭm
něō, -ěřě, to spin	něvī	nětŭm
[plěō, I fill]		
complěō, -ěřě	complěvī	complětŭm
implěō, -ěřě	implěvī	implětŭm
rěplěō, -ěřě	rěplěvī	rěplětŭm
[ōlěō, I grow]		
obsōlěō, -ěřě, to go out of use	obsōlěvī	obsōlětŭm
ăbōlěō, -ěřě, to abolish	ăbōlěvī	ăbōlītŭm
ădōlěō, -ěřě, to grow up	ădōlěvī	ădultŭm

**357.** Perfect in *ī*, Supine in *tŭm*:

cāvěō, -ěřě, to be on one's guard	cāvī	cautŭm
fāvěō, -ěřě, to favor	fāvī	fautŭm
fōvěō, -ěřě, to cherish	fōvī	fōtŭm
mōvěō, -ěřě, to move, trouble	mōvī	mōtŭm
vōvěō, -ěřě	vōvī	vōtŭm
děvōvěō, -ěřě	děvōvī	děvōtŭm

pāvēō, -ērē, to quake for fear	pāvī	wanting
fervēō, -ērē, to glow	{ fervī } { ferbūī }	wanting
cōnivēō, -ērē, to shut the eyes	{ cōnivī } { cōnixī }	wanting

**358. Dropping the ĩ of the Supine:**

dōcēō, -ērē, to teach	dōcūī	doctūm
tēnēō, -ērē, to hold	tēnūī	(tentūm)
obtīnēō, -ērē, to occupy	obtīnūī	obtentūm
attīnēō, -ērē, to belong	attīnūī	wanting
pertīnēō, -ērē, to pertain	pertīnūī	wanting
abstīnēō, -ērē, to abstain	abstīnūī	wanting
contīnēō, -ērē, to hold together	contīnūī	wanting
miscēō, -ērē, to mix, mingle	miscūī	{ mixtūm } { mistūm }
torrēō, -ērē, to roast	torrūī	tostūm
censēō, -ērē, to value, think	censūī	eensūm
rēcensēō, -ērē, to review	rēcensūī	{ rēcensūm } { rēcensītūm }
percensēō, -ērē, to survey	percensūī	wanting

**359. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:**

augēō, -ērē, to increase	auxī	auctūm
indulgēō, -ērē, to indulge	indulsī	indultūm
torquēō, -ērē, to torture	torsī	tortūm
lūcēō, -ērē, to shine	luxī	wanting
lūgēō, -ērē, to mourn	luxī	wanting
frīgēō, -ērē, to be cold	frixī	wanting

[129. 130.]

**360. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:**

ardēō, -ērē, to burn	arsī	arsūm
haerēō, -ērē, to hang	haesī	haesūm
ādhaerēō, -ērē } to stick	ādhaesī	ādhaesūm
cōhaerēō, -ērē }	cōhaesī	cōhaesūm
jūbēō, -ērē, to order	jussī	jussūm
mānēō, -ērē, to stay, remain	mansī	mansūm
rēmānēō, -ērē, to remain	rēmansī	rēmansūm
mulcēō, -ērē, to soothe	mulsi	mulsiūm
permulcēō, -ērē, to appease	permulsi	permulsiūm
mulgēō, -ērē, to milk	mulsi	mulsiūm

rīdēō, -ērē, to laugh	rīsī	rīsūm
arrīdēō, -ērē, to smile upon	arrīsī	arrīsūm
dēridēō, -ērē, to laugh at	dērisī	dērisūm
suādēō, -ērē, to advise	suāsī	suāsūm
dissuādēō, -ērē, to dissuade	dissuāsī	dissuāsūm
persuādēō, -ērē, to persuade	persuāsī	persuāsūm
tergēō, -ērē } to wipe	tersī	tersūm
tergō, -ērē }		
abstergēō, -ērē, to wipe off	abstersī	abstersūm

Compounds only take the *Second Conjugation*.

algēō, -ērē, to be cold	alsī	wanting
fulgēō, -ērē, to shine	fulsī	wanting
turgēō, -ērē, to swell	tursī	wanting
urgēō, -ērē, to urge	ursī	wanting

**361. Perfect in ī, Supine in sūm:**

prandēō, -ērē, to breakfast	prandī	pransūm
Participle pransūs, in an active sense, <i>having breakfasted</i>		
sēdēō, -ērē, to sit	sēdī	sessūm
circumsēdēō, -ērē, to sit around	circumsēdī	circumsessūm
sūpersēdēō, -ērē, to forbear	sūpersēdī	sūpersessūm
assīdēō, -ērē, to sit by	assēdī	assessūm
insīdēō, -ērē, to sit upon	insēdī	insessūm
obsīdēō, -ērē, to besiege	obsēdī	obsessūm
possīdēō, -ērē, to possess	possēdī	possessūm
dissīdēō, -ērē, to disagree	dissēdī	wanting
praesīdēō, -ērē, to preside	praesēdī	wanting
rēsīdēō, -ērē, to remain behind	rēsēdī	wanting
vīdēō, -ērē, to see	vīdī	vīsūm
invidēō, -ērē, to envy	invidī	invisūm
prōvidēō, -ērē, to provide	prōvidī	prōvisūm
strīdēō, -ērē, to whiz, creak	strīdī	wanting

**With Reduplication:**

mordēō, -ērē, to bite	mōmordī	morsūm
pendēō, -ērē, to hang	pēpendī	pensūm
dēpendēō, -ērē, to hang down	wanting	wanting
impēdēō, -ērē, to hang over	wanting	wanting
spondēō, -ērē, to pledge	spōpondī	sponsūm
respondēō, -ērē, to answer	respondī	responsūm
despondēō, -ērē, to promise	despondī	desponsūm
tondēō, -ērē, to shear	tōtondī	tonsūm

**Reduplication**, or the repetition of the initial consonant with the following vowel, is generally dropped in Compounds, as: re-*spōndī*.

**362.** Mark the solitary verb:

<i>cīcō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> } <i>to rouse</i>	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>cītūm</i>	} 4th Con- jugation.
<i>cīō</i> , - <i>īrē</i> }	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>cītūm</i>	
<i>accīō</i> , - <i>īrē</i> , <i>to call in</i>	<i>accīvī</i>	<i>accītūm</i>	
<i>concīō</i> , - <i>īrē</i> , <i>to call together</i>	<i>concīvī</i>	<i>concītūm</i>	

**363.** A few verbs of the Second Conjugation form the tenses of completed action like the Passive; they are called **Semi-Deponents** (see 277):

<i>audēō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , <i>to dare</i>	<i>ausūs sūm</i> , <i>I dared</i>
<i>gaudēō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , <i>to rejoice</i>	<i>gāvīsūs sūm</i> , <i>I rejoiced</i>
<i>sōlēō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , <i>to be wont</i>	<i>sōlītūs sūm</i> , <i>I was wont</i>

[131. 132.]

**364. Deponent Verbs.**

Pres. Ind. & Inf.	Perfect.
<i>fātēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to confess</i>	<i>fassūs sūm</i>
<i>confītēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to confess</i>	<i>confessūs sūm</i>
<i>diffītēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to disavow</i>	<i>diffessūs sūm</i>
<i>mēdēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to cure</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>mīsērēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to have pity</i>	<i>mīsērītūs</i> , <i>mīsértūs sūm</i>
<i>rēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to think</i>	<i>rātūs sūm</i>

[163. 164.]

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

**365.** The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs with stems ending in **u** (**v**), or one of the consonants. The **Regular Forms** of the Third Conjugation are seen in the following:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>ācū-ērē</i> , <i>to sharpen</i>	<i>ācū-ī</i>	<i>ācū-tūm</i>
<i>ēd-ērē</i> , <i>to eat</i>	<i>ēd-ī</i>	<i>ē-sūm</i>
<i>carp-ērē</i> , <i>to pluck</i>	<i>carp-sī</i>	<i>carp-tūm</i>

Stems in **u** take **ī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*. Consonant-stems take in the *Perfect* partly **ī**, partly **sī**; and in the *Supine* partly **tūm**, partly **sūm**.

A few verbs in **ūō** belong to the *First Conjugation*, as: *fluctū-ō*, -*ārē*, *to wave*.



STEMS in u (v).

366. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm:

ācūō, -ērē, to sharpen	ācūī	ācūtūm
Perf. Part. wanting; ācūtūs, sharp, is adjective only.		
argūō, -ērē, to accuse	argūī	(argūtūm)
cōargūō, -ērē, to convict	cōargūī	wanting
rēdargūō, -ērē, to refute	rēdargūī	wanting
imbūō, -ērē, to dip, dye	imbūī	imbūtūm
indūō, -ērē, to put on	indūī	indūtūm
exūō, -ērē, to put off	exūī	exūtūm
lūō, -ērē, to atone for	lūī	(lūtūm)
lūō, -ērē, to wash	lūī	lūtūm
ablūō, -ērē, to wash (off)	ablūī	ablūtūm
mīnūō, -ērē	mīnūī	mīnūtūm
immīnūō, -ērē	immīnūī	immīnūtūm
[nūō, I nod]		
abnūō, -ērē, to dissent	abnūī	wanting
adnūō, -ērē, to nod assent	adnūī	wanting
rūō, -ērē, to rush forth	rūī	rūtūm
corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground	corrūī	wanting
dīrūō, -ērē, to destroy	dīrūī	dīrūtūm
ērūō, -ērē, to dig out	ērūī	ērūtūm
obrūō, -ērē, to cover	obrūī	obrūtūm
spūō, -ērē, to spit	spūī	spūtūm
stātūō, -ērē, to set, place	stātūī	stātūtūm
restītūō, -ērē, to restore	restītūī	restītūtūm
sūō, -ērē, to sew	sūī	sūtūm
tribūō, -ērē, to give, confer on	tribūī	tribūtūm
contribūō, -ērē, to contribute	contribūī	contribūtūm
distribūō, -ērē, to distribute	distribūī	distribūtūm
solvō, -ērē, to loose	solvī	sōlūtūm
absolvō, -ērē, to acquit	absolvī	absōlūtūm
volvō, -ērē, to roll, turn	volvī	vōlūtūm
[grūō or rūō?]		
ingrūō, -ērē, to rush	ingrūī	wanting
congrūō, -ērē, to agree	congrūī	wanting
mētūō, -ērē, to fear	mētūī	wanting
plūō, -ērē, to rain	plūī	wanting
sternūō, -ērē, to sneeze	sternūī	wanting

**367.** The following stems in *u*, *v* form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently:

vívō, -ěřě, to live	vixī	victūm
strūō, -ěřě, to build	struxī	structūm
constrūō, -ěřě, to construct	construxī	constructūm
instrūō, -ěřě, to instruct	instruxī	instructūm
flūō, -ěřě, to flow	fluxī	fluxūm
rěflūō, -ěřě, to flow back	rěfluxī	rěfluxūm

[135. 136.]

VERBS in *īō*.

**368.** Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert *ī* before the ending of the Present, as: cāpěřě, to take; cāpīō, I take. This *ī* appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another *ī* or *ě*, except in the third person of the future active: capīēt, he will take (see 331).

cāpīō, -ěřě, to take	cēpī	captūm
accipīō, -ěřě, to receive	accēpī	acceptūm
dēcipīō, -ěřě, to deceive	dēcēpī	dēceptūm
incipīō, -ěřě, to begin	incēpī	inceptūm
fācīō, -ěřě, to do, make	fēcī	factūm
pātěfācīō, -ěřě, to open	pātěfēcī	pātěfactūm
conficīō, -ěřě, to make	confēcī	confectūm
interficīō, -ěřě, to kill	interfēcī	interfectūm
perficīō, -ěřě, to finish	perfēcī	perfectūm

The verb *fācěřě*, to do, make, deserves special notice:

It has for its **Passive** fīō, factūs sūm, fīěři, to be made, become (see 411). Its **Imperative** is fāc, do.

The same rule applies to those Compounds of fācīō, which retain *ā*, as: pātěfācīō, I open; **Pass.** pātěfīō, I am opened; **Imperat.** pātěfāc, open. The Compounds of fācīō with **Prepositions** change *ā* to *ī*, and are inflected regularly, as: interficīō, I kill; **Pass.** interficīōr; **Imperat.** interficě.

jācīō, -ěřě, to throw, cast	jēcī	jactūm
objicīō, -ěřě, to throw to	objēcī	objectūm
subjicīō, -ěřě, to subject	subjēcī	subjectūm
[lācīō, I entice]		
allicīō, -ěřě } to allure,	allexī	(allectūm)
pellicīō, -ěřě } entice	pellexī	pellectūm
ělicīō, -ěřě, to entice out	ělicūī	ělicītūm

[spēcīō, *I see*]

aspicīō, -ērē, *to look*  
 despiciō, -ērē, *to despise*  
 respiciō, -ērē, *to consider*  
 cūpiō, -ērē, *to wish, desire*  
 fōdiō, -ērē, *to dig*  
 confōdiō, -ērē, *to pick out*  
 effōdiō, -ērē, *to dig out*  
 fūgiō, -ērē, *to flee or fly*  
 pārīō, -ērē, *to bring forth*

quātīō, -ērē, *to shake*  
 concūtiō, -ērē, *to shake*  
 rāpiō, -ērē, *to snatch away*  
 arripiō, -ērē, *to seize*  
 sāpiō, -ērē, *to be wise*  
 dēsipiō, -ērē, *to be foolish*

aspexi  
 despexi,  
 respexi  
 cūpivi  
 fōdi  
 confōdi  
 effōdi  
 fūgi  
 pēperi

aspectum  
 despectum  
 respectum  
 cūpitum  
 fossum  
 confossum  
 effossum  
 fūgitum  
 partum

Fut. Part.

wanting  
 concussi  
 rāpui  
 arripui  
 sāpivi, sāpui  
 wanting  
 wanting

pāriturus  
 quassum  
 concussum  
 raptum  
 arreptum  
 wanting  
 wanting

[137. 138.]

### STEMS in **d**, **t**.

**369.** As a rule, stems in **d**, **t** have **sī** in the Perfect, **sūm** in the Supine. Before the **s** of the Perfect and Supine, **d** and **t** are dropped or become by assimilation **ss**.

**370.** The repetition of the initial consonant with the vowel following it or with **ē** (**Reduplication**) is especially common in the formation of the Perfect of the 3d Conjugation; as:

pendō, *I weigh*, pēpendī; cādō, *I fall*, cēcīdī.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in **ī**.

Compound verbs omit the reduplication, but the Compounds of dō, *I give*; stō, *I stand*; discō, *I learn*; poscō, *I demand*, and some of those of currō, *I run*, retain it.

### **371.** Perfect in **sī**, Supine in **sūm**.

claudō, -ērē, *to shut, close*  
 concludō, -ērē, *to shut up*  
 dividō, -ērē, *to divide, separate*  
 laedō, -ērē, *to violate, hurt*  
 allidō, -ērē, *to dash against*  
 collidō, -ērē, *to dash together*  
 ēlidō, -ērē, *to strike out*

clausi  
 conclusi  
 divisi  
 laesi  
 allisi  
 collisi  
 elisi

clausum  
 conclusum  
 divisum  
 laesum  
 allisum  
 collisum  
 elisum

<i>lūdō, -ērē, to play</i>	<i>lūsī</i>	<i>lūsūm</i>
<i>illūdō, -ērē, to mock</i>	<i>illūsī</i>	<i>illūsūm</i>
<i>plaudō, -ērē, to applaud</i>	<i>plausī</i>	<i>plausūm</i>
<i>applaudō, -ērē, to applaud</i>	<i>applausī</i>	<i>applausūm</i>
<i>explōdō, -ērē, to hiss off</i>	<i>explōsī</i>	<i>explōsūm</i>
<i>rādō, -ērē, to scrape</i>	<i>rāsī</i>	<i>rāsūm</i>
<i>rōdō, -ērē, to gnaw</i>	<i>rōsī</i>	<i>rōsūm</i>
<i>trūdō, -ērē, to thrust</i>	<i>trūsī</i>	<i>trūsūm</i>
<i>vādō, -ērē, to go</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ēvādō, -ērē, to turn out</i>	<i>ēvāsī</i>	<i>ēvāsūm</i>

With Reduplication:

<i>cādō, -ērē, to fall</i>	<i>cēcīdī</i>	<i>cāsūm</i>
<i>occīdō, -ērē, to set</i>	<i>occīdī</i>	<i>occāsūm</i>
<i>incīdō, -ērē, to fall into</i>	<i>incīdī</i>	<i>wanting</i>

Other Compounds of *cādō* want the *Supine*.

<i>caedō, -ērē, to fell</i>	<i>cēcīdī</i>	<i>caesūm</i>
<i>dēcīdō, -ērē, to cut down</i>	<i>dēcīdī</i>	<i>dēcīsūm</i>
<i>excīdō, -ērē, to hew out</i>	<i>excīdī</i>	<i>excīsūm</i>
<i>incīdō, -ērē, to engrave</i>	<i>incīdī</i>	<i>incīsūm</i>
<i>occīdō, -ērē, to kill</i>	<i>occīdī</i>	<i>occīsūm</i>
<i>pendō, -ērē, to weigh</i>	<i>pēpendī</i>	<i>pensūm</i>
<i>suspendō, -ērē, to hang</i>	<i>suspendī</i>	<i>suspensūm</i>
<i>tendō, -ērē, to spread</i>	<i>tētendī</i>	<i>tensūm &amp; tentūm</i>
<i>attendō, -ērē, to attend to</i>	<i>attendī</i>	<i>attendūm</i>
<i>contendō, -ērē, to exert</i>	<i>contendī</i>	<i>contentūm</i>
<i>extendō, -ērē, to stretch out</i>	<i>extendī</i>	<i>extensūm &amp; extentūm</i>
<i>ostendō, -ērē, to show</i>	<i>ostendī</i>	<i>ostensūm</i>
<i>tundō, -ērē, to thump</i>	<i>tūtūdī</i>	<i>tūsūm &amp; tunsūm</i>
<i>contundō, -ērē, to break down</i>	<i>contūdī</i>	<i>contūsūm</i>
<i>obtundō, -ērē, to stun</i>	<i>obtūdī</i>	<i>obtūsūm</i>

372. Compounds of *dārē* with monosyllabic words pass over into the Third Conjugation:

<i>crēdō, -ērē, to believe</i>	<i>crēdīdī</i>	<i>crēditūm</i>
<i>vendō, -ērē, to sell</i>	<i>vendīdī</i>	<i>venditūm</i>
<i>condō, -ērē, to build</i>	<i>condīdī</i>	<i>conditūm</i>

abscondō, -ērē, to hide	abscondī	absconditūm
ēdō, -ērē, to give out	ēdīdī	ēditūm
perdō, -ērē, to ruin	perdīdī	perditūm
reddō, -ērē, to give back	reddīdī	redditūm
trādō, -ērē, to deliver	trādīdī	trādītūm

[139. 140.]

**373. Perfect in ī, Supine in sūm.**

The Stem of many verbs of this class appears in the *Present* strengthened by **n**, as: fundō, Stem fūd. Stems in **nd** take **ī** in the *Perfect*.

[candō, I burn]		
accendō, -ērē, to kindle	accendī	accensūm
cūdō, -ērē, to forge	cūdī	cūsūm
ēdō, -ērē, to eat	ēdī	ēsūm
[fendō, I fend]		
dēfendō, -ērē, to defend	dēfendī	dēfensūm
offendō, -ērē, to offend	offendī	offensūm
mandō, -ērē, to chew	mandī	mansūm
prēhendō, -ērē, to seize	prēhendī	prēhensūm
scandō, -ērē, to climb	scandī	scansūm
ascendō, -ērē, to ascend	ascendī	ascensūm
fundō, -ērē, to pour	fūdī	fūsūm
circumfundō, -ērē, to surround	circumfūdī	circumfūsūm
diffundō, -ērē, to pour forth	diffūdī	diffūsūm
effundō, -ērē, to pour out	effūdī	effūsūm
vertō, -ērē, to turn	vertī	versūm
ēvertō, -ērē, to overthrow	ēvertī	ēversūm
stertō, -ērē, to snore	stertūī	wanting

The only **Semi-Deponent Verb** of the Third Conjugation belongs to this class:

fīdō, -ērē	} to trust, confide	fīsūs sūm
confīdō, -ērē		confīsūs sūm

**374. Various Irregularities:**

cēdō, -ērē, to yield	cessī	cessūm
accēdō, -ērē, to approach	accessī	accessūm
findō, -ērē, to split, cleave	fīdī	fissūm

scindō, -ērē, to cut	scīdī	scissūm
discindō, -ērē, to split	discīdī	discissūm
excindō, -ērē, to destroy	excīdī	excisūm
abscindō, -ērē, to tear off	abscīdī	abscisūm
excindō takes Perfect and Supine from caedō, abscindō the Supine.		

mētō, -ērē, to reap	messūī	messūm
mittō, -ērē, to send	mīsī	missūm
āmittō, -ērē, to lose	āmīsī	āmissūm
admittō, -ērē, to admit	admīsī	admissūm
committō, -ērē, to commit	commīsī	commissūm
permittō, -ērē, to permit	permīsī	permissūm
prōmittō, -ērē, to promise	prōmīsī	prōmissūm
pandō, -ērē, to spread	pandī	passūm
pētō, -ērē, to seek	pētīvī, pētīī	pētītūm
repētō, -ērē, to repeat	repētīvī	repētītūm
sīdō, -ērē, to sit down	sēdī	wanting
assīdō, -ērē, to sit down	assēdī	assessūm
consīdō, -ērē, to settle	consēdī	consessūm
sistō, -ērē, to stop	stītī	stātūm
obsistō, -ērē, to oppose	obstītī	obstītūm

Other Compounds want Supine:

absistō, -ērē, to cease	abstītī	wanting
adsistō, -ērē, to stand by	adstītī	wanting
existō, -ērē, to come forth	exstītī	wanting

[141. 142.]

### STEMS in **b, p**.

**375.** Stems in **b, p** take **sī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*; at the same time **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**, as: nūbō, nupsī, nuptūm. The stem of many verbs appears in the *Present* strengthened by **m**, as: rumpō, rūpī.

glūbō, -ērē, to peel	(glupsī)	gluptūm
dēglūbō, -ērē, to skin	(dēglupsī)	dēgluptūm
nūbō, -ērē, to marry	nupsī	nuptūm
scribō, -ērē, to write	scripsī	scriptūm
conscribō, -ērē, to frame	conscripsī	conscriptūm
describō, -ērē, to describe	descripsī	descriptūm
praescribō, -ērē, to prescribe	praescripsī	praescriptūm
carpō, -ērē, to pluck	carpsī	carptūm
dēcerpō, -ērē, to pluck	dēcerpsī	dēcerptūm
discerpō, -ērē, to tear asunder	discerpsī	discerptūm

rēpō, -ērē, to creep, crawl  
 irrēpō, -ērē, to creep into  
 scalpō, -ērē, to carve  
 sculpō, -ērē, to chisel  
 serpō, -ērē, to creep

repsī  
 irrepsī  
 scalpsī  
 sculpsī  
 serpsī

reptūm  
 irreptūm  
 scalptūm  
 sculptūm  
 (serptūm)

376.

Irregular:

accumbō, -ērē, to recline at table  
 bibō, -ērē, to drink  
 rumpō, -ērē, to break  
 corrumpō, -ērē, to corrupt  
 ērumpō, -ērē, to break out  
 perrumpō, -ērē, to break through  
 strēpō, -ērē, to make a noise  
 lambō, -ērē, to lick  
 scābō, -ērē, to scratch

accūbūī  
 bibī  
 rūpī  
 corrūpī  
 ērūpī  
 perrūpī  
 strēpūī  
 lambī  
 scābī

accūbitūm  
 bibitūm  
 ruptūm  
 corruptūm  
 ēruptūm  
 perruptūm  
 strēpitūm  
 (lambītūm)  
 wanting

[143. 144.]

STEMS in c, g, q, h, ct.

377.

c, g, q, and h with s become x  
 g, h, and q before t become c.

dūc-ō — duxī = ducsī  
 rēg-ō — rexī = regsī  
 cōqu-ō — coxī = coqsī  
 trāh-ō — traxī = trahsī

rēgō — rectūm = regtūm  
 trāhō — tractūm = trahtūm  
 coquō — coctūm = coqtūm

378.

Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:

cingō, -ērē, to gird  
 [flīgō, -ērē, to strike  
 affligō, -ērē, to dash  
 confligō, -ērē, to fight  
 prōflīgō, -ārē, to strike down  
 jungō, -ērē, to join  
 adjungō, -ērē, to join (to)  
 plangō, -ērē, to beat, lament  
 rēgō, -ērē, to rule, govern  
 corrīgō, -ērē, to correct  
 dīrīgō, -ērē, to direct  
 (surrīgō) surgō, -ērē, to rise  
 (perrīgō) pergō, -ērē, to go on  
 sūgō, -ērē, to suck  
 tēgō, -ērē, to cover  
 dētēgō, -ērē, to discover  
 prōtēgō, -ērē, to protect

cingī  
 flixī  
 afflixī  
 conflixī  
 prōflīgāvī  
 junxī  
 adjunxī  
 planxī  
 rexī  
 correxī  
 dīrexī  
 surrexī  
 perrexī  
 suxī  
 texī  
 dētēxī  
 prōtexī

cingtūm  
 flictūm]  
 afflictūm  
 conflictūm  
 prōflīgātūm  
 junctūm  
 adjunctūm  
 planctūm  
 rectūm  
 correctūm  
 directūm  
 surrectūm  
 perrectūm  
 suctūm  
 tectūm  
 dētectūm  
 prōtectūm

tingō (tingūō), -ērē, to stain	tinxī	tinctūm
ungō (ungūō), -ērē, to anoint	unxī	unctūm
[stingūō, I put out]		
exstingūō, -ērē, to put out	exstinxī	exstinctūm
distingūō, -ērē, to distinguish	distinxī	distinctūm
trāhō, -ērē, to draw	traxī	tractūm
contrāhō, -ērē, to contract	contraxī	contractūm
vēhō, -ērē, to carry	vexī	vectūm
dīcō, -ērē, to say, tell	dixī	dictūm
praedicō, -ērē, to predict	praedixī	praedictūm
indicō, -ērē, to declare	indixī	indictūm
dūcō, -ērē, to lead	duxī	ductūm
ēducō, -ērē, to lead forth	ēduxī	ēductūm

The Imperatives of dīcērē, to say, dūcērē, to lead, are: dīc, dūc; compounds follow the simple verbs: ēduc, praedic.

coquō, -ērē, to cook, bake	coxī	coctūm
----------------------------	------	--------

**379. The Supine is irregular:**

fiŋō, -ērē, to fashion	fiŋxī	fictūm
pingō, -ērē, to paint	pinxī	pictūm
stringō, -ērē, to bind	strinxī	strictūm
fiġō, -ērē, to fix	fixī	fixūm

**380. Present strengthened by t:**

flectō, -ērē, to bend	flexī	flexūm
nectō, -ērē, to tie	nexī-nexūī	nexūm
pectō, -ērē, to comb	pexī	pexūm
plectō, -ērē, to beat (only Passive)	wanting	wanting

**381. The Supine is wanting:**

angō, -ērē, to torment, vex	anxī	_____
ningō, -ērē, to snow	ninxī	_____
clangō, -ērē, to clang	wanting	_____

**382. With Reduplication:**

pareō, -ērē, to spare	pēpercī	parsūm
pungō, -ērē, to pierce, sting	pūpūgī	punctūm
tangō, -ērē, to touch	tētīgī	tactūm
attingō, -ērē, to touch	attīgī	attactūm
pangō, -ērē, to strike, drive	panxī	panctūm
pangō, -ērē, to bargain	pēpīgī	pactūm
compingō, -ērē, to drive tight	compēgī	compactūm



**383. With lengthened Stem-vowel.**

Many Consonant-stems with short stem-syllable take **i** in the Perfect, before which the stem-vowel is lengthened, and **ä** becomes **ē**.

<b>ägō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to drive, do	<b>ēgī</b>	<b>actūm</b>
<b>pērāgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to accomplish	<b>pērēgī</b>	<b>pēractūm</b>
<b>ābigō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to drive away	<b>ābēgī</b>	<b>ābactūm</b>
<b>sūbigō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to subdue	<b>sūbēgī</b>	<b>sūbactūm</b>
<b>cōgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to force (cō-ägō)	<b>cōēgī</b>	<b>cōactūm</b>
<b>dēgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to spend (dē-ägō)	<b>dēgī</b>	wanting
<b>ambīgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to contend	wanting	wanting
<b>frangō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to break	<b>frēgī</b>	<b>fractūm</b>
<b>confringō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to break in two	<b>confrēgī</b>	<b>confractūm</b>
<b>effringō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to break open	<b>effrēgī</b>	<b>effractūm</b>
<b>lęgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to read	<b>lēgī</b>	<b>lectūm</b>
<b>allęgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to choose	<b>allēgī</b>	<b>allectūm</b>
<b>perlęgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to read through	<b>perlēgī</b>	<b>perlectūm</b>
<b>rēlęgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to read over	<b>rēlēgī</b>	<b>rēlectūm</b>
<b>collīgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to collect	<b>collēgī</b>	<b>collectūm</b>
<b>dēlīgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to choose	<b>dēlēgī</b>	<b>dēlectūm</b>
<b>ēlīgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to elect	<b>ēlēgī</b>	<b>ēlectūm</b>
<b>dillīgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to love	<b>dīlexī</b>	<b>dīlectūm</b>
<b>intellęgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to understand	<b>intellexī</b>	<b>intellectūm</b>
<b>neglęgō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to neglect	<b>neglexī</b>	<b>neglectūm</b>
<b>icō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to strike	<b>icī</b>	<b>ictūm</b>
<b>vincō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to conquer	<b>vīcī</b>	<b>victūm</b>
<b>linquō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to leave	<b>liquī</b>	wanting
<b>rēlinquō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to leave (behind)	<b>rēliquī</b>	<b>rēlictūm</b>

**384. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:**

<b>mergō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to dip in, plunge	<b>mersī</b>	<b>mersūm</b>
<b>spargō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to scatter	<b>sparsī</b>	<b>sparsūm</b>
<b>conspergō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to sprinkle	<b>conspersī</b>	<b>conspersūm</b>
<b>tergō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to wipe	<b>tersī</b>	<b>tersūm</b>
<b>vergō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to verge	wanting	wanting

[145. 146.]

**STEMS in l, m, n, r.**

**385. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm.**

**m** is sometimes strengthened with **p**, as : **sūmō**, **sumpsī**.

<b>cōmō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to adorn	<b>compsī</b>	<b>comptūm</b>
<b>dēmō</b> , - <b>ērē</b> , to take away	<b>dempsi</b>	<b>demptūm</b>

prōmō, -ērē, <i>to take out</i>	prompsī	promptūm
sūmō, -ērē, <i>to take</i>	sumpsī	sumptūm
absūmō, -ērē, <i>to use up</i>	absumpsī	absumptūm
consūmō, -ērē, <i>to consume</i>	consumpsī	consumptūm
[temnō, <i>I despise</i> ]		
contemnō, -ērē, <i>to despise</i>	contempsī	contemptūm

**386. According to the Analogy of the 2d Conjugation:**

ālō, -ērē, <i>to nourish</i>	ālūī	{ altūm ālītūm
cōlō, -ērē, <i>to cultivate</i>	cōlūī	cultūm
incōlō, -ērē, <i>to inhabit</i>	incōlūī	incultūm
consūlō, -ērē, <i>to counsel</i>	consūlūī	consultūm
mōlō, -ērē, <i>to grind</i>	mōlūī	molitūm
occūlō, -ērē, <i>to conceal</i>	occūlūī	occultūm
frēmō, -ērē, <i>to growl</i>	frēmūī	frēmītūm
gēmō, -ērē, <i>to groan</i>	gēmūī	gēmītūm
trēmō, -ērē, <i>to tremble</i>	trēmūī	wanting
vōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit</i>	vōmūī	vōmītūm
ēvōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit up</i>	ēvōmūī	ēvōmītūm
gignō, -ērē, <i>to beget</i>	gēnūī	gēnītūm
pōnō, -ērē, <i>to place</i>	pōsūī	pōsītūm
antēpōnō, -ērē, <i>to prefer</i>	antēpōsūī	antēpōsītūm
oppōnō, -ērē, <i>to oppose</i>	oppōsūī	oppōsītūm
[cellō, <i>I impel</i> ]		
percellō, -ērē, <i>to beat down</i>	percūī	perculsūm
antēcellō, -ērē,	wanting	wanting
praecellō, -ērē,	wanting	wanting
excellō, -ērē,	wanting	wanting

**387. With Reduplication:**

cānō, -ērē, <i>to sing</i>	cēcīnī	cantūm
concinō, -ērē, <i>to sound together</i>	concinūī	wanting
praecinō, -ērē, <i>to sing to one</i>	praecinūī	wanting
currō, -ērē, <i>to run</i>	cūcurrī	cursūm
accurrō, -ērē, <i>to run to</i>	{ accūcurrī } { accurrī }	accursūm
concurrō, -ērē, <i>to run together</i>	{ concūcurrī } { concurrī }	conkursūm
occurrō, -ērē, <i>to meet</i>	occurrī	ockursūm

rēcurrō, -ērē, to run back  
 succurrō, -ērē, to succor  
 fallō, -ērē, to cheat  
 rēfellō, -ērē, to refute  
 pellō, -ērē, to drive (away)  
 dēpellō, -ērē, to dispel  
 rēpellō, -ērē, to repel

rēcurre  
 succurre  
 fēfellī  
 rēfellī  
 pēpūlī  
 dēpūlī  
 rēpūlī

rēcursūm  
 succursūm  
 falsūm  
 wanting  
 pulsūm  
 dēpulsūm  
 rēpulsūm

[147. 148.]

388.

Perfect in vī:

cernō, -ērē, to see, discern  
 dēcernō, -ērē, to determine  
 discernō, -ērē, to distinguish  
 līnō, -ērē, to smear  
 allīnō, -ērē, to besmear  
 illīnō, -ērē, to bedaub  
 sīnō, -ērē, to let  
 dēsīnō, -ērē, to leave off  
 spernō, -ērē, to despise  
 sternō, -ērē, to strew  
 prosternō, -ērē, to overthrow  
 sērō, -ērē, to sow  
 consērō, -ērē, to plant  
 insērō, -ērē, to plant in  
 sērō, -ērē, to join  
 dēsērō, -ērē, to forsake  
 dissērō, -ērē, to discourse  
 insērō, -ērē, to insert  
 tērō, -ērē, to rub, wear out  
 contērō, -ērē, to rub off  
 dētērō, -ērē, to wear away

(crēvī)  
 dēcrevī  
 discrevī  
 lēvī (livī)  
 allēvī  
 illēvī  
 sīvī  
 dēsīvī, dēsī  
 sprēvī  
 strāvī  
 prostrāvī  
 sēvī  
 consēvī  
 insēvī  
 sērūī  
 dēsērūī  
 dissērūī  
 insērūī  
 trīvī  
 contrīvī  
 dētrīvī

(crētūm)  
 dēcretūm  
 discretūm  
 litūm  
 allitūm  
 illitūm  
 sitūm  
 dēsītūm  
 sprētūm  
 strātūm  
 prostrātūm  
 sātūm  
 consītūm  
 insītūm  
 sertūm  
 dēsertūm  
 dissertūm  
 insertūm  
 tritūm  
 contritūm  
 dētritūm

389.

Various Irregularities:

vellō, -ērē, to pluck, pull  
 āvellō, -ērē, to pull down  
 prēmō, -ērē, to press  
 comprīmō, -ērē, to press together  
 exprīmō, -ērē, to press out  
 supprīmō, -ērē, to keep back  
 psallō, -ērē, to play on the cithern  
 ěmō, -ērē, to buy  
 cōěmō, -ērē, to buy together

vellī (vulsī)  
 āvellī  
 pressī  
 compressī  
 expressī  
 suppressī  
 psallī  
 ěmī  
 cōěmī

vulsūm  
 āvulsūm  
 pressūm  
 compressūm  
 expressūm  
 suppressūm  
 wanting  
 emptūm  
 cōemptūm

rēdīmō, -ērē, to buy back	rēdēmī	rēdemptūm
ādīmō, -ērē, to take away	ādēmī	ādemptūm
pērīmō, -ērē, to slay	pērēmī	pēremptūm
gērō, -ērē, to carry on	gessī	gestūm
congērō, -ērē, to bring together	congessī	congestūm
fūrō, -ērē, to burn	ussī	ustūm
combūrō, -ērē, to burn (wholly)	combussī	combustūm
verrō, -ērē, to sweep	verrī	versūm
quaerō, -ērē, to seek, desire	quaesivī	quaesitūm
acquirō, -ērē, to acquire	acquisivī	acquisitūm
anquirō, -ērē, to search after	anquisivī	anquisitūm
inquirō, -ērē, to inquire	inquisivī	inquisitūm
fērō, ferrē, to bear (403)	tūlī	lātūm
fūrō, -ērē, to rage	wanting	wanting
tollō, -ērē, to lift, take away	sustulī	sublātūm

[149. 150.]

STEMS in s, x (cs).

390. There is only one stem in s preceded by a *Vowel*, viz. *vīsō*; all the rest are in s preceded by a *Consonant*.

vīsō, -ērē, to visit	vīsī	wanting
depsō, -ērē, to knead	depsūī	depstūm
pinsō, -ērē, to pound	{ pinsūī	pinsitūm
	{ pinsī	pistūm
texō, -ērē, to weave	texūī	textūm

According to the Analogy of the 4th Conjugation:

arcessō, -ērē, to summon	arcessivī	arcessitūm
cāpessō, -ērē, to lay hold of	cāpessivī	cāpessitūm
fācessō, -ērē, to accomplish	fācessivī	fācessitūm
lācessō, -ērē, to excite	lācessivī	lācessitūm
incessō, -ērē, to fall upon	incessivī (-ī)	wanting

STEMS in sc.

391. Stems strengthened by *sc* have generally an inchoative meaning, i. e., they denote the beginning of an action — **Inchoative** or **Inceptive Verbs**. When formed from verbs (by adding *sc* to *Vowel*-stems, and *isc* to *Consonant*-stems) they are called *Verbal Inceptives*; when from substantives and adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

Verbal Inceptives.

392. Verbal Inceptives take the **Perfect** and **Supine** of their *Primitives*, if such **Perfect** and **Supine** *actually* exist.

**393.** Many Verbs in *scō* are no longer used as *Inchoatives*, but in the sense of their *Primitives* which have been *disused*:

<i>crescō, -ěřě, to grow</i>	<i>crēvī</i>	<i>crētūm</i>
<i>noscō, -ěřě, to (learn to) know</i>	<i>nōvī</i>	<i>nōtūm</i>
<i>agnoscō, -ěřě, to acknowledge</i>	<i>agnōvī</i>	<i>agnītūm</i>
<i>cognoscō, -ěřě, to know</i>	<i>cognōvī</i>	<i>cognītūm</i>
<i>pascō, -ěřě, to graze</i>	<i>pāvī</i>	<i>pastūm</i>
<i>quiescō, -ěřě</i>	<i>quiēvī</i>	<i>quīētūm</i>
<i>rēquiescō, -ěřě</i> } <i>to rest</i>	<i>rēquiēvī</i>	<i>rēquīētūm</i>
<i>suescō, -ěřě, to become used</i>	<i>suēvī</i>	<i>suētūm</i>
<i>assuescō, -ěřě</i> } <i>to be accus-</i>	<i>assuēvī</i>	<i>assuētūm</i>
<i>consuescō, -ěřě</i> } <i>tomed</i>	<i>consuēvī</i>	<i>consuētūm</i>
<i>compescō, -ěřě, to restrain</i>	<i>compescūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>discō, -ěřě, to learn</i>	<i>dīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>dēdiscō, -ěřě, to unlearn</i>	<i>dēdīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ēdiscō, -ěřě, to learn by heart</i>	<i>ēdīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>poscō, -ěřě, to demand</i>	<i>pōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>dēposcō, -ěřě, to request</i>	<i>dēpōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>exposcō, -ěřě, to request earnestly</i>	<i>expōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>rēposcō, -ěřě, to demand back</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>gliscō, -ěřě, to grow up</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>

[151, 152]

**394.** But the great majority of Verbal Inceptives are from *Primitives* which actually exist.

With the Perfect and Supine of their *Primitives*:

<i>ābōlescō, -ěřě, to disappear</i>	<i>ābōlēvī</i>	<i>ābōlītūm</i>
<i>ābōlēō</i>		
<i>ādōlescō, -ěřě, to grow up</i>	<i>ādōlēvī</i>	<i>ādultūm</i>
<i>ādōlēō</i>		
<i>obsōlescō, -ěřě, to become obsolete</i>	<i>obsōlēvī</i>	<i>obsōlētūm</i>
<i>obsōlēō</i>		
<i>cōālescō, -ěřě, to grow together</i>	<i>cōālūī</i>	<i>cōālītūm</i>
<i>ālō</i>		
<i>concupiscō, -ěřě, to covet</i>	<i>concupīvī</i>	<i>concupītūm</i>
<i>cūpīō</i>		
<i>convālescō, -ěřě, to recover</i>	<i>convālūī</i>	<i>convālītūm</i>
<i>vālēō</i>		
<i>exardescō, -ěřě, to take fire</i>	<i>exarsī</i>	<i>exarsūm</i>
<i>ardēō</i>		
<i>obdormiscō, -ěřě, to fall asleep</i>	<i>obdormīvī</i>	<i>obdormītūm</i>
<i>dormīō</i>		

rēviviscō, -ērē, <i>to revive</i>	rēvixī	rēvictūm
vīvō		
sciscō, -ērē, <i>to decree</i>	scīvī	scītūm
consciscō, -ērē, <i>to bring upon</i>	conscīvī	conscītūm
sciō		
condōlescō, -ērē, } <i>to feel pain</i>	condōlūī	condōlītūm
indōlescō, -ērē, }	indōlūī	indōlītūm
dōlēō		
invētērascō, -ērē, <i>to grow old</i>	invētērāvī	invētērātūm
invētērō		

With the Perfect of their Primitives:

ācescō, -ērē, <i>to turn sour</i>	ācūī
ācēō	
ārescō, -ērē, <i>to become dry</i>	ārūī
ārēō	
cālescō, -ērē, <i>to become warm</i>	cālūī
cālēō	
contīcescō, -ērē, <i>to become still</i>	contīcūī
tācēō	
dēlītescō, -ērē, <i>to hide away</i>	dēlītūī
lātēō	
effervescō, -ērē, <i>to boil up</i>	effervūī & efferbūī
fervēō	
efflōrescō, -ērē, <i>to begin to bloom</i>	efflōrūī
flōrēō	
extītescō, -ērē, <i>to fear</i>	extīmūī
tīmēō	
ērūbescō, -ērē, <i>to turn red</i>	ērūbūī
rūbēō	
horrescō, -ērē, <i>to stand on end</i>	horrūī
horrēō	
illūcescō, -ērē, <i>to grow light</i>	illuxī
lūcēō	
intūtescō, -ērē, <i>to swell</i>	intūmūī
tūmēō	
pallescō, -ērē, <i>to turn pale</i>	pallūī
pallēō	
pūtrescō, -ērē, <i>to rot</i>	pūtrūī
pūtrēō	
sēnescō, -ērē, <i>to grow old</i>	sēnūī
sēnēō	

rēsīpiscō, -ērē, to come to one's	rēsīpūī
sāpīō	[senses
ingēmiscō, -ērē, to groan	ingēmūī
gēmō	
contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble	contrēmūī
trēmō	

**Wanting Perfect and Supine.**

hiscō, -ērē, to yawn	flāvescō, -ērē, to become yellow
hīō	flāvēō
augescō, -ērē, to augment	hēbescō, -ērē, to grow dull
augēō	hēbēō

**Denominative Inceptives.**

395. Most Denominative Inceptives want both **Perfect** and **Supine**; some have the **Perfect** in **ūī**.

**Wanting Perfect and Supine.**

aegrescō, -ērē, to fall sick	plūmescō, -ērē, to get feathers
aegēr, sick	plūmā, a feather
dītescō, -ērē, to grow rich	pūērascō, -ērē, to become a
divēs, rich	pūēr, a child [child
dulcescō, -ērē, to become sweet	jūvenescō, -ērē, to grow young
dulcīs, sweet	jūvenīs, young
grandescō, -ērē, to grow large	grāvescō, -ērē, to grow heavy
grandīs, large	grāvīs, heavy
mītescō, -ērē, to become mild	intēgrascō, -ērē, to begin anew
mītīs, mild	intēgēr, fresh
pinguescō, -ērē, to grow fat	tēnērescō, -ērē, to grow tender
pinguīs, fat	tēnēr, tender

**With the Perfect in ūī.**

crēbrescō, -ērē, to become frequent (crēbēr, frequent)	crēbrūī
dūrescō, -ērē, to grow hard (dūrūs, hard)	dūrūī
ēvānescō, -ērē, to vanish (vānūs, empty)	ēvānūī
innōtescō, -ērē, to become known (nōtūs, known)	innōtūī
mācrescō, -ērē, to grow meager (mācēr, meager)	mācrūī
mātūrescō, -ērē, to ripen (mātūrūs, ripe)	mātūrūī
nīgrescō, -ērē, to become black (nīgēr, black)	nīgrūī
obmūtescō, -ērē, to become dumb (mūtūs, dumb)	obmūtūī
rēcrrūdescō, -ērē, to break open afresh (crūdūs, fresh)	rēcrrūdūī
vīlescō, -ērē, to become vile (vīlīs, vile)	vīlūī

396.

Deponent Verbs.

frūōr, -ī, to enjoy  
 perfrūōr, -ī, to enjoy fully  
 fungōr, -ī, to discharge  
 defungōr, -ī, to discharge  
 grādīōr, -ī, to step  
 agrēdīōr, -ī, to attack  
 lābōr, -ī, to glide, roll on  
 dilābōr, -ī, to fall asunder  
 lōquōr, -ī, to speak  
 allōquōr, -ī, to address  
 mōrīōr, -ī, to die  
 nītōr, -ī, to stay one's self on  
 pātīōr, -ī, to suffer  
 perpētīōr, -ī, to endure  
 [plectōr]  
 amplectōr, -ī, to embrace  
 quērōr, -ī, to complain  
 sēquōr, -ī, to follow  
 assēquōr, -ī, to pursue  
 ūtōr, -ī, to use  
 ābūtōr, -ī, to use, abuse  
 rēvertōr, -ī, to turn back

frūītūs & fructūs sūm  
 perfructūs sūm  
 functūs sūm  
 defunctūs sūm  
 gressūs sūm  
 aggressūs sūm  
 lapsūs sūm  
 dilapsūs sūm  
 lōcūtūs sūm  
 allōcūtūs sūm  
 mortūūs sūm—F.Part. mōrītūrūs  
 nīsūs & nixūs sūm  
 passūs sūm  
 perpressūs sūm  
 amplexūs sūm  
 questūs sūm  
 sēcūtūs sūm  
 assēcūtūs sūm  
 ūsūs sūm  
 ābūsūs sūm  
 rēvertī, active — Part. rēversūs

With stems in sc.

[āpiscōr, -ī, to reach after  
 ādīpiscōr, -ī, to obtain  
 defētiscōr, -ī, to be worn out  
 expergiscōr, -ī, to awake  
 īrascōr, -ī, to grow angry  
 [mīniscōr, I recollect]  
 commīniscōr, -ī, to devise  
 rēmīniscōr, -ī, to remember  
 nanciscōr, -ī, to get  
 nascōr, -ī, to be born  
 oblīviscōr, -ī, to forget  
 pāciscōr, -ī, to strike a bargain  
 pascōr, -ī, to feed  
 prōfīciscōr, -ī, to set out, start  
 ulciscōr, -ī, to avenge  
 vescōr, -ī, to feed upon, eat

aptūs sūm]  
 ādeptūs sūm  
 defessūs sūm  
 experrectūs sūm  
 (īrātūs sūm) — īrātūs, angry  
 commentūs sūm  
 wantīng  
 nactūs & nactūs sūm  
 nātūs sūm—Fut. Part. nascītūrūs  
 oblītūs sūm  
 pactūs sūm  
 pastūs sūm  
 prōfectūs sūm  
 ultūs sūm  
 wantīng



VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**397.** The **Fourth Conjugation** includes all verbs with vowel-stems in **ī**. Their **Perfect** and **Supine** are formed by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, according to the rule already given (**344**). Or, in other words, in the Fourth Conjugation the **Regular Forms** of the **Principal Parts** are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-īō            -īrē	-īvī	-ītūm
audīō        audīrē, <i>to hear</i>	audīvī	audītūm

**398.** The following **Verbs** of the **Fourth Conjugation** vary from the usual mode of formation:

farcīō, -īrē, <i>to stuff</i>	farsī	fartūm
rēfercīō, -īrē, <i>to cram</i>	rēfersī	rēfertūm
fulcīō, -īrē, <i>to support</i>	fulsī	fultūm
haurīō, -īrē, <i>to draw</i>	hausī	haustūm
exhaurīō, -īrē, <i>to exhaust</i>	exhausī	exhaustūm
saepīō, -īrē, <i>to hedge in</i>	saepsī	saeptūm
sālīō, -īrē, <i>to leap</i>	sālīī	saltūm
dissīlīō, -īrē, <i>to burst asunder</i>	dissīlīī	wanting
sancīō, -īrē, <i>to sanction</i>	sanxī	sanctūm, sancītūm
sarcīō, -īrē, <i>to mend</i>	sarsī	sartūm
sentīō, -īrē, <i>to feel, perceive</i>	sensī	sensūm
sēpēlīō, -īrē, <i>to bury</i>	sēpēlīvī	sēpultūm
vēnīō, -īrē, <i>to come</i>	vēnī	ventūm
invēnīō, -īrē, <i>to find out</i>	invēnī	inventūm
vincīō, -īrē	vinxī	vinctūm
dēvincīō, -īrē } <i>to bind</i>	dēvinxī	dēvinctūm
āmicīō, -īrē, <i>to clothe</i>	wanting	āmictūm
pārīō, -ērē, <i>to bring forth (3d Conjugation)</i>		
āpērīō, -īrē, <i>to open</i>	āpērūī	āpērtūm
rēpērīō, -īrē, <i>to find</i>	rēpērūī	rēpertūm

**Wanting Perfect and Supine:**

fērīō, -īrē, <i>to strike, beat</i>	and Desideratives
fērōcīō, -īrē, <i>to be unruly</i>	in ūrīō, as:
sūperbīō, -īrē, <i>to be proud</i>	ēsūrīō, -īrē, <i>to want to eat</i>

[159, 160.]

**399. Deponent Verbs.**

assentīōr, -īrī, <i>to assent</i>	assensūs sūm
mētīōr, -īrī, <i>to measure</i>	mensūs sūm

ordīōr, -īrī, *to begin*  
 expēriōr, -īrī, *to try, exercise*  
 oppēriōr, -īrī, *to await*  
 ōriōr, -īrī, *to rise, appear*

Pres. Ind. { ōriōr      ōrērīs      ōritūr } 3d Conjugation.  
 { ōrimūr      ōrimīnī      ōriuntūr }

Imperf. Subj. ōrīrēr or ōrērēr      Gerundive. ōriundūs, -ā, -ūm

Fut. Part. oritūrūs, -ā, -ūm

ādōriōr, -īrī, *to attack*

orsūs sūm  
 expertūs sūm  
 oppertūs sūm  
 ortūs sūm

ādortūs sūm

The **Compounds** of ōriōr follow the conjugation of the simple verb, except ādōriōr, *to rise up at, attack*, which follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout. [167. 168.]

### Irregular Conjugation.

**400.** A few verbs are **irregular** in the Conjugation of the **Present** and the forms derived from it. These are:

sūm, *I am*, and its **Compounds**.

The conjugation of sūm has already been given (**303**); its **Compounds** are conjugated in the same way except possē, *to be able*.

**401.** Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.      Perfect.      Supine.  
 possūm      possē, *to be able*      pōtūī      —

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

pos' sūm, *I can*  
 pō' tēs, *thou canst*  
 pō' test, *he can*  
 pos' sū mūs, *we can*  
 pō te' stīs, *you can*  
 pos' sunt, *they can*

pos' sīm, *I may be able*  
 pos' sīs, *thou mayest be able*  
 pos' sit, *he may be able*  
 pos sī' mūs, *we may be able*  
 pos sī' tīs, *you may be able*  
 pos' sint, *they may be able*

Imperfect.

pō' tē rām, *I could, was able*  
 pō' tē rās, *thou couldst*  
 pō' tē rāt, *he could*  
 pō tē rā' mūs, *we could*  
 pō tē rā' tīs, *you could*  
 pō' tē rant, *they could*

pos' sēm, *I might be able*  
 pos' sēs, *thou mightest be able*  
 pos' sēt, *he might be able*  
 pos sē' mūs, *we might be able*  
 pos sē' tīs, *you might be able*  
 pos' sent, *they might be able*

INDICATIVE.

põ' tẽ rõ, *I shall be able*  
 põ' tẽ rīs, *thou wilt be able*  
 põ' tẽ rīt, *he will be able*  
 põ tẽ' rī mūs, *we shall be able*  
 põ tẽ' rī tīs, *you will be able*  
 põ' tẽ runt, *they will be able*

Future.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

põ' tũ ī, *I have been able*  
 põ tũ ī' stī  
 põ' tũ it  
 põ tũ' ī mūs  
 põ tũ ī' stīs  
 põ tũ ē' runt

Perfect.

põ tũ' ě rīm, *I may have been able*  
 põ tũ' ě rīs  
 põ tũ' ě rīt  
 põ tũ ě rī mūs  
 põ tũ ě rī tīs  
 põ tũ' ě rint

Pluperfect.

põ tũ' ě rām, <i>I had been able</i>	põ tũ is' sēm, <i>I might have been able</i>
põ tũ' ě rās	põ tũ is' sēs
põ tũ' ě rāt	põ tũ is' sēt
põ tũ ě rā' mūs	põ tũ is sē' mūs
põ tũ ě rā' tīs	põ tũ is sē' tīs
põ tũ' ě rant	põ tũ is' sent

Future Perfect.

põ tũ' ě rõ, <i>I shall have been able</i>	(wanting)
põ tũ' ě rīs	
põ tũ' ě rīt	
põ tũ ě rī mūs	
põ tũ ě rī tīs	
põ tũ' ě rint	

INFINITIVE.

Present. pos' sě, <i>to be able</i>	Perfect. põ tũ is' sě, <i>to have been able</i>
-------------------------------------	---

**402.** The verb sũm is joined with the adjective põtīs, *able*, making the compound (pot-sũm) possũm, *I can, am able*. This is conjugated like sũm, but observe:

that the **t** of põt is assimilated before **s**, thus: possũm instead of potsũm;

that the **f** is dropped in fũī, fũĕrām, etc., thus: põtũī for potfũī;

that põtessě and põtessēm are contracted into possě, possēm.

Participle, Imperative, and Gerund are wanting; põtens, *mighty*, is simply an adjective.

<b>403.</b>	Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf. fě'rō      ferrě, to bear	Perfect. tŭlī	Supine. lātŭm
-------------	--	------------------	------------------

### Active.

#### INDICATIVE.

fě'rō, *I bear*  
fers  
fert  
fě' rī mŭs  
fer' tīs  
fě' runt

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

##### Present.

fě' rām, *I may bear*  
fě' rās  
fě' rāt  
fě rā' mŭs  
fě rā' tīs  
fě' rant

##### Imperfect.

fě rē' bām, <i>I was bearing</i>	fer' rēm, <i>I should bear</i>
fě rē' bās	fer' rēs
fě rē' bāt	fer' rēt
fě rē bā' mŭs	fer rē' mŭs
fě rē bā' tīs	fer rē' tīs
fě rē' bant	fer' rent

##### Future.

fě' rām, <i>I shall bear</i>				
fě' rēs	lā tŭ'rŭs,	}	sīm	} <i>may be about to bear</i>
fě' rēt	-ā, -ŭm		sīs	
fě rē' mŭs		sīt		
fě rē' tīs	lā tŭ' rī,	}	sī' mŭs	
fě' rent	-ae, -ā		sī' tīs	
			sint	

##### Perfect.

tŭ' lī, <i>I bore or have borne</i>	tŭ' lě rīm, <i>I may have borne</i>
tŭ li' stī	tŭ' lě rīs
tŭ' līt	tŭ' lě rīt
tŭ' lī mŭs	tŭ lě rī mŭs
tŭ li' stīs	tŭ lě rī tīs
tŭ lē' runt	tŭ' lě rint

##### Pluperfect.

tŭ' lě rām, <i>I had borne</i>	tŭ lis' sēm, <i>I should have borne</i>
tŭ' lě rās	tŭ lis' sēs
tŭ' lě rāt	tŭ lis' sēt
tŭ lě rā' mŭs	tŭ lis sē' mŭs
tŭ lě rā' tīs	tŭ lis sē' tīs
tŭ' lě rant	tŭ lis' sent

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

tū' lě rō, *I shall have borne* (wanting)  
 tū' lě rīs  
 tū' lě rīt  
 tū lě rī mūs  
 tū lě rī tīs  
 tū' lě rint

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing.	fěr, <i>bear thou</i>	Plur.	fer' tě, <i>bear ye</i>
Fut. "	fer' tō, <i>thou shalt bear</i>	"	fer tō' tě, <i>ye shall bear</i>
"	fer' tō, <i>he shall bear</i>	"	fě run' tō, <i>they shall bear</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' rě, *to bear*  
 Perf. tū lis' sě, *to have borne*  
 Fut. lā tū' rūs, -ă, -ŭm es' sě, &c., *to be about to bear*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. fě' rens, fě ren' tīs, *bearing*  
 Fut. lā tū' rūs, lā tū' ră, lā tū' rŭm, *about to bear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	fě ren' dī, <i>of bearing</i>	
Dat.	fě ren' dō, <i>for bearing</i>	
Acc.	fě ren' dŭm, <i>bearing</i>	lā' tŭm } <i>to bear</i> lā' tŭ }
Abl.	fě ren' dō, <i>by bearing</i>	

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fě' rōr, <i>I am borne</i>	fě' rār, <i>I may be borne</i>
fer' rīs	fě rā' rīs
fer' tūr	fě rā' tūr
fě' rī mŭr	fě rā' mŭr
fě rī' mī nī	fě rā' mīnī
fě run' tūr	fě ran' tūr

Imperfect.

fě rē' bār, <i>I was borne</i>	fer' rēr, <i>I might be borne</i>
fě rē bā' rīs	fer rē' rīs
fě rē bā' tūr	fer rē' tūr
fě rē bā' mŭr	fer rē' mŭr
fě rē bā' mī nī	fer rē' mī nī
fě rē ban' tūr	fer ren' tūr

INDICATIVE.

fě' rār, *I shall be borne*  
 fě rē' rīs  
 fě rē' tūr  
 fě rē' mūr  
 fě rē' mī nī  
 fě ren' tūr

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

Future.

Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, *I was or have been borne*  
 SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm sīm, *I may have been borne*

Pluperfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm ěrām, *I had been borne*  
 SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm essēm, *I might have been borne*

Future Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm ěrō, *I shall have been borne*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. fer' rě, *be thou borne*      fě rī' mī nī, *be ye borne*  
 Fut. fer' tōr, *thou shalt be borne*  
 fer' tōr, *he shall be borne*      fě run' tōr, *they shall be borne*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' rī, *to be borne*  
 Perf. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sě, &c., *to have been borne*  
 Fut. lā' tūm ī' rī, *to be about to be borne*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. lā' tūs, lā' tā, lā' tūm, *borne*  
 Gerundive. fě ren' dūs, fě ren' dā, fě ren' dūm, *to be borne*

Care should be taken not to confound the two verbs:  
 ferrě, *to bear*, and fěrīrě, *to beat*.

404. Compounds of fěrō are conjugated like the simple verb:

adfērō	adferrě, <i>to afford</i>	attūlī	adlātūm
aufērō	auferrě, <i>to carry away</i>	abstūlī	ablātūm
confērō	conferrě, <i>to bring together</i>	contūlī	collātūm
diffērō	differrě, <i>to defer</i>	distūlī	dilātūm
effērō	efferrě, <i>to carry out</i>	extūlī	elātūm
infērō	inferrě, <i>to carry into</i>	intūlī	illātūm
præfērō	præferrě, <i>to prefer</i>	prætūlī	praelātūm
rĕfērō	rĕferrě, <i>to bring back</i>	rĕtūlī, rettūlī	rĕlātūm

<b>405.</b>	<b>Pres. Ind. &amp; Pres. Inf.</b>		<b>Perfect.</b>
vólō	vellē, to be willing	vólūī	—
nōlō	nollē, to be unwilling	nōlūī	—
mālō	mallē, to be more willing	mālūī	—

INDICATIVE.

Present.

*I am willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ' lō	nō' lō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	mā' vīs
vult	nōn vult	mā' vult
võ' lū mūs	nō' lū mūs	mā' lū mūs
vul' tīs	nōn vul' tīs	mā vul' tīs
võ' lunt	nō' lunt	mā' lunt

Imperfect.

*I was willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ lē' bām	nō lē' bām	mā lē' bām
võ lē' bās	nō lē' bās	mā lē' bās
võ lē' bāt	nō lē' bāt	mā lē' bāt
võ lē bā' mūs	nō lē bā' mūs	mā lē bā' mūs
võ lē bā' tīs	nō lē bā' tīs	mā lē bā' tīs
võ lē' bant	nō lē' bant	mā lē' bant

Future.

*I shall be willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ' lām	nō' lām	mā' lām
võ' lēs	nō' lēs	mā' lēs
võ' lēt	nō' lēt	mā' lēt
võ lē' mūs	nō lē' mūs	mā lē' mūs
võ lē' tīs	nō lē' tīs	mā lē' tīs
võ' lent	nō' lent	mā' lent

Perfect.

*I was or have been willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ' lū ī	nō' lū ī	mā' lū ī
võ lū i' stī	nō lū i' stī	mā lū i' stī
võ' lū it	nō' lū it	mā' lū it
võ lū' ī mūs	nō lū' ī mūs	mā lū' ī mūs
võ lū i' stīs	nō lū i' stīs	mā lū i' stīs
võ lū ē' runt	nō lū ē' runt	mā lū ē' runt

INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect.

*I had been willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ lǔ' ẽ rãm	nõ lǔ' ẽ rãm	mã lǔ' ẽ rãm
võ lǔ' ẽ rās	nõ lǔ' ẽ rās	mã lǔ' ẽ rās
võ lǔ' ẽ răt	nõ lǔ' ẽ răt	mã lǔ' ẽ răt
võ lǔ ẽ rã' mūs	nõ lǔ ẽ rã' mūs	mã lǔ ẽ rã' mūs
võ lǔ ẽ rã' tīs	nõ lǔ ẽ rã' tīs	mã lǔ ẽ rã' tīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rant	nõ lǔ' ẽ rant	mã lǔ' ẽ rant

Future Perfect.

*I shall have been willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ lǔ' ẽ rō	nõ lǔ' ẽ rō	mã lǔ' ẽ rō
võ lǔ' ẽ rīs	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīs	mã lǔ' ẽ rīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rīt	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīt	mã lǔ' ẽ rīt
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rint	nõ lǔ' ẽ rint	mã lǔ' ẽ rint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

*I may be willing, unwilling, more willing*

vě' lĩm	nõ' lĩm	mã' lĩm
vě' līs	nõ' līs	mã' līs
vě' līt	nõ' līt	mã' līt
vě lĩ' mūs	nõ lĩ' mūs	mã lĩ' mūs
vě lĩ' tīs	nõ lĩ' tīs	mã lĩ' tīs
vě' lint	nõ' lint	mã' lint

Imperfect.

*I should be willing, unwilling, more willing*

vel' lěm	nol' lěm	mal' lěm
vel' lēs	nol' lēs	mal' lēs
vel' lět	nol' lět	mal' lět
vel lē' mūs	nol lē' mūs	mal lē' mūs
vel lē' tīs	nol lē' tīs	mal lē' tīs
vel' lent	nol' lent	mal' lent

Perfect.

*I may have been willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ lǔ' ẽ rĩm	nõ lǔ' ẽ rĩm	mã lǔ' ẽ rĩm
võ lǔ' ẽ rīs	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīs	mã lǔ' ẽ rīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rīt	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīt	mã lǔ' ẽ rīt
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rint	nõ lǔ' ẽ rint	mã lǔ' ẽ rint



SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

*I should have been willing, unwilling, more willing*

võ lū is' sēm	nō lū is' sēm	mā lū is' sēm
võ lū is' sēs	nō lū is' sēs	mā lū is' sēs
võ lū is' sēt	nō lū is' sēt	mā lū is' sēt
võ lū is sē' mūs	nō lū is sē' mūs	mā lū is sē' mūs
võ lū is sē' tīs	nō lū is sē' tīs	mā lū is sē' tīs
võ lū is' sent	nō lū is' sent	mā lū is' sent

IMPERATIVE.

*be unwilling, &c.*

<i>wanting</i>	Pres. S.	nō' lī	Pl.	nō lī' tē	<i>wanting</i>
	Fut. "	nō lī' tō	"	nō lī tō' tē	
		nō lī' tō		nō lun' tō	

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	vel' lē, nol' lē, mal' lē, <i>to be willing, &amp;c.</i>
Perf.	võ lū is' sē, nō lū is' sē, mā lū is' sē, <i>to have been willing, &amp;c.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	võ' lens, <i>willing</i>	nō' lens, <i>unwilling</i>	<i>wanting</i>
-------	--------------------------	----------------------------	----------------

GERUND.

Gen.	võ len' dī	nō len' dī	<i>wanting</i>
Dat.	võ len' dō		[175. 176.]

<b>406.</b>	Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
	ěō, irě, <i>to go</i>	ivī	ītūm

INDICATIVE.

ě' ō, *I go*  
 īs  
 it  
 ī' mūs  
 ī' tīs  
 ě' unt

Present.

ě' ām, *I may go*  
 ě' ās  
 ě' āt  
 ě' ā' mūs  
 ě' ā' tīs  
 ě' ant

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

ī' bām, *I was going*  
 ī' bās  
 ī' bāt  
 ī bā' mūs  
 ī bā' tīs  
 ī' bant

ī' rēm, *I should go*  
 ī' rēs  
 ī' rēt  
 ī' rē' mūs  
 ī rē' tīs  
 ī' rent

INDICATIVE.

*I shall go*  
 ī' bō  
 ī' bīs  
 ī' bīt  
 ī' bī mūs  
 ī' bī tīs  
 ī' bunt

*I went or have gone*  
 ī' vī (ī' ī)  
 ī' vi' stī (ī' i' stī)  
 ī' vīt (ī' ĩt)  
 ī' vī mūs (ī' ī mūs)  
 ī' vi' stīs (ī' i' stīs)  
 ī' vē' runt (ī' ě' runt)

*I had gone*  
 ī' vē rām (ī' ě rām)  
 ī' vē rās, (ī' ě rās)  
 ī' vē rāt, (ī' ě rāt)  
 ī' vē rā' mūs (ī' ě rā' mūs)  
 ī' vē rā' tīs (ī' ě rā' tīs)  
 ī' vē rant (ī' ě rant)

*I shall have gone*  
 ī' vē rō (ī' ě rō)  
 ī' vē rīs (ī' ě rīs)  
 ī' vē rīt, (ī' ě rīt)  
 ī' vē rī mūs (ī' ě rī mūs)  
 ī' vē rī tīs (ī' ě rī tīs)  
 ī' vē rint (ī' ě rint)

Singular.

Pres. ī, go  
 Fut. ī' tō, *thou shalt go*  
 ī' tō, *he shall go*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

*I may be about to go*  
 ī' tū' rūš, { sīm  
 -ǎ, -ūm { sīs  
 { sīt  
 ī' tū' rī, { sī' mūs  
 -ae, -ǎ { sī' tīs  
 { sint

Perfect.

*I may have gone*  
 ī' vē rīm (ī' ě rīm)  
 ī' vē rīs (ī' ě rīs)  
 ī' vē rīt (ī' ě rīt)  
 ī' vē rī mūs (ī' ě rī mūs)  
 ī' vē rī tīs (ī' ě rī tīs)  
 ī' vē rint (ī' ě rint)

Pluperfect.

*I should have gone*  
 ī' vis' sēm (īs' sēm)  
 ī' vis' sēs (īs' sēs)  
 ī' vis' sēt (īs' sēt)  
 ī' vis' sē' mūs (īs' sē' mūs)  
 ī' vis' sē' tīs (īs' sē' tīs)  
 ī' vis' sent (īs' sent)

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Plural.

ī' tě, *go ye*  
 ī' tō' tě, *ye shall go*  
 ě un' tō, *they shall go*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. ī' rě, *to go*  
 Perf. ī' vis' sě (īs' sě), *to have gone*  
 Fut. ī' tū' rūš, -ǎ, -ūm es' sě, &c., *to be about to go*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. *ī' ens*, Gen. *ě un' tīs*, *going*

Fut. *ī tū' rūš*, *-ǎ*, *-ūm*, *being about to go*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. *ě un' dī*, *of going*

Dat. *ě un' dō*, *for going*

Acc. *ě un' dūm*, *going*

Abl. *ě un' dō*, *by going*

*ī' tūm* } *to go*  
*ī' tū* }

[177. 178]

**407.** The Compounds of *ěō* are conjugated in the same way. But usually they drop the *v* of the Perfect as: *rědīi* for *rědīvī*, &c., and contract the *ī ī* of the Perfect Infinitive and of the Pluperfect Subjunctive into *ī*, as: *rědīssě* for *rědī(v)issě*, &c., e. g.:

*ǎběō*, *-īrě*, *to go away*

*praetěrěō*, *-īrě*, *to pass by*

*īněō*, *-īrě*, *to go into, begin*

*rěděō*, *-īrě*, *to return*

*intěrěō*, *-īrě*, *to perish*

*sūběō*, *-īrě*, *to come or go under*

*ōběō*, *-īrě*, *to meet*

*transěō*, *-īrě*, *to pass over*

**408.** The Compounds *věněō*, *I am for sale*, and *pěrěō*, *I perish*, serve as Passives to *vendō*, *I sell*, and *perdō*, *I ruin*. The Compound *ambīō*, *I go about, seek*, is regular of the Fourth Conjugation.

**409.** *quěō* *quīrě*, *to be able*

*quīvī* *quītūm*

*něquěō* *něquīrě*, *not to be able*

*něquīvī* *něquītūm*

are conjugated like *īrě*, *to go* (406); they are, however, usual only in the Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

**410.** Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

Supine.

*ědō*, *-ěrě*, *to eat*

*edī*

*ěsūm*

(regular of the 3d conjugation, 373) has also some contracted forms, similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *essě*, *to be*, but always with *e* long before *s*, viz.:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

*ědis* *ěs*, *thou eatest*

*ědērēm*

*ěssēm*, *I should eat*

*ědit* *ěst*, *he eats*

*ědērēs*

*ěssēs*, *thou wouldst eat*

*ěditīs* *ěstīs*, *you eat*

*ědērēt*

*ěssēt*, *he would eat*

*ědērēmūs*

*ěssēmūs*, *we should eat*

*ědērētīs*

*ěssētīs*, *you would eat*

*ědērent*

*ěssent*, *they would eat*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. *ědē* *ěs*, *eat thou*

*ěditě*

*ěstě*, *eat ye*

Fut. *ěditō* *ěstō*, *thou shalt eat*

*ěditōtě*

*ěstōtě*, *ye shall eat*

*ěditō* *ěstō*, *he shall eat*

INFINITIVE.

ědĕrĕ ěssĕ, *to eat*

PASSIVE. ědītŭr ěstŭr, *is eaten*—ědĕrĕtŭr ěssĕtŭr, *should be eaten*

411. Pres. Ind & Pres. Inf.

fīō, fīĕrĭ, *to become*

Perfect.

factŭs sŭm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fī' ō, *I become*

fī' ām, *I may become*

fīs

fī' ās

fīt

fī' āt

fī' mŭs

fī' ā' mŭs

fī' tīs

fī' ā' tīs

fī' unt

fī' ant

Imperfect.

fī' ē' bām, *I became*

fī' ě rĕm, *I should become*

fī' ē' bās

fī' ě rĕs

fī' ē' bāt

fī' ě rĕt

fī' ē' bā' mŭs

fī' ě rĕ' mŭs

fī' ē' bā' tīs

fī' ě rĕ' tīs

fī' ē' bant

fī' ě rent

Future.

fī' ām, *I shall become*

(wanting)

fī' ěs

fī' ět

fī' ē' mŭs

fī' ē' tīs

fī' ent

Perfect.

*I became or have become*

*I may have become*

factŭs, -ā, -ŭm sŭm, &c.

factŭs, -ā, -ŭm sĭm, &c.

Pluperfect.

*I had become*

*I should have become*

factŭs, -ā, -ŭm ěrām, &c.

factŭs, -ā, -ŭm ěssĕm, &c.

Future Perfect.

*I shall have become*

factŭs, -ā, -ŭm ěrō, &c.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. fī, *become thou*

Plur. fī' tĕ, *become ye*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.		fī' ě rī, to become	
Perf. Sing.	Nom.	factūs, -ā, -ūm essě	} to have become
	Acc.	fac' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě	
Plur.	Nom.	fac' tī, -ae, -ā es' sě	
	Acc.	fac' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sě	
Fut.		factūm irī, to be about to become	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. factūs, -ā, -ūm, become; Gerundive. faciendūs, -ā, -ūm, to be made

**412.** The verb fīō is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future according to the Fourth Conjugation, but takes an ě in the Infinitive and Subjunctive Imperfect, viz.: fiĕrī, fiĕrēm. In these forms the ĩ is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel. It is originally an intransitive verb meaning to become, to happen, but is also treated as **Passive** to faciō, I make. Examples are :

nīhīl fīt, nothing happens  
 consūl fīt, he is made consul  
 dīvēs factūs est, he has become rich  
 nīhīl factūm est, nothing has happened

**413.** The Compounds of faciō with Prepositions change ā into ĩ, and form the Passive regularly, as:

interfīcīō, I kill                                  interfīcīōr, I am killed

But when compounded with words other than prepositions, faciō retains its ā, and uses fīō as its Passive, as:

mansuēfācīō, I tame                                  mansuēfīō, I become tame  
 līquēfācīō, I make liquid                          līquēfīō, I melt

The accent remains the same as in the simple verbs, thus:  
 mansuēfā'cīs, thou tamest. [179. 180]

### Defective Verbs.

**414.** Defective Verbs want certain parts.

**415.** coepī, I have begun      mēmīnī, I remember      ōdī, I hate  
 are in use only in the **Perfect** and the tenses derived from it. To coepī, I have begun, incīpīō, I begin, serves as a Present. mēmīnī, I remember, and ōdī, I hate, are present in sense; hence in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect they have the sense of the Imperfect and Future. nōvī, I know (Perf. of noscō, I learn to know), and consuēvī, I am wont (Perf. of consuescō, I accustom myself), are also present in sense.

		INDICATIVE.		
Perf.	<i>I have begun</i>	<i>I remember</i>	<i>I hate</i>	
	coe' pī	mě' mī nī	ō' dī	
	coe pi' stī	mě mī ni' stī	ō di' stī	
	coe' pīt	mě' mī nīt	ō' dīt	
	coe' pī mūs	mě mī' nī mūs	ō' dī mūs	
	coe pi' stīs	mě mī ni' stīs	ō di' stīs	
	coe pē' runt	mě mī nē' runt	ō dē' runt	
Pluperf.	coe' pē rām, &c.	mě mī' nē rām, &c.	ō' dē rām, &c.	
Fut. Perf.	coe' pē rō, &c.	mě mī' nē rō, &c.	ō' dē rō, &c.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
Perf.	coe' pē rīm, &c.	mě mī' nē rīm, &c.	ō' dē rīm, &c.	
Pluperf.	coe pis' sēm, &c.	mě mī nis' sēm, &c.	ō dis' sēm, &c.	
IMPERATIVE.				
	(wanting)	mě men' tō	(wanting)	
		mě men tō' tē		
INFINITIVE.				
Perf.	coe pis' sē	mě mī nis' sē	ō dis' sē	
Fut.	coop tū' rūš es' sē	(wanting)	ō sū' rūš es' sē	
PARTICIPLES.				
Perf.	coop' tūs, -ǎ, -ǔm	(wanting)	(ō' sūs, -ǎ, -ǔm)	
Fut.	coop tū' rūš, -ǎ, -ǔm	(wanting)	ō sū' rūš, -ǎ, -ǔm	
PASSIVE.	coop' tūs, -ǎ, -ǔm sūm, <i>I have begun</i> (used with the			
	Pass. Infinit.)			
	ō' sūs, -ǎ, -ǔm sūm, <i>I hate</i>			

416. ājō, *I say, say yes, affirm* — inquām, *I say, quoth I* — fārī, *to speak*

PRES. IND.	ā' jō	PRES. SUBJ.	—	IMP. IND.	ā jē' bām
	á' is		ā' jās		ā jē' bās
	ǎ' it		ā' jāt		ā jē' bāt
	—		—		ā jē bā' mūs
	—		—		ā jē bā' tīs
	ā' junt		ā' jant		ā jē' bant
PERF. IND.	—	—	ǎ' it	—	—
PARTICIPLE.	ā' jens, <i>affirmative</i>				

<p><b>PRES. IND.</b> in' quām in' quīs in' quīt in' quī mūs in' quī tīs in' quī unt</p> <p><b>IMP. IND.</b> in quī ē' bām in quī ē' bās in quī ē' bāt in quī ē bā' mūs in quī ē bā' tīs in quī ē' bant</p> <p><b>PERF. IND.</b> — in qui' stī in' quīt — in qui' stīs</p>	<p><b>PRES. SUBJ.</b> — in' quī ās in' quī āt — in quī ā' tīs in' quī ant</p> <p><b>FUT. IND.</b> — in' quī ēs in' quī ēt</p> <p><b>IMPERAT.</b> in' quē in' quī tē in' quī tō</p>
---	--

inquām, *say*, is used only in direct quotations, as the English *quoth*.

Besides the Infinitive fārī, *to speak*, mark:

<p><b>Pres.</b> fātūr, <i>he speaks</i> <b>Fut.</b> fābör, <i>I shall speak</i> fābītūr, <i>he will speak</i> <b>Perf.</b> fātūs sūm, <i>I have spoken, &amp;c.</i></p>	<p><b>Imperat.</b> fārē, <i>speak thou</i> <b>Gerund.</b> fandī, <i>of speaking</i> fandō, <i>for speaking</i> <b>Supine.</b> fātū, <i>to speak</i></p>
<p><b>Participle.</b> (fantīs, fantī) <i>infans, speechless</i> <b>Gerundive.</b> fandūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>to be spoken of</i></p>	

<p><b>417.</b> ā' vē sal' vē sal vē' bīs, <i>hail thou!</i> ā vē' tē sal vē' tē <i>hail ye!</i> ā' gē ā' gī tē <i>come</i> cē' dō cet' tē <i>give</i></p>	<p>vā' lē } fare- vā lē' tē } well ā' pā gē, <i>begone</i></p>
---	--

**418.** To these may be added:

<p>quae' sō, <i>I beseech</i> quae' sū mūs, <i>we beseech</i></p>	<p>fō' rēm, <i>I should be</i> fō' rēs, <i>thou shouldst be</i> fō' rēt, <i>he should be</i> fō' rent, <i>they should be</i> fō' rē, <i>to be about to be</i></p>
---	---

## Impersonal Verbs.

**419.** Many Verbs appear only in the *third person singular* and in the *Infinitive* to express an action or condition without reference to any actor. These are called **Impersonal Verbs**.

**420.** The following Verbs signifying *personal conditions* are **absolutely impersonal**:

Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.
děcět, <i>it becomes</i>	děcērě	děcūit
děděcět, <i>it is unbecoming</i>	děděcērě	děděcūit
libět, <i>it pleases</i>	libērě	libūit or libitūm est
licět, <i>it is lawful, allowed</i>	licērě	licūit or licitūm est
liquět, <i>it is clear</i>	liquērě	licūit
mīsērět, <i>it excites pity</i>	mīsērērě	{ mīsērītūm } { mīsertūm } est
ōportět, <i>it is needful</i>	ōportērě	ōportūit
pīgět, <i>it grieves</i>	pīgērě	pīgūit or pīgītūm est
paenītět, <i>it causes sorrow</i>	paenītērě	paenītūit
pūdět, <i>it shames</i>	pūdērě	pūdūit or pūdītūm est
taedět, <i>it wearies</i>	taedērě	pertaesūm est

**421.** The Impersonals děcět, děděcět, libět, licět can have a subject, but only a neuter pronoun or adjective.

libět, licět and liquět govern the **Dative**, as mihĭ licět, *it is lawful for me*; mihĭ libět, *it pleases me*. All the other verbs mentioned in **420** govern the **Accusative**, the persons being expressed as follows:

INDICATIVE.	Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
paenītět <b>mē</b> , <i>I repent</i>	paenītēāt <b>mē</b> , <i>I may repent</i>	
paenītět <b>tē</b>	paenītēāt <b>tē</b>	
paenītět <b>ěūm</b>	paenītēāt <b>ěūm</b>	
paenītět <b>nōs</b>	paenītēāt <b>nōs</b>	
paenītět <b>vōs</b>	paenītēāt <b>vōs</b>	
paenītět <b>ěōs</b>	paenītēāt <b>ěōs</b>	
	Imperfect.	
<i>I was repenting</i>		<i>I should repent</i>
paenītēbāt <b>mē</b> , &c.		paenītērēt <b>mē</b> , &c.
	Future.	
<i>I shall repent</i>		<i>(wanting)</i>
paenītēbīt <b>mē</b> , &c.		



INDICATIVE.

*I (have) repented*  
paenitūit **mē**, &c.

*I had repented*  
paenitūērāt **mē**, &c.

*I shall have repented*  
paenitūērīt **mē**, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

*I may have repented*  
paenitūērīt **mē**, &c.

Pluperfect.

*I should have repented*  
paenitūissēt **mē**, &c.

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

**422.** Verbs describing *phenomena of nature* are almost invariably impersonal in virtue of their meaning:

plūit, *it rains*

ningīt, *it snows*

grandīnāt, *it hails*

tōnāt, *it thunders*

fulgūrāt } *it lightens*  
fulmīnāt }

lūcescīt, *it becomes light*

vespērascīt, *evening comes on*

**423.** Verbs *impersonally* used:

accīdīt

fīt

ēvēnīt

contingīt

constāt, *it is evident, agreed*

expēdīt, *it is useful*

convēnīt, *it is fit*

dēlectāt, *it delights*

intērest, *it concerns, it matters*

jūvāt, *it delights*

pātēt, *it is plain*

plācēt, *it pleases*

praestāt, *it is better*

rēfert, *it concerns, it matters*

restāt, *it remains*

vācāt, *there is leisure*

The **Passive** of intransitive Verbs is often used *impersonally*, thus:

vīvītūr, *people live*

sīc vīvītūr, *such is life*

pugnātūr, *there is fighting*

itūr, *some one goes*

[183. 184.]

ADVERBS.

**424.** **Adverbs** are words qualifying verbs and adjectives, as also other adverbs. In respect to form, they are **Primitive**, i. e. such as cannot be traced to simpler forms, or **Derivative**.

**425.** The majority of **Derivative Adverbs** are formed from adjectives in the following manner: Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions** (ending in **ūs**, and **ēr**) form the adverb by changing the genitive ending **ī** into **ē**. Examples are:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
lentūs, <i>slow</i>	lentī	lentē, <i>slowly, leisurely</i>
rectūs, <i>right</i>	rectī	rectē, <i>rightly, correctly</i>
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libērē, <i>freely</i>
pulchēr, <i>fine</i>	pulchrī	pulchrē, <i>finely</i>

bōnūs, *good*, makes bēné, *well*; mālūs, *bad*, makes mālě, *badly*.

**426.** Adjectives of the **Third Declension** form their adverbs in **tēr**, changing the genitive ending **īs** into **ītēr**; but those in **ns** and **rs** change the genitive ending **īs** into **ēr**:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
cělēr, <i>fast</i>	cělērīs	cělērītēr, <i>fast</i>
fēlix, <i>happy</i>	fēlicīs	fēlicītēr, <i>happily</i>
fortīs, <i>brave</i>	fortīs	fortītēr, <i>bravely</i>
libens, <i>willing</i>	libentīs	libentēr, <i>willingly</i>
pātīens, <i>patient</i>	pātientīs	pātientēr, <i>patiently</i>
diligens, <i>careful</i>	diligentīs	diligentēr, <i>carefully</i>
ēlégans, <i>elegant</i>	ēlégantīs	ēlégantēr, <i>elegantly</i>
sollers, <i>skillful</i>	sollertīs	sollertēr, <i>skillfully</i>

[97. 98.]

**427.** Some Adverbs from Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions** have *both* forms, as:

firmūs, <i>strong</i>	firmē, firmītēr, <i>strongly</i>
hūmānūs, <i>human</i>	hūmānē, hūmānītēr, <i>humanly</i>
largūs, <i>large</i>	largē, largītēr, <i>largely</i>
ōpūlentūs, <i>rich</i>	ōpūlentēr only, <i>richly</i>
vīōlentūs, <i>violent</i>	vīōlentēr “, <i>violently</i>

**428.** A few Adverbs differ in meaning from their adjectives, as:

sānē, <i>certainly</i>	from sānūs, <i>sound</i>
valdē, <i>very</i>	from vālidūs, <i>strong</i>

**429.** The **Neuter Accusative** of some Adjectives of the 3d declension is used as an adverb, as:

fācīlē, <i>easily</i>	impūnē, <i>with impunity</i>
diffīcīlē, <i>with difficulty</i>	rēcens, <i>recently</i>

**430.** Certain **Cases** of *Adjectives, Nouns* and *Pronouns* are often used as Adverbs:

rārō, <i>rarely</i>	contīnūō, <i>forthwith</i>
tūtō, <i>safely</i>	falsō, <i>falsely</i>
cītō, <i>quickly, soon</i>	fortūtō, <i>by chance</i>
consultō, <i>purposely</i>	grātūtō, <i>gratuitously</i>

sēcrētō, *secretly*

sērō, *late*

vērō, *in truth*

vērē, *truly*

hāc, *this way*

spontě, *of one's own accord*

grātīs, *gratis*

cětěrům, *for the rest*

nīmīs, nīmīům, *too much*

prīmům, *first*

tantům, *only*

mānifestō, *clearly*

měritō, *deservedly*

imměritō, *undeservedly*

něcessārīō, *necessarily*

perpětūō, *perpetually*

sůbitō, *suddenly*

certō, *in fact*

certě, *assuredly*

erěbrō, *frequently*

quō, *whither*

fortě, *by chance*

noctū, *by night*

**431.** Some Phrases or Clauses have grown into Adverbs, as:

antěā, *before*

intěrěā, *meanwhile*

proptěrěā, *therefore*

hōdě (= hōc dĕ), *to-day*

magnōpěrě, *particularly*

obvĕām, *towards*

quōdammodō, *in a certain man-*

quōtannīs, *every year* [ner

vidělicět = viděřě licět } *viz.*

scĕlicět = scĕřě licět }

nūdĕs tertĕs = nunc dĕs ter-

tĕs, *the day before yesterday*

**432.** Adverbs in ĭm are formed from Supines, as:

certātĭm, *emulously*

nōmĭnātĭm, *expressly*

prĭvātĭm, *in private*

stātĭm, *steadily*

sensĭm, *little by little*

carptĭm, *by pieces*

cursĭm, *speedily*

passĭm, *here and there*

raptĭm, *hastily*

**433.** Similar Adverbs (in ātĭm, ĭtĭm) are formed from

Nouns, as:

grādātĭm, *step by step*

tribūtĭm, *by tribes*

vĭcissĭm, *by turns*

vĭrĭtĭm, *man by man*

**434.** A number of Adverbs come from Nouns by changing the Genitive-ending into ĭtūs:

antĭquĭtūs, *of old*

dĭvĭnĭtūs, *divinely*

caelĭtūs, *from heaven*

rādĭcĭtūs, *by the roots*

fundĭtūs, *from the foundation*

pĕnĭtūs, *thoroughly*

**435.** In respect to **Meaning**. Adverbs may be divided into several classes:

**Adverbs of Place and Motion,**

**Adverbs of Time and Succession,**

**Adverbs of Manner and Quality.**

**436. Adverbs of Place** are those which answer to the question *where?* **ūbī?** *whither?* **quō?** *whence?* **undě?**

ūbī <i>where?</i>	ālícūbī, <i>somewhere</i>	obviām, <i>toward</i>
ībī, <i>there</i>	ūbiquě, <i>everywhere</i>	ālībī, <i>elsewhere</i>
hīc, <i>here</i>	quā? <i>by what way?</i>	fōrīs, <i>outside</i>
illīc, <i>there</i>	nusquām, <i>nowhere</i>	prōcūl, <i>far</i>
quō, <i>whither?</i>	hūc, <i>hither</i>	retrō, <i>backward</i>
ěō, <i>thither</i>	illūc, <i>thither</i>	fōrās, <i>out</i>
undě, <i>whence</i>	istinc, <i>thence</i>	undīquě, <i>from all</i>
indě, <i>thence</i>	illinc, <i>then</i>	sides
hinc, <i>hence</i>		dēsūpěr, <i>from above</i>

The following are also used as **Prepositions**:

circā, <i>around, about</i>	intrā, <i>inside</i>	pōně, pōst, <i>behind</i>
contrā, <i>opposite</i>	suprā, <i>above</i>	prōpě, <i>near</i>
extrā, <i>outside</i>	infřā, <i>below</i>	cōrām, <i>personally</i>

**437. Adverbs of Time** are those which answer to the question *when?* **quandō?** *how long?* **quamdīū?** *how often?* **quōtīens?**

quandō? <i>when?</i>	hěřī, <i>yesterday</i>
ālīquandō, <i>once</i>	nūdīūs tertīūs, <i>the day before</i>
interdūm, <i>sometimes</i>	yesterday
intěřīm, <i>meanwhile</i>	postrīdīě, <i>the day after</i>
intěřěā, <i>in the meantime</i>	crās, <i>to-morrow</i>
illīcō, <i>on the spot</i>	pěrendīě, <i>the day after to-mor-</i>
sīmūl, <i>at the same time</i>	unquām, <i>ever</i> [row
jām, <i>already</i>	nunquām, <i>never</i>
tanděm, <i>at last</i>	sempěr, <i>always</i>
děmūm, <i>not until</i>	plěrūmquě, <i>commonly</i>
ālīās, <i>at other times</i>	propědīěm, <i>one of these days</i>
nunc, <i>now</i>	posthāc, <i>hereafter</i>
hōdīě, <i>to-day</i>	postěā, <i>afterwards</i>
mōdō, <i>just now</i>	mox, <i>soon</i>
nūpěr, <i>lately</i>	māně, <i>early in the morning</i>
prīděm, <i>long since</i>	īnterdīū, <i>by day</i>
quondām, <i>once</i>	vespěrī, <i>in the evening</i>
antěā, <i>before</i>	noctū, <i>by night</i>
tunc, <i>at that time</i>	děindě, <i>afterwards</i>
tūm, <i>then</i>	sūbindě, <i>presently</i>
prīdīě, <i>the day before</i>	děinceps, <i>in turn</i>
praetěřěā, <i>besides</i>	ābhinc, <i>hereafter</i>

antě, *before*, also used as a **Preposition**.

quamdiū? *how long?*  
 tamdiū, *so long*  
 aliquamdiū, *some time*  
 dūdum, *a short time ago*  
 quōtiens? *how often?*  
 tōtiens, *so often*  
 aliquōtiens, *some times*  
 itērūm, *a second time*  
 rursū, *again*  
 dēnūō, *anew*

usquē, *right on*  
 pārumpēr } *for a short time*  
 paulispēr }  
 tantispēr, *so long*  
 saepē, *often*  
 quōtidīē, *every day*  
 quōtannīs, *every year*  
 sēmēl, *once*  
 bīs, *twice*, and all the other  
**Numeral Adverbs, 241.**

**438.** Adverbs of manner are those which answer to the question *how?* **quōmōdō?** To this class belong all Adverbs derived from Adjectives, **425.** Besides these regular Adverbs of manner mark the following:

quōmōdō } *how*  
 quēmādmōdūm }

ūt, ūtī, *as*

sīc } *so*

itā }

ādēō, *so, to that degree*

quām, *how, how much*

tām, *so, so much*

ālīter } *otherwise*  
 sēcūs }

sātīs, *enough*

sātīūs, *rather*

valdē } *very*  
 admōdūm }

quantōpērē, *how greatly*

tantōpērē, *so greatly*

nīmīs, nīmīūm, *too much*

praecipūē, *especially*

frustrā, *in vain*

tēmērē, *at random*

vix, *hardly*

mōdō, *only*

idēō } *therefore*  
 proptērēā }  
 idcirco }

itēm, *just so, also*

porrō, *moreover, then*

fērē, fermē, *almost*

saltēm, *at least*

paenē, *nearly*

fortassē, *perhaps*

pālām, *publicly*

rēpentē, *suddenly*

nempē } *to wit*  
 scilicēt }

paulātīm, *by degrees*

pēnitūs, *wholly*

plānē, *quite*

omnīnō, *at all*

nae } *at any rate*  
 ūtīquē }

sānē, *certainly*

nīmīrūm, *to be sure*

nōn } *no*

haud } *by no means*  
 haudquāquām }  
 nēquāquām }

nē-quīdēm, *not even*

neutīquām, *not at all*

immō, *on the contrary*

cūr } *why*  
 quārē }

prōpē, *near* } *also prep.*  
 clām, *secretly* }

**439.** The following Adverbs are called **Correlatives**, because they answer to each other.

Interrogative.	Demonstrative.	Relative.
	I. <i>Of Place:</i>	
ūbī? <i>where?</i>	ībī, <i>there</i>	ūbī, <i>where</i>
quā? <i>which way?</i>	hāc, <i>this way</i>	quā, <i>which way</i>
undē? <i>whence?</i>	indē, <i>thence</i>	undē, <i>whence</i>
	hinc, <i>hence</i>	
	illinc, <i>thence</i>	
	istinc, <i>thence</i>	
quō? <i>whither?</i>	ēō, <i>thither</i>	quō, <i>whither</i>
	hūc, <i>hither</i>	
	illūc, <i>thither</i>	
	istūc, <i>thither</i>	
	II. <i>Of Time:</i>	
quandō? <i>when?</i>	tūm, <i>then</i>	cūm, <i>when</i>
	tunc, <i>at that time</i>	
quōtīens? <i>how often?</i>	tōtīens, <i>so often</i>	quōtīens, <i>as often as</i>
	III. <i>Of Manner:</i>	
quōmōdō? <i>how?</i>	ītā, sic, <i>so, thus</i>	ūt, utī, <i>as</i>
quā? <i>how much?</i>	tām, <i>so much</i>	quā, <i>as</i>

[185. 186.]

### Comparison of Adverbs.

**440.** Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. Their comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing **ūs** into **ē**.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
clārē, <i>brightly</i>	clārīūs, <i>more brightly</i>	clārissimē, <i>most brightly</i>
fācilē, <i>easily</i>	fācilīūs, <i>more easily</i>	fācillimē, <i>most easily</i>
dīlīgētēr, <i>carefully</i>	dīlīgētīūs, <i>more carefully</i>	dīlīgētissimē, <i>most carefully</i>
pātīentēr, <i>patiently</i>	pātīentīūs, <i>more patiently</i>	pātīentissimē, <i>most patiently</i>

**441.** The following are **Irregular**:

běně, <i>well</i>	měliūs, <i>better</i>	optímě, <i>best</i>
málně, <i>badly</i>	pějūs, <i>worse</i>	peššimě, <i>worst</i>
multūm, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrīmūm, <i>most</i>
nōn multūm, <i>little</i>	mīnūs, <i>less</i>	mīnimě, <i>least</i>
magnōpěřě, <i>greatly</i>	māgīs, <i>more</i>	maxímě, <i>most</i>
dīū, <i>for a long time</i>	dīūtīūs, <i>longer</i>	dīūtissimě, <i>very long</i>
saepě, <i>often</i>	saepīūs, <i>oftener</i>	saepissimě, <i>oftenest</i>
prōpě, <i>near</i>	prōpīūs, <i>nearer</i>	proxímě, <i>nearest</i>

**442.** The following are **Defective**:

—	dětěřiūs, <i>worse</i>	dětěrrimě, <i>worst</i>
—	ōciūs, <i>more quickly</i>	ōcissimě, <i>most quickly</i>
—	pōtīūs, <i>rather</i>	pōtissimūm, <i>most of all</i>
—	prīūs, <i>sooner</i>	prīmūm, prīmō, <i>first</i>
měřitō, <i>deservedly</i>	—	měřitissimō, <i>most deservedly</i>
nūpěř, <i>lately</i>	—	nūpěřrimě, <i>very lately</i>
sātīs, <i>enough</i>	sātīūs, <i>better</i>	—
sěcūs, <i>otherwise</i>	sěquīūs, <i>less</i>	—

[97. 98.]

PREPOSITIONS.

**443.** The Latin **Prepositions** are regularly used with some special case of a noun or pronoun, either the **Accusative** or **Ablative**.

**444.** The following are used with the **Accusative**:

ād, <i>to, at, toward</i>	ōb, <i>for, on account of</i>
adversūs, adversūm, <i>against,</i> <i>toward</i>	pěněs, <i>in the power of</i>
antě, <i>before</i>	pěř, <i>through, by, during</i>
āpūd, <i>at, with, near</i>	pōně, <i>behind</i>
circā, circūm, <i>around</i>	post, <i>after, behind</i>
circitěř, <i>about, near</i>	praetěř, <i>past, beside, except</i>
eīs, eītrā, <i>on this side of</i>	prōpě, <i>near</i>
contrā, <i>against, opposite to</i>	proptěř, <i>on account of, close by</i>
ergā, <i>toward, unto</i>	sěcundūm, <i>after, next to, accord-</i> <i>ing to, along</i>
extrā, <i>without, beyond</i>	sūprā, <i>above</i>
infrā, <i>under, beneath</i>	trans, <i>across, over, beyond</i>
intěř, <i>between, among</i>	ultrā, <i>beyond, on the further</i> <i>side of, past</i>
intrā, <i>within</i>	versūs, <i>toward</i>
juxtā, <i>near, beside</i>	[91. 92. 237. 238.]

**445.** The following are used with the **Ablative**:

ā	} <i>from, away from</i>	dē, <i>from, down from, of</i> = <i>about</i>
āb		ē, <i>ex, from, out of</i>
abs	} <i>without, but for</i>	prae, <i>for, before, in comparison with</i>
absquē, <i>without, but for</i>		prō, <i>for, instead of</i>
clām, <i>without the knowledge of</i>		sīnē, <i>without</i>
cōrām, <i>in presence of</i>		tēnūs, <i>as far as, up to</i>
cūm, <i>with</i>		

**446.** Prepositions with the **Accusative** and **Ablative**, but strictly with a difference of meaning:

**īn**, *into, in*; **sūb**, *under*; **subtēr**, *beneath*; **sūpēr**, *above*.

**īn** and **sūb**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion to*, when by the **Ablative** *rest in*, a place.

[93. 94. 95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**447.** Conjunctions connect words and sentences. According to their use, they are divided into **Co-ordinating** and **Subordinating** Conjunctions.

### Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

**448.** **Co-ordinating** Conjunctions are those that join together sentences of equal order or rank.

**449.**

### Copulative.

ēt	} <i>and</i>	ētīām	} <i>also</i>
-quē		quōquē	
atquē		nēc	} <i>and not</i>
āc		nēquē	
ēt. . . ēt, <i>both. . . and</i>		nēquē. . . nēquē	} <i>neither. . . nor</i>
cūm. . . tūm, <i>both. . . and especially</i>		nēc. . . nēc	
mōdō. . . mōdō	} <i>now. . . now</i>	nēquē. . . -quē, <i>on the one hand</i>	
nunc. . . nunc		not. . . and on the other	
tūm. . . tūm, <i>then. . . then</i>		ēt. . . nēquē, <i>on the one hand. . .</i>	
tām. . . quām, <i>both. . . and</i>		<i>and on the other hand not</i>	
nōn sōlūm. . . sēd ētīām	} <i>not only. . . but also</i>		
nōn mōdō. . . sēd ētīām			
nōn tantūm. . . sēd ētīām			



**450.**

aut }  
 vĕl } *or*  
 -vĕ }  
 sĭvĕ }

**Disjunctive.**

aut..aut }  
 vĕl..vĕl } *either..or*  
 sĭvĕ..sĭvĕ, *whether..or*

**451.**

autĕm }  
 sĕd } *but*  
 vĕrŭm }  
 vĕrŏ }  
 ět }  
 attĕmĕn, *but yet*

**Adversative.**

atquĭ, *but for all that*  
 tĕmĕn, *nevertheless*  
 cĕtĕrŭm, *for the rest*  
 ět vĕrŏ, *but in truth*  
 vĕrŭm ěnĭm vĕrŏ, *but in truth*  
 vĕrumtĕmĕn, *but yet*

**452.**

nĕm, *namquĕ, for*

**Causal.**

ěnĭm, ětĕnĭm, *for*

**453.**

ĭtĕquĕ }  
 ĭgĭtŭr } *therefore*  
 ergŏ }  
 ěŏ }  
 ĭdĕŏ } *on that account*  
 ĭdeircŏ }

**Illative.**

prŏindĕ, *accordingly*  
 proptĕrĕĕ, *therefore*  
 quĕrĕ }  
 quĕm ōb rĕm } *wherefore*  
 quĕproptĕr }  
 quŏcircĕ }

[99. 100. 189. 190. 295-300.]

**Subordinating Conjunctions.**

**454.** Subordinating Conjunctions are those which join a subordinate sentence to that on which it depends.

**455.**

postquĕm, *after that, after*  
 ŭt, *as*  
 ŭbĭ, *when*  
 sĭmŭlĕc } *as soon as*  
 sĭmŭlatquĕ }  
 ŭt prĭmŭm } *the first moment*  
 cŭm prĭmŭm } *that*

**Temporal.**

cŭm, *when*  
 dŭm } *while, until*  
 dŏnĕc }  
 quŏĕd, *up to*  
 quamdĭŭ, *as long as*  
 antĕquĕm } *before that, before*  
 prĭusquĕm }

[257. 258.]

**456.**

quĭā } *because*  
 quōd }  
 cūm, *as, since*

**Causal.**

quōnĭām }  
 quandō } *since, in as*  
 quandōquĭdēm } *much as*  
 sĭquĭdēm } [259. 260.]

**457.**

sĭ, *if*  
 nĭsĭ, *unless*  
 sĭ nōn, *if not*  
 dummōdō }  
 dŭm } *if only, provided*  
 mōdō }

**Conditional.**

sĭ mōdō, *if only*  
 sĭn, *if not, but if*  
 quodsĭ, *but if*  
 dummōdō nĕ }  
 dŭm nĕ } *provided only not*  
 mōdō nĕ } [261. 262.]

**458.**

etsĭ }  
 tāmetsĭ } *although*  
 ĕtĭamsĭ }  
 quamquām }

**Concessive.**

lĭcĕt }  
 quamvĭs } *though, suppose,*  
 cūm } *whereas*  
 ŭt }

**459.**

ŭt, *that, in order that*  
 nĕ, *that not, lest*  
 nĕvĕ (nĕŭ), *and (that) not*

**Final.**

quō (= ut ĕō), *in order that*  
 quōmĭnŭs, *that not*

**460.**

ŭt, *so that*

**Consecutive.**

ŭt nōn }  
 quĭn } *so that not*  
 [253 - 256.]

**461.**

ŭt }  
 sĭcŭt } *as, like as*  
 vĕlŭt }  
 quām }  
 ŭt. . itā }  
 quĕmadmōdŭm . . itā } *as . . so*

**Comparative.**

tanquām }  
 quāsĭ } *as if*  
 ŭt sĭ }  
 ĕc sĭ }  
 prōindĕ ĕc sĭ }

**462.**

-nĕ }  
 nŭm } *whether*  
 utrŭm }  
 ĕn }

**Interrogative.**

nonnĕ, *whether not*  
 annōn } *or not*  
 necnĕ }

## INTERJECTIONS.

**463.** An **Interjection** is not in the proper sense a part of speech, since it is not in grammatical construction with a sentence, but is *thrown in* as a direct intimation of feeling or of will.

**464.** The **Interjections** most commonly used are:

Of painful feeling or suffering:

hēi, hēu, *ah, alas!* ō, *oh!* vae, *alas, woe!*

Of surprise or astonishment:

ěccě, ěn, *behold!* hēm, *oho!* ō, *oh!*

Of calling attention:

hēus, *ho!* ō, *lo!* ōhē, *holloa!* prō, *hollo!*

## WORD-FORMATION.

**465.** There are two modes of forming words, viz.:

**Derivation**, or the formation of words by derivative endings (suffixes), and **Composition**, or the combination of two words expressing distinct ideas so as to form one word expressing one idea.

**466.** With reference to *derivation*, words are distinguished as **primitive** or **stem-words**, and **derivative**; with reference to *composition*, as **simple** and **compound**. The derived and compounded words greatly outnumber the so-called stem-words.

## DERIVATION.

**467.** All words which may be grouped into one family so as to associate their meaning are said to have a common ground-form or **Root**. Thus:

áčũō, -ěřě, *to whet*

áčũs, -ũs, *a needle*

áčũtũs, -ǎ, -ũm, *sharp*

áčěr, -rĩs, -rě, *sharp*

áčũměn, -ĩnĩs, *acuteness*

áčerbũs, -ǎ, -ũm, *sharp*

áčĩēs, -ěĩ, *an edge*

áčĩdũs, -ǎ, -ũm, *sour*

may all be retraced to the ROOT AC.

**468.** The **Stem** must be distinguished from the **Root**. The stem is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Inflections*, as: *áčü-ěřě, to whet, stem ácü.* . Again, the root is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Suffix*; thus the verb-stem *áčü* belongs to the root **AC**.

**469.** As a rule, **Derivatives** are formed by means of **Suffixes**, or significant endings which are added to the stem-word to define or modify its meaning.

## Derivation of Verbs.

**470. Primitive Verbs.** Most verbs of the Third Conjugation, the Irregular Verbs and a few vowel-stems, namely: *děřě, stěřě, fěřě, něřě, něřě, řěřě,* are to be regarded as **Primitives**.

### Verbs derived from Verbs.

**471. Frequentatives** end in *ārě* or *itārě*, and denote a *forcible or repeated action*; they are derived either from Supines in *sūm* or *tūm*, as:

<i>dicō, I say</i>	<i>dictūm</i>	<i>dictārě, to dictate</i>
<i>hāběō, I have</i>	<i>hābitūm</i>	<i>hābitārě, to have frequently</i>
<i>currō, I run</i>	<i>cursūm</i>	<i>cursārě, to run about</i>

or from the Present of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Conjugations, as:

<i>clāmō, I cry</i>	<i>clāmārě</i>	<i>clamitārě, to cry out aloud</i>
<i>lātěō, I am hid</i>	<i>lātěřě</i>	<i>lāitārě, to lie hid</i>
<i>āgō, I do</i>	<i>āgěřě</i>	<i>āgitārě, to drive</i>

**472. Inceptives (Inchoatives)** denote the *beginning* of an action. They are formed from vowel-stems (1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations) by adding *sc*, and from consonant-stems (3d Conjugation) by adding *isc*. The great majority of Inchoatives in *ascō* and *escō* come from Substantives and Adjectives, as:

<i>pűěřascō, -ěřě, from pűěř, to attain the age of boyhood</i>
<i>silvescō, -ěřě, from silvě, to grow wild</i>
<i>mītescō, -ěřě, from mītis, to become mild</i>

**473. Desideratives** denote *desire* or *tendency*. They are formed by changing *ūrūs* of the Future Participle into *ūrīō*, and are of the 4th Conjugation. Only a few are in common use:

<i>ěsūrīō, -īřě, to be hungry, from ědō, ěsūrūs</i>
<i>mōřitūrīō, -īřě, to wish to die, from mōřīř, mōřitūrūs.</i>

**474.** Diminutives denoting a feeble or petty action end in *illārē*, and are of the First Conjugation, as:

*cantillārē*, to chirp    *scribillārē*, to scribble.

**Verbs derived from Substantives and Adjectives.**

**475.** Verbs from *Substantives* and *Adjectives* are commonly called **Denominatives**. They belong to the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations. Verbs from *Substantives* signify either to supply with that which the *Substantive* denotes, or to use or apply it. Verbs from *Adjectives* usually signify, either as intransitives, to be in or to pass into the condition denoted by the *Adjective*, or else, as transitives, to reduce something to that state; for examples see below.

**476.** Active Verbs of the First Conjugation (transitive):

signūm – signārē, to mark	vulnūs – vulnerārē, to wound
curvūs – curvārē, to bend	nūdūs – nūdārē, to strip
mācūlā – mācūlārē, to spot	sānūs – sārārē, to heal
nōmen – nōminārē, to name	aptūs – aptārē, to fit
vox – vōcārē, to call	libēr – libērārē, to free

**477.** Active Verbs of the Second Conjugation (intransitive):

flōs – flōrērē, to bloom	albūs – albērē, to be white
frōns – frōndērē, to be in leaf	calvūs – calvērē, to be bald
lux – lūcērē, to shine	flāvūs – flāvērē, to be yellow

**478.** Active Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation (either intransitive or transitive):

finīs – finīrē, to finish	mollīs – mollīrē, to soften
poenā – pūnīrē, to punish	stābilīs – stābilīrē, to establish
vestīs – vestīrē, to clothe	lēnīs – lēnīrē, to assuage
sītīs – sītīrē, to be thirsty	saevūs – saevīrē, to rage
tussīs – tussīrē, to cough	sūperbūs – sūperbīrē, to be proud
servūs – servīrē, to serve	fērōx – fērōcīrē, to be furious

**479.** Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation, signifying condition, employment:

dōmīnūs – dōmīnārī, to be master	auceps – aucūpārī, to catch birds
fāmūlūs – fāmūlārī, to serve	convīvā – convīvārī, to banquet
aemūlūs – aemūlārī, to emulate	cōmēs – cōmītārī, to accompany
fūr – fūrārī, to steal	āquā – āquārī, to fetch water

## Derivation of Substantives.

### Substantives derived from Substantives.

**480.** Diminutives generally end in:

**ülüs, ũlä, ũlüm; cülüs, cülä, cülüm,**

and regularly take the gender-ending of their Primitives:

nīdūs, <i>a nest</i>	nīdülüs, <i>a little nest</i>
rīvūs, <i>a brook</i>	rīvülüs, <i>a streamlet</i>
mensä, <i>a table</i>	mensülä, <i>a little table</i>
saxüm, <i>a rock</i>	saxülüm, <i>a little rock</i>
frätër, <i>a brother</i>	frätercülüs, <i>a little brother</i>
passër, <i>a sparrow</i>	passercülüs, <i>a little sparrow</i>
arbör, <i>a tree</i>	arbusecülä, <i>a small tree</i>
münüs, <i>a gift</i>	münuscülüm, <i>a little gift</i>

**481.** After a vowel, **ölüs, ölä, ölüm** are used. Some nouns form Diminutives in **ellüs, ellä, ellüm**; rarely **illüs, illä, illüm**.

filīūs, <i>a son</i>	filīölüs, <i>a little son</i>
glädīūs, <i>a sword</i>	glädīölüs, <i>a small sword</i>
filīä, <i>a daughter</i>	filīölä, <i>a little daughter</i>
ättriüm, <i>a hall</i>	ättriölüm, <i>a small hall</i>
libër, <i>a book</i>	libellüs, <i>a little book</i>
täbülä, <i>a table</i>	täbellä, <i>a tablet</i>
läpīs, <i>a stone</i>	läpillüs, <i>a little stone</i>
signüm, <i>a mark</i>	sīgillüm, <i>a seal</i>

**482.** The Suffix **ärīüm** designates the place where any thing is kept, as:

cölobärīüm, <i>dove-cot</i>	from cölobä
herbärīüm, <i>herbarium</i>	“ herbä
gränärīüm, <i>a granary</i>	“ gränüm
pömärīüm, <i>an orchard</i>	“ pömüm
sēmīnärīüm, <i>a seed-plot</i>	“ sēmēn

**483.** The Suffix **ētüm** used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they grow in abundance:

früticētüm, <i>a copse</i>	from frütex
myrtētüm, <i>a myrtle grove</i>	“ myrtüs
quercētüm, <i>a forest of oaks</i>	“ quercüs
vīnētüm, <i>a vineyard</i>	“ vīnüm

**484.** The Suffix **ilē** annexed to names of animals designates their *stall* or *fold*:

bōvilē, <i>stall for cattle</i>	from bōs
ēquilē, <i>a stable for horses</i>	“ ēquūs
ōvilē, <i>a sheepfold</i>	“ ōvis
cāprilē, <i>a stall for goats</i>	“ cāpēr

**485.** The Suffix **inā** indicates especially the *state, condition, or occupation* of a person; sometimes also the *place* where an occupation is carried on:

mēdicinā, <i>the medical art</i>	from mēdicūs
sūtrīnā, <i>a shoemaker's shop</i>	“ sūtōr
tonstrīnā, <i>a barber's shop</i>	“ tonsōr

**486.** The Suffix **iūm** added to names of persons forms Abstracts signifying *character, rank, &c.*, and Collectives, as:

servitīūm, <i>servitude</i>	from servūs
sācerdōtīūm, <i>priesthood</i>	“ sācerdōs
mīnistērīūm, <i>ministry</i>	“ mīnistēr
exsiliūm, <i>banishment</i>	“ exsūl

**487.** Patronymics, denoting *parentage*, generally end in:  
**idēs, idēs, iādēs, ādēs** (Masculine); **is, ēis, iās** (Feminine):

Prīāmīdēs, <i>son of Priam</i>	from Prīāmūs
Ātrīdēs, <i>son of Atreus</i>	“ Ātreus
Thestīādēs, <i>son of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs
Aenēādēs, <i>son of Aeneas</i>	“ Aenēās
Tantālīs, <i>daughter of Tantalus</i>	“ Tantālūs
Nērēis, <i>daughter of Nereus</i>	“ Nērēus
Thestīās, <i>daughter of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs

#### Substantives derived from Adjectives.

**488.** From Adjectives are formed various Abstract Nouns with the Suffixes:

**iā, (ī)tiā, itīēs, (ī)tās, (ī)tūdō, mōnīā.**

grātīā, <i>favor</i>	from grātūs
mālitīā, <i>badness</i>	“ mālūs
segnitīā, <i>segnitīēs, sloth</i>	“ segnīs
cēlērītās, <i>swiftness</i>	“ cēlēr
libertās, <i>liberty</i>	“ libēr
sōlitūdō, <i>solitude</i>	“ sōlūs
ācrīmōnīā, <i>sharpness</i>	“ ācēr

**Substantives derived from Verbs.**

**489.** Derivatives in **ör**, **üm** and **ělā** from verb-stems signify, in general, the *act or state expressed by the verb*:

āmör, <i>love</i>	from	āmārē
tīmör, <i>fear</i>	“	tīmērē
fūrör, <i>rage</i>	“	fūrērē
gaudiüm, <i>joy</i>	“	gaudērē
ödium, <i>hatred</i>	“	ödissē
quērēlā, <i>a complaint</i>	“	quēri
cautelā, <i>a caution</i>	“	cāvērē
tütēlā, <i>protection</i>	“	tütārī

**490.** Derivatives in **tör** and **sör** from Supines denote the *personal agent*:

mönitör, <i>a monitor</i>	from	möněō, -itüm
lectör, <i>a reader</i>	“	lěgō, lectüm
auditör, <i>a hearer</i>	“	audīō, -itüm
messör, <i>a reaper</i>	“	mětō, messüm
cursör, <i>a runner</i>	“	currō, cursüm

**491.** A few Derivatives in **tör** are formed in imitation of these, from Substantives, as:

vīätör, *a traveler*, from vīā; jānitör, *a doorkeeper*, from jānūā.

**492.** The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*, but is less common than the masculine:

adjütör, adjütrix, <i>an assistant</i>	from	adjüvārē
fautör, fautrix, <i>a promoter</i>	“	fävērē
praeceptör, praeceprix, <i>a teacher</i>	“	praecipērē
victör, vicrix, <i>a conqueror</i>	“	vincērē

**493.** The Suffixes **tīō**, **tūs** and **sūs** (gen. **ūs**), **tūrā** and **sūrā** form *abstract nouns* from Supines and denote the *act itself*:

actiō, <i>an action</i>	from	ägō - actüm
inventiō, <i>an invention</i>	“	invěniō - inventüm
mōtūs, <i>a motion</i>	“	mōvěō - mōtüm
cursūs, <i>a running</i>	“	currō - cursüm
consensūs, consensīō, <i>agreement</i>	“	consentīō - consensüm
armātūrā, <i>equipment</i>	“	armō - armātüm
conjectūrā, <i>a conjecture</i>	“	conjīciō - conjectüm
pictūrā, <i>a painting</i>	“	pingō - pictüm
censūrā, <i>a judging</i>	“	censěō - censüm



Of these only a few become *Concrete nouns*:

accūsātīō, <i>a bill of indictment</i>	from	accūsō – accūsātūm
commentātīō, <i>a treatise</i>	“	commentōr, – ātūm
ōrātīō, <i>a speech</i>	“	ōrō – ōrātūm
possessīōnēs, <i>an estate</i>	“	possidēō – possessūm
vēnātīō, <i>game</i>	“	vēnōr – vēnātūm

**494.** Derivatives in **měn**, **mentūm**, **ūlūm**, **būlūm**, **cūlūm** denote an *instrument* for performing the act expressed by the verb or a *place* for its performance:

lěvāměn, <i>alleviation</i>	from	lěvārě
agměn, <i>a train</i>	“	āgērě
flūměn, <i>a river</i>	“	flūērě
vōlūměn, <i>a roll</i>	“	volvērě
ālimentūm, <i>nourishment</i>	“	ālērě
jācūlūm, <i>a javelin</i>	“	jācūlārī
pābūlūm, <i>fodder</i>	“	pascērě
vēnābūlūm, <i>a hunting spear</i>	“	vēnārī
stābūlūm, <i>a stable</i>	“	stārě
cūbīcūlūm, <i>a bedroom</i>	“	cūbārě

**495.** Derivatives in **crūm** and **trūm** denote *instrument* or *locality*:

fulcrūm, <i>a prop</i>	from	fulcīrě
sēpulerūm, <i>a grave</i>	“	sēpělīrě
ārātrūm, <i>a plow</i>	“	ārārě
claustrūm, <i>a bar</i>	“	claudērě
rostrūm, <i>a beak</i>	“	rōdērě
lāvācrūm, <i>a bath</i>	“	lāvārě

## Derivation of Adjectives.

### Adjectives derived from Verbs.

**496.** The Suffixes **bundūs** and **cundūs** have the general meaning of the *Present Participle*; in many the meaning is somewhat strengthened.

mīrābundūs, <i>wondering</i>	from	mīrārī
vērēcundūs, <i>bashful</i>	“	vērērī
vēnērābundūs, <i>revering</i>	“	vēnērārī
fūrībundūs, <i>raging</i>	“	fūrērě
jūcundūs, <i>pleasing</i>	“	jūvārě
vāgābundūs, <i>vagrant</i>	“	vāgārī

**497.** The Suffix **idūs** denotes the *quality* or *state* expressed by the verb:

turbidūs, <i>troubled</i>	from turbārē	vālidūs, <i>strong</i>	from vālērē
cālidūs, <i>warm</i>	“ cālērē	rāpidūs, <i>rapid</i>	“ rāpērē

**498.** The Suffixes **ilīs** and **bilīs** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense:

dōcīlīs, <i>docile</i>	from dōcērē	āmābilīs, <i>amiable</i>	from āmārē
fācīlīs, <i>easy to do</i>	“ fācērē	mōbilīs, <i>moveable</i>	“ mōvērē

**499.** The Suffixes **ax** and **ūlūs** denote *inclination*, generally a faulty one:

audax, <i>daring</i>	from audērē	crēdūlūs, <i>credulous</i>	from crēdērē
fallax, <i>fallacious</i>	“ fallērē	garrūlūs, <i>chattering</i>	“ garrērē

### Adjectives derived from Substantives.

#### FROM COMMON NOUNS.

**500.** The Suffix **ēūs** expresses the material of which any thing is made:

aurēūs, <i>golden</i>	from aurūm	ferrēūs, <i>iron</i>	from ferrūm
argentēūs, <i>silver</i>	“ argentūm	lignēūs, <i>wooden</i>	“ ligūm

**501.** The Suffixes: **iūs**, **icūs**, **icīūs**, **ilīs**, **ālīs**, **ārīs**, **nūs**, **ivūs**, **ensīs**, **ārīūs** denote *belonging to*:

ōrātōrīūs, <i>of an orator</i>	from ōrātōr
bellīcūs, <i>warlike</i>	“ bellūm
lātērīcīūs, <i>of brick</i>	“ lātēr
vīrīlīs, <i>manly</i>	“ vīr
nāvālīs, <i>naval</i>	“ nāvīs
mīlītārīs, <i>military</i>	“ mīlēs
pāternūs, <i>paternal</i>	“ pātēr
aestīvūs, <i>belonging to summer</i>	“ aestās
fōrensīs, <i>belonging to the forum</i>	“ fōrūm
grēgārīūs, <i>belonging to a flock</i>	“ grex

**502.** The Suffixes **ōsūs** and **entūs** denote *fulness*:

pēricūlōsūs, <i>full of danger</i>	from pēricūlūm
fructūōsūs, <i>abounding in fruit</i>	“ fructūs
turbūlentūs, <i>full of trouble</i>	“ turbā
somnūlentūs, <i>sleepy</i>	“ somnūs

**503.** The Suffixes **ātūs**, **itūs**, **ūtūs** denote *provided with*:

ālātūs, <i>winged</i>	from ālā	barbātūs, <i>bearded</i>	from barbā
pellītūs, <i>clad in skins</i>	“ pellīs	cornūtūs, <i>horned</i>	“ cornū

**504.** The Suffixes **ānūs** and **īnūs** denote *belonging to or coming from*:

urbānūs, <i>belonging to the city</i>	from urbs
montānūs, <i>belonging to the mountain</i>	“ mons
āsīnīnūs, <i>produced by the ass</i>	“ āsīnūs
ēquīnūs, <i>belonging to horses</i>	“ ēquūs

FROM PROPER NAMES:

**505.** Adjectives with the Suffixes **īānūs**, and more rarely **ānūs** and **īnūs** are formed from names of persons:

Caesārīānūs, <i>belonging to Caesar</i>	from Caesār
Sullānī, <i>Sulla's veterans</i>	“ Sullā
Verrīnūs, <i>belonging to Verres</i>	“ Verrēs

**506.** The Suffixes **ēūs** and **īcūs** are used with *Greek names*:

Pŷthāgōrēūs, <i>Pythagorean</i>	from Pŷthāgōrās
Sōcrātīcūs, <i>Socratic</i>	“ Sōcrātēs

**507.** Patrial or Gentile Adjectives (derived from the names of places or peoples) generally end in **ānūs**, **īnūs**, **ensīs**, **ās** (Gen. **ātīs**), and are also used substantively:

Rōmānūs, <i>a Roman</i>	from Rōmā
Āmērīnūs, <i>of America</i>	“ Āmērīā
Cannensīs, <i>of Cannae</i>	“ Cannae
Arpīnās (-ātīs), <i>of Arpinum</i>	“ Arpīnūm

**508.** Greek names of places form Patrials in **īūs** and **aeūs**; as:

Cōrinthīūs, *of Corinth*, from Cōrinthūs; Smyrnaeūs, *of Smyrna*, from Smyrnā.

**509.** From many names of *peoples*, Adjectives are formed in **īcūs** and sometimes **īūs**:

Gallīcūs, <i>Gallic</i>	from Gallūs	Thracīūs, <i>Thracian</i>	from Thrāx
Persīcūs, <i>Persian</i>	“ Persā	Sŷrīūs, <i>Syrian</i>	“ Sŷrīā

Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

**510.** From Adjectives are formed Diminutives in **ūlūs**, **ōlūs**, **ellūs** and **cūlūs** in the same manner as from nouns. **cūlūs** is sometimes added to Comparatives:

parvūlūs, <i>very small</i>	from parvūs
aurēōlūs, <i>gilded</i>	“ aurētūs
pulchellūs, <i>beautiful little</i>	“ pulchēr
paupercūlūs, <i>poorly</i>	“ paupēr
mājuscūlūs, <i>somewhat larger</i>	“ mājōr

**Adjectives derived from Adverbs.**

**511.** A few Adjectives are formed from *Adverbs*:

crastīnūs, <i>of to-morrow</i>	from crās
dīūtīnūs, <i>lasting</i>	“ dīū
pristīnūs, <i>former</i>	“ prīūs
mātūtīnūs, <i>belonging to the morning</i>	“ mānē
rēpentīnūs, <i>sudden</i>	“ rēpentē
hesternūs, <i>of yesterday</i>	“ hērī
hōdīernūs, <i>of to-day</i>	“ hōdīē
dīurnūs, <i>daily</i>	“ dīū
nocturnūs, <i>belonging to night</i>	“ noctū

COMPOSITION.

**512.** Every **Compound** may be regarded as consisting of two parts. The second part of the composition expresses the *principal idea* (**Principal term**) and the first a **Modification** thereof. The principal term may be a Verb, an Adjective, or a Substantive.

Compound Verbs.

**513.** The *second part* of a compound verb is *always a Verb*; also the *first part* may be a *Verb*, but this only takes place when the second part is *fāciō* or *fīō*:

assuēfācērē, <i>to accustom</i>	from assuescērē & fācērē
cālēfācērē, <i>to warm</i>	“ cālērē “ “
commōnēfācērē, <i>to remind</i>	“ commōnērē “ “
pātēfācērē, <i>to open</i>	“ pātērē “ “

**514.** The *first part* of a compound verb may be a **Noun**, as:

ānimadvertērē, <i>to notice</i>	from ānimūs & vertērē
mānūmittērē, <i>to set free</i>	“ mānūs “ mittērē
ūsūcāpērē, <i>to acquire by use</i>	“ ūsūs “ cāpērē

**515.** The *first part* of a compound verb may be an **Adverb**:

bēnēfācērē, <i>to do good</i>	from bēnē & fācērē
mālēdicērē, <i>to curse</i>	“ mālē “ dicērē
bēnēdicērē, <i>to bless</i>	“ bēnē “ “
sātīsfācērē, <i>to satisfy</i>	“ sātīs “ fācērē
sātāgērē, <i>to have one's hands full</i>	“ sātīs “ āgērē

**516.** The *majority* of Compound Verbs are made with separable or inseparable **Prepositions** having the value of an adverb, as:

ā, āb	<i>away</i>	āvōlārē, to fly away
ād	<i>to, towards</i>	adjicērē, to throw to
antē	<i>before</i>	antēpōnērē, to set before
circūm	<i>around</i>	circumdārē, to surround
cōm, cōn	<i>together</i>	colligērē, to bring together
dē	<i>down</i>	dēcēdērē, to go down
ē, ex	<i>out</i>	expōnērē, to set out
īn	<i>in, into</i>	īnirē, to go into
intēr	<i>between</i>	intērēssē, to be between
ōb	<i>toward, against</i>	obstārē, to stand opposed
pēr	<i>through</i>	perlēgērē, to read through
post	<i>after, inferior</i>	postpōnērē, to put below
prae	<i>before</i>	praevidērē, to foresee
praetēr	<i>past, beyond</i>	praetērīrē, to pass by
prō	<i>before</i>	prōpōnērē, to place before
sūb	<i>under</i>	sūbirē, to come under
subtēr	<i>underneath, secretly</i>	subtērfūgērē, to flee secretly
amb	<i>around</i>	ambirē, to go around
dīs	<i>asunder, apart</i>	discēdērē, to depart
rē	<i>back, again</i>	rēficērē, to make again
sē	<i>apart</i>	sēcernērē, to separate

**517.** In composition with **Prepositions**, the vowels **ā** and **ē** of the simple verb are changed into **ī**, and the diphthong **ae** into **ī**; **au** generally becomes **ō** or **ū**; before two consonants **ā** becomes **ē**, but **e** is retained:

fācērē, to make	confīcērē, to accomplish
ēmērē, to buy	rēdīmērē, to redeem
quaerērē, to seek	conquīrērē, to search out
plaudērē, to clap	explōdērē, to hiss off
claudērē, to shut	conclūdērē, to close up
fācērē, to make	confectūs, accomplished
pellērē, to drive	compellērē, to force

For *Irregularities* compare the **Index of Verbs** (pag. 277) with reference from each to the paragraph where its conjugation is described.

**518.** **Prepositions** in Composition often undergo a change of their final consonant which is called **Assimilation**. The Rules of this assimilation may be seen in the following:

**519.** **ā, āb, abs.**

**a** before **m** and **v**, and in **āfūi**: **āmīttērē**, **āvellērē**, **āfūi**, **āfūērām**;

**ab** before vowels and **j, h, b, d, l, n, r, s**:

**ābīrē**, **ābundārē**, **abbrēviārē**, **abnūērē**, **ābhorērē**, **abjūrārē**;

**as** before **p**: **asportārē**, **aspermārī**;

**au** before **f**: **aufūgērē**, **auferrē**;

**abs** before **c, t**: **abscedērē**, **abstīnērē**, **abstrāhērē**.

**520.** **ād.**

**ad** before vowels, **j, h, b, d, f, m, n, q, v**:

**ādāmārē**, **adferrē**, **adquirērē**, **advōlārē**, **adjūvārē**, **adnuntīārē**;

**ac** before **c** (not so good before **q**): **accīrē**, **adquirērē** (**acquirērē**);

**ag** & **ad** before **g**: **aggērērē** & **adgērērē**, **aggrēdī** & **adgrēdī**;

**a** & **ad** before **gn, sp, sc, st**:

**agnoscērē**, **adgnoscērē**; **aspīcērē**, **adspīcērē**; **āspīrārē**;

**ad** & **al** before **l**: **adlėvārē**, **allėvārē**; **adlōquī**, **allōquī**;

**ap** before **p**: **appārērē**, **appellārē**, **appōnērē**, **applicārē**;

**ad** & **ar** before **r**: **adrīpērē** & **arrīpērē**; **adrīdērē** & **arrīdērē**;

**ad** & **as** before **s**: **adsignārē** & **assignārē**; **adsērērē** & **assērērē**;

**at** before **t**: **attendērē**, **attribūērē**, **attingērē**, **attrāhērē**.

**521.** **antē** becomes **anti** in: **antistārē**, **antīcipārē**.

**522.** **circūm** may drop its final **m** before **ēō, irē**:

**circūmēō**, **circūēō**, commonly **circūītūs**, **circūītīō**.

**523.** **com (= cūm).**

**com** before **b, p, m**: **combībērē**, **compārārē**, **committērē**;

**con** before **c, d, f, g, j, n, q, s, t, v**:

**conclūdērē**, **condērē**, **congrēdī**, **conjungērē**, **contīnērē**;

**con** & **col** before **l**: **conlābī** & **collābī**; **conlōcārē** & **collōcārē**;

**cor** before **r**: **corrīgērē**, **corrīpērē**, **corrōdērē**, **corrumpērē**;

**co** before vowels and **h** (except **cōmēdō**):

**cōīrē**, **cōhaerērē**, **cōgērē** (= **cōāgērē**), **cōēmērē**;

**co** before **gn**, and in a few words before **n**:

**cognoscō**, **cōnectō**, **cōnīvēō**, **cōnītōr**, **cōnūbīūm**.

**524.** **ē, ex.**

**ex** before vowels and **h, c, p, q, s, t**:

**exīrē**, **excīpērē**, **exhībērē**, **existērē**; *Exception* **ēpōtārē**;

**e** before **b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v**:

**ēlīgērē**, **ējīcērē**, **ēvādērē**, **ērumpērē**, **ēbībērē**, **ēdicērē**;

**ef** before **f**: **efferrē**, **effīcērē**, **effūgērē**, **effīdērē**;

525.

**in.**

**in** before vowels and **h, c, d, f, g** (but not before **gn**), **j, n, q, s, t, v**:

**in**irě, **in**hiběrě, **in**gěrěrě, **in**quirěrě, **in**ficerě, **in**věhěre;

**in**, sometimes **il** before **l**; **in** & **ir** before **r**:

**in**liděrě & **ill**iděrě; **in**rumpěrě & **ir**rumpěrě, **ir**rūrěrě;

**im** before **m, b, p**: **im**mittěrě, **im**bűěrě, **im**pōněrě, **im**pěrārě;

**i** before **gn**: **ign**ōrārě, **ign**oscěrě.

526.

**ob.**

**ob** before vowels, **j, h, b, d, l, m, n, r, s, t, v**:

**ob**oedirě, **ob**jicěrě, **ob**liviſci, **ob**rěpěrě, **ob**stāre, **ob**tingěrě;

**oc** before **c**; **of** before **f**; **og** before **g**; **op** before **p**:

**oc**currěrě, **of**ferrě, **og**gěrěrě, **op**pōněrě, **op**priměrě;

**b** is dropped in **ō**mittěrě, **ō**pěrirě, **ost**enděrě (= **obs**-tendere).

527.

**pěr.**

**per** unchanged, except before **l**, as:

**pell**gěrě = **perl**gěrě; **pell**icěrě = **perl**icěrě.

In derivatives of **jūrārě**, the **r** is dropped, as: **pěj**ěrārě = **perjūrārě**.

528.

**sűb.**

**sub** before vowels, **h, j, b, d, l, n, s, t, v**:

**sűb**igěrě, **sub**jungěrě, **sub**trāhěrě, **sub**vertěrě, **sub**hastārě;

**suc** before **c**; **suf** before **f**; **sug** before **g**:

**suc**cēděrě, **suc**cumběrě, **suff**ōcārě, **suff**icěrě, **sugg**ěrěrě;

**sum** & **sub** before **m**; **sup** before **p**; **sur** & **sub** before **r**:

**sum**mittěrě & **sub**mittěrě; **sup**poněrě; **surr**ipěrě & **sub**ripěrě;

**sus** (= **subs**) occurs in:

**sus**cipěrě, **sus**citārě, **sus**penděrě, **sus**tiněrě, **sus**tentārě, **sus**tűli;

**su** before **sp**: **sus**picerě, **sus**pīrārě, **sus**pectārě.

529.

**trans.**

**trans** before vowels and **b, c, f, g, p, r, t, v**:

**trans**āgěrě, **trans**fűgěrě, **trans**pōněrě, **trans**grēdi, **trans**věhěrě;

**tran** before **s**, and always before **sc**:

**trans**īlirě, **trans**criběrě, **trans**cenděrě, **trans**ērěrě, **trans**űěrě;

**trans** and often **tra** before **j, d, l, m, n**:

**tr**āděrě, **tr**ājicěrě, **trans**mittěrě & **tr**āmittěrě, **tr**ādűcěrě;

## Compound Substantives.

**530.** Compound Substantives are made up:

1. Of a *substantive* and a following *verbal stem*; the vowel connecting the two parts is *ī*, as:

agrīcōlā, <i>a farmer</i>	from	āgēr & cōlērē
armīgēr, <i>an armor-bearer</i>	“	armā “ gērērē
artīfex, <i>an artist</i>	“	ars “ fācērē
parrīcīdā, <i>a parricide</i>	“	pātēr “ caedērē

2. Of *two substantives* or a *substantive* and an *adjective*:

solstītiūm, <i>solstice</i>	from	sōl & stātīō
rūpīcāprā, <i>a wild goat</i>	“	rūpēs “ cāprā
lēgislātōr, <i>a law-giver</i>	“	lex “ lātōr
jūsūrāndūm, <i>an oath</i>	“	jūs “ jūrāndūm
aequīnoctīūm, <i>equinox</i>	“	aequūs “ nox

3. Of a *substantive* and a *preceding particle*, as:

incūrīā, <i>want of care</i>	from	īn & cūrā
prōverbīūm, <i>a proverb</i>	“	prō “ verbūm
sūpēficiēs, <i>a surface</i>	“	sūpēr “ fāciēs
nēmō, <i>no one</i>	“	nē “ hōmō

## Compound Adjectives.

**531.** Compound Adjectives are made up:

1. Of *two nouns* (including under this term adjective and substantive), as:

ignīcōlōr, <i>fire-colored</i>	from	ignīs & cōlōr
mīsērīcōr, <i>tender-hearted</i>	“	mīsēr “ cōr
magnānīmūs, <i>great-hearted</i>	“	magnūs “ ānīmūs
ālīpēs, <i>wing-footed</i>	“	ālā “ pēs

2. Of a *preposition* with a *substantive*. In this combination the prepositions **ā**, **dē**, **ex**, **īn**, **sē** have negative power:

concor, <i>harmonious</i>	from	con & cōr
āmēns } <i>senseless</i>	“	ā “ mēns
dēmēns }	“	dē “ mēns
īners, <i>unskilled</i>	“	īn “ ars
sēcūrūs, <i>free from care</i>	“	sē “ cūrā

3. Of a *preposition* with an *adjective*. The prepositions used in this way are: **pēr**, **prae**, *very*; **sūb**, *somewhat*; **īn**, *not*:

perdiffīcīlis, <i>very difficult</i>	from	pēr & diffīcīlis
praepōtēns, <i>very powerful</i>	“	prae “ pōtēns
subrustīcūs, <i>somewhat clownish</i>	“	sūb “ rustīcūs
īndīgnūs, <i>unworthy</i>	“	īn “ dīgnūs



## PART THIRD.

### SYNTAX.

#### THE SENTENCE.

**532.** Syntax treats of the *Agreement, Government,* and *Disposition* of words in sentences. Sentences are of three kinds:

**Assertions, or Statements,** as: *consuetudo est altera natura; custom is second nature.*

**Questions,** as: *quid est levius pluma? what is lighter than a feather?*

**Commands (demands, wishes),** as: *divide et impere; divide and rule.*

**533.** The **Assertive Sentence**, as it is called, is the *main type* of all sentences, and the other two will be treated as variations of it.

#### Subject and Predicate.

**534.** Every simple sentence is composed of two parts: **Subject and Predicate.**

The **Subject** signifies that about which the assertion is made; the **Predicate** signifies that which is asserted of the Subject. In the sentence:

aurum splendet      *gold glitters*  
aurum is the subject; splendet the predicate.

**535.** The **Subject** of the sentence is in the **Nominative Case**, or so considered.

The **Subject** must be either a Noun, or some word or phrase standing for a noun, but it may be contained in the termination of the verb itself:

arbor floret	<i>the tree is blossoming</i>
hic laetatur, ille maeret	<i>this one rejoices, that one is sad</i>
errare humanum est	<i>to err is human</i>
veni, vidi, vici	<i>I came, I saw, I conquered.</i>

**536.** The **Predicate** must be either a Verb (**Verbal Predicate**), or an Adjective or what stands for an adjective with the verb *essē* (**Adjective Predicate**), or a Substantive with the verb *essē* (**Substantive Predicate**).

The **Verbal Predicate** agrees in **Person** and **Number** with its subject.

The **Adjective Predicate** (Adjective, Adjective Pronoun, Participle) agrees in **Gender**, **Number**, and **Case** with its subject.

The **Substantive Predicate** agrees in **Case** with its subject.

ego valēo, si vos valētis	<i>I am well if you are well</i>
arbor est procēra	<i>the tree is tall</i>
usus est tyrannus	<i>custom is a tyrant.</i>

**537.** When the predicate is a substantive with different terminations for the gender, such as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgistēr	māgistrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rēgīnā	<i>a king, queen</i>

it agrees with its subject also in number and gender.

usus est optimus magister	<i>experience is the best teacher</i>
vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est	<i>a country life is the teacher of frugality.</i>

**538.** When referring to a subject of the neuter gender, a predicate substantive with different terminations for the gender is always in the masculine gender.

tempus est vitae magister	<i>time is the teacher of life.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------------

**539.** When the predicate substantive is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the subject.

bona conscientia est tutissima	<i>a good conscience is the safest</i>
comes hominum	<i>companion of men.</i>

**540.** Like *essē, to be*, several other verbs take **two Nominatives**, one of the **Subject** and the other of the **Predicate**. These are:

<i>fīērī, to become, be made</i>	<i>crēārī, to be created</i>
<i>ēvadērē, to turn out</i>	<i>cōrōnārī, to be crowned</i>
<i>existērē, to become</i>	<i>dīcī, to be said, called</i>
<i>mānērē, to remain</i>	<i>vōcārī</i>
<i>vidērī, to seem</i>	<i>appellārī</i> } <i>to be called</i>
<i>appārērē, to appear</i>	<i>pūtārī</i> } <i>to be thought, considered</i>
<i>nascī, to be born</i>	<i>hābērī</i> }
<i>mōrī, to die</i>	<i>crēdī, to be believed</i>
<i>jūdicārī, to be considered</i>	<i>existimārī, to be regarded</i>
<i>rosa pulcherrīmus flos habētur</i>	<i>the rose is considered the most beautiful flower.</i>

**541.** The **Predicate** of **two or more Subjects** is put in the **Plural Number**.

*Romūlus et Remus urbem Romam condidērunt*      *Romulus and Remus founded the city of Rome.*

**542.** Two or more singular nouns taken conjointly as a single idea may have a singular verb. Sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest.

*ratio et oratio societātis humanae vincūlum est*      *reason and speech are the bond of human society*  
*naves et praesidiū excessit*      *the fleet and garrison departed.*

**543.** A collective noun may take a plural verb, as: *pars urbes petiērunt finitīmas, a part made for the neighboring towns.*

**544.** In regard to the **Gender** of an **Adjective Predicate** referring to **two or more Subjects** mark the following:

When the subjects are of the same gender, the adjective predicate is of that gender; as:

*mater et soror mortūae sunt*      *mother and sister are dead.*

When the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes the masculine gender if the subjects are things **with life**, and the neuter if they are things **without life**; as:

*pater et mater mortūi sunt*      *father and mother are dead*  
*divitīae et honōres incerta sunt*      *riches and honors are uncertain.*

When things with life and things without life are combined, the predicate adjective takes either the gender of the things with life, or is neuter, as:

rex regīaque classis profecti	<i>the king and the king's fleet</i>
sunt	<i>set out</i>
nātūra inimīca sunt libēra civitas	<i>a free state and a king are</i>
et rex	<i>natural enemies.</i>

**545.** When the Subjects are of **Different Persons**, the verb will be in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third.

In Latin the speaker generally mentions himself first.

ego et tu vicissitudīnem fortūnae	<i>you and I have experienced the</i>
expertī sumus	<i>vicissitude of fortune.</i>

[201. 202.]

### Attribute and Apposition.

**546.** The most usual **Attribute** of a Substantive is an **Adjective** (including under this term the Adjective Pronouns and Participles); it agrees with its Substantive in **Number, Gender, and Case.**

	Gender.	Number.
<i>a white flower</i>	flōs albūs	flōrēs albī
<i>a dark cloud</i>	nūbēs ōpācā	nūbēs ōpācae
<i>a golden vessel</i>	vās aurēūm	vāsā aurēā

	Case.	
Gen. flōrīs albī		<i>of a white flower</i>
“ nūbīs ōpācae		<i>of a dark cloud</i>
“ vāsīs aurēī		<i>of a golden vessel</i>

**547.** The **Common Attribute** of two or more Substantives of different gender is either repeated or agrees with the nearest.

agri omnes et marīa	}	<i>all lands and (all) seas</i>
omnes agri omniāque marīa		
agri et marīa omnia		
omnes (et) agri et marīa		

**548.** One Substantive placed after another to explain it, is by **Apposition** put in the **same Case**, and, when practicable, in the **same Gender and Number.**

Socrātes, sapientissīmus vir philosophīa, vitae magistra	<i>Socrates, the wisest of men philosophy, the teacher of life</i>
Athēnae, omnīum doctrinārum inventricēs	<i>Athens, the inventor of all learning.</i>

**549.** Nouns in **Apposition** are sometimes used to express the *time, condition, etc.* of the action.

Hercūles juvēnis leōnem inter- fēcit	<i>Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion.</i>
---	---

**550.** In like manner the **Latin Adjective** is used **appositively** where the English idiom employs an adverb. Adjectives thus used are those expressive of *joy, knowledge and their opposites, of order and position, of time and season, etc.*, as:

libens, <i>with pleasure</i>	sōlūs, <i>alone</i>	ultīmūs, <i>last</i>
vōlens, <i>willing(ly)</i>	tōtūs, <i>wholly</i>	mēdiūs, <i>in the middle</i>
nōlens, <i>unwilling(ly)</i>	prīmūs } <i>first</i>	frēquens, <i>frequent(ly)</i>
invītūs, <i>against one's will</i>	prīor }	sciens, <i>knowing(ly)</i>

nemo saltat sobrius, *no one dances when sober;*

Socrātes primus hoc docuit, *Socrates was the first who taught this.*

[203. 204.]

## Agreement of Pronouns.

**551.** A **Relative** or **Demonstrative Pronoun** agrees with its antecedent in **Gender, Number** and **Person**, but the **Case** depends on the clause in which it stands.

animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse non potest	<i>an animal which has blood can- not be without a heart.</i>
---	---

When the **Relative** refers to a sentence, **Id quod** is commonly used.

gloria invidiam vicisti, id quod est difficillimum	<i>you have overcome envy with glory, which is most difficult.</i>
---	--

With antecedents of **different gender** the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives. (See **544.**)

pueri et mulieres, qui capti erant...	<i>the boys and women who had been taken prisoners...</i>
--	---

With antecedents of **different persons**, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third. (See **545.**)

ego et tu, qui eodem anno nati sumus...	<i>you and I who were born in the same year...</i>
--	--

**552.** Sometimes a **Relative** or **Demonstrative** Pronoun agrees with a word in apposition or with a predicate rather than with its antecedent:

ama justam gloriām, qui est	<i>love real glory which is the</i>
fructus verae virtūtis	<i>fruit of true virtue</i>
rerum caput hoc erat, hic fons	<i>this was the head of things, this</i>
	<i>the source.</i>

**553.** **Īs**, *he*, and **īdēm**, *the same*, are the **Antecedents** of **Relatives**:

(is) qui	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{he who} \\ \textit{such as} \\ \textit{such that} \end{array} \right.$	idem qui	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{the same who} \\ \textit{the same as} \end{array} \right.$

but **Īs**, when Antecedent, is often suppressed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

quem dii diligunt adūlescens	<i>(he) whom the gods love dies</i>
moritur	<i>young.</i>

**554.** An **Adjective** or **Apposition** belonging in sense to the Antecedent, sometimes appears in the relative clause in agreement with the relative.

Themistōcles de servis suis	<i>Themistocles sent the most</i>
quem habuit fidelissimum ad	<i>faithful of the slaves which</i>
Xerxem misit	<i>he had to Xerxes</i>
omnes gentes regibus paruerunt,	<i>all nations obeyed kings, a kind</i>
quod genus imperii...	<i>of government which...</i>

**555.** **qui dicitur**, **qui vocatur**, or **quem dicunt**, **quem vocant** are used in the sense of *so-called*.

vestra, quae dicitur vita, mors est, *your so-called life is death.*

**556.** The **Relative** often stands at the beginning of a sentence where in English a demonstrative is generally used.

quae cum ita sint *and since these things are so.*

**557.** The **Relative** is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English.

is sum, qui semper fui *I am the same man I always was.*

## The Order of Words.

**558.** The Latin language allows greater freedom in the order of words than the English. The following practical rules will be found of value:

In general, put the **Subject** first, and the **Verb** last.

The **Subject** is followed by the words which modify it.

The **Verb** is preceded by the words which depend upon it.

Subject.	Dionysius,
Adjuncts of the Subject.	tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus
Adjuncts of the Predicate.	Corinthi pueros
Predicate.	docēbat.

*Dionysius, the tyrant, after he had been driven from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth.*

**559.** An **Adjective** or dependent genitive follows the word to which it belongs:

nomen bonum instar unguenti fragrantis	<i>a good name is like sweet-smelling ointment</i>
metus mortis musica depellitur	<i>fear of death is dispelled by music.</i>

**560.** When a **Substantive** is modified by an adjective and a genitive, the usual order is: **Adjective** — **Genitive** — **Substantive**.

magna frumenti vis	<i>plenty of corn.</i>
--------------------	------------------------

**561.** A **Numeral** adjective or one **Essential** to the meaning of the phrase, goes before its noun:

omnes homines decet	<i>it becomes all men</i>
malum vas non frangitur	<i>a useless pitcher does not get broken.</i>

**562.** A **Demonstrative** pronoun precedes the noun; **Relatives** or **Interrogatives** stand first in their sentence or clause; **Adverbs** are commonly put next to the word they qualify.

haec te victoria perdet	<i>this victory will ruin you</i>
qui sitiunt, silentio bibunt	<i>they who are thirsty drink in silence</i>
quis custodiet ipsos custodes?	<i>who is to look after the keepers?</i>
male parta male dilabuntur	<i>evil gotten, evil spent.</i>

**563.** **Prepositions** regularly precede their nouns except **tēnūs** and **versūs**; but monosyllabic prepositions are often placed between the **adjective** and **substantive**; as: magna cum cura, *with great care*.

**564.** **Conjunctions** generally stand at the beginning of their sentence or clause.

The **Conjunctions** autēm, *but*; enim, *for*; vērō, *but*; igitūr, *then*, follow one or more words in their clause. quīdēm, *indeed*; quōquē, *also*, come after the emphatic word. ně. .quīdēm include the emphatic word or words.

**565.** Words of *kindred* or *opposite* meaning are generally placed near each other for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*:

manus manum lavat one hand washes the other.

[202.]

## Construction of Cases.

### GENITIVE CASE.

#### With Substantives.

**566.** The **Genitive** is especially the **Case** of a **Substantive** that is added to another **Substantive** in order to limit or define the meaning.

1. If the qualified noun signifies some action or condition of which, if it were expressed by a verb, the noun in the **Genitive** would be the **Subject**, the case is called the **Subjective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *the love of God (= God loves).*

2. If the **Genitive** would be the **Object** of the action expressed by the other noun in verb-form, we call it an **Objective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *love of (toward) God (= we love God).*

3. The **Genitive** of the **Personal Pronouns** is commonly **Objective**; exceptions are nostrūm and vestrūm which are used as partitive **Genitives** (see below 6). Mark the following examples:

studium nostri	<i>sympathy for us</i>
multi nostrūm	<i>many of us</i>
melior pars nostri	<i>the better part of us</i>
major pars nostrūm	<i>the greater part of us.</i>

4. The **Possessive Pronoun** is generally used as the **Subjective Genitive**, as: amicus meus, *a friend of mine*. Additional **Attributes** are put in the **Genitive**: tua ipsius soror, *your own sister*.



5. The **Genitive** is used to denote **Quality**, but only when the quality is modified by an **Adjective**; it is joined to a **Substantive** either *attributively* or *predicatively*, as:

vir maxīmi consilīi	<i>a man of very great prudence</i>
Terentius magni ingenīi est	<i>Terence is a man of great talent.</i>

The **Genitive of Quality**, though less common than the **Ablative**, is always used when **Number**, **Measure**, **Time** or **Space** are denoted. **Parts of the body** are in the **Ablative** only (see **616**).

exsilium decem annōrum	<i>an exile of ten years</i>
Caesar fuit excelsa statūra	<i>Caesar was of tall stature.</i>

6. The **Partitive Genitive** expressing the relation of a **Whole** to its **Parts** is used:

*With Substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight, as:*

medimnum tritīci	<i>a bushel of wheat;</i>
------------------	---------------------------

*With Pronouns, Numerals, Comparatives and Superlatives, as:*

quis vestrum? <i>which of you?</i>	regum ultīmus, <i>the last of the</i>
prior horum, <i>the former of these</i>	kings

*With Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns used as Nouns, but only in the Nominative or Accusative. Such are:*

tantūm, <i>so much</i>	quantūm, <i>as much</i>	ālīquantūm, <i>somewhat</i>
multūm, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrīmūm, <i>most</i>
paulūm, <i>little</i>	mīnūs, <i>less</i>	mīnīmūm, <i>least</i>
hōc, <i>this</i>	īd, illūd, istūd, <i>that</i>	nīhīl, <i>nothing</i>
quōd, <i>which</i>	quīd, <i>what</i>	īdēm, <i>the same</i>

nihil novi, <i>nothing new</i>	īdem consilīi, <i>the same (of) advice</i>
quid novi? <i>what news?</i>	quid causae? <i>what reason?</i>

The **Genitive** after these **Adjectives** and **Pronouns** may be a **neuter adjective** of the **Second Declension**, but *not* of the **Third**:

ālīquid boni, <i>something good</i>	nihil melīus, <i>nothing better.</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

*With the Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent:*

sātīs, <i>enough</i>	ūbī, <i>where</i>	hāc } <i>to this degree</i>
pārūm, <i>too little</i>	nusquām, <i>nowhere</i>	ēō }
nīmīs, <i>too much</i>	affātīm, <i>plenty</i>	

nimis lucis, *too much light*; huc arrogantīae, *to this degree of insolence*; ubi terrārum or gentīum? *where in the world?*

7. The **Genitive of Specification** has the force of an **Apposition**, especially with *vox*, *word*; *nōmēn*, *name*; *verbŭm*, *word*, as:

*vox voluptātis*, *the word "pleasure"*

*arbor abiētis*, *a fir-tree*; *nomen regis*, *the title of king*.

8. The **Genitive** is used with the **Ablatives causā** and *grātīā*, *for the sake of*; also with *ergō*, *on account of*; *instār*, *like*. *causā*, *grātīā*, *ergō* commonly follow the **Genitive**. Mark the expressions:

*mea*, *tua*, *sua causā* (not *grātīā*) *for my, thy, his sake*,

*honōris grātīa*, *for honor's sake*,

*instar montis equus*, *a horse like a mountain*.

9. Frequently *aedēs* and *templŭm*, *temple*, and sometimes other nouns are omitted, when no mistake can arise:

*ad Vestae ventum erat*, *they had arrived at the temple of Vesta*.

[221. 222.]

### With Adjectives.

**567.** Many **Adjectives** are followed by a **Genitive** to complete their meaning. The most common are:

1. **Adjectives denoting Desire, Knowledge, Recollection, Participation, Mastery, Fullness** and their **Opposites**:

*cŭpīdŭs*, *eager, desirous*

*stŭdīōsŭs*, *devoted to*

*pĕrītŭs*, *skillful in*

*inſcīŭs*

*nescīŭs* } *ignorant*

*ignārŭs* }

*mĕmōr*, *mindful*

*immĕmōr*, *unmindful*

*expers*, *without share in*

*compōs*, *capable, master of*

*impōs*, *not in possession of*

*impōtens*, *unable or powerless to control*

*plĕnŭs*, *full*

*particeps*, *sharing, partaker of,*

*endowed with*

2. **Participial Adjectives denoting permanent qualities** (mostly ending in **ns**), as:

*diligens*, *careful, lover of*

*āmans*, *fond of*

*particeps consilii*

*compos mentis*

*cupīdus glōriæ*

*amans sui virtus*

*pātīens*, *capable of enduring*

*impātīens*, *that cannot bear*

*a sharer in the plan*

*in possession of one's mind*

*eager for glory*

*virtue fond of itself*.

3. *prōpriŭs*, *own*, and *commŭnīs*, *common*, take the **Genitive** when the idea of *property* or *peculiarity* prevails.

*popŭli Romāni est propriā libertas*, *liberty is characteristic of the Roman people*.

[223. 224.]

With Verbs.

**568.** Verbs of *Reminding*, *Remembering*, *Forgetting* take the **Genitive**.

admōnerē	} to remind	mēmīnissē	} to remember
commōnerē		rēmīniscī	
commōnēfacērē		rēcordārī	
oblīviscī, to forget			

Verbs of **Reminding**, with the Accusative of the *Person*, are followed by the Genitive of the *Person or Thing* to which the attention is called.

te vetēris amicitīae admonēo, *I remind you of our old friendship.*

Verbs of **Remembering** and **Forgetting** take the Genitive if a *Person*, and either the Genitive or Accusative, if a *Thing* is remembered or forgotten.

memīni vivōrum	<i>I am mindful of the living</i>
anīmus memīnit praeteritōrum	<i>the mind remembers the past</i>
oblīvisci nihil soles nisi injuriās	<i>you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.</i>

When the Object is expressed by a **Neuter Pronoun or Adjective**, it is with all these verbs in the **Accusative**, as:

hoc te admonēo *I warn you of this.*

mēmīni, *I remember*, when referring to a **contemporary**, always takes the **Accusative**.

meminēram Catōnem *I remembered Cato.*

**569.** Verbs of *Valuing* are joined with the **Genitive**, when the Value is expressed in a **General or Indefinite Manner**.

Such Verbs are:

aestīmārē, to value	hābērē, to hold
pūtārē, to reckon	pendērē, to weigh
dūcērē, to take	fācērē, to make, put
	essē, to be (worth)

The following are **Genitives of general value**:

magnī, much	quantī, how much
parvī, little	plūrīmī, maxīmī, most
tantī, so much	mīnīmī, least
plūrīs, more	nīhīlī, naught
mīnōrīs, less	flocēī, a lock of wool, a straw

The Complete Phrases are, then, as follows:

parvī pendĕrĕ or aestīmārĕ, to esteem lightly  
 magnī essĕ, to be of great account  
 plūrīs essĕ, to be of more account, to be worth more  
 nihīlī dūcĕrĕ, to think nothing of  
 magnī aestīmārĕ or hābĕrĕ, to value highly  
 plūrīs aestīmārĕ, to esteem of more value  
 plūrīmī aestīmārĕ, to value very highly  
 mīnīmī fācĕrĕ, to make of very little account  
 floccī fācĕrĕ, to care not a straw for

divitiae a me minimi putantur, riches are very little prized by me;  
 opĕram tuam magni aestīmo, your help I value highly.

**570. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, take the Genitive of the Charge.**

accūsārĕ	} to accuse, charge	cōargŭĕrĕ	} to convict
incūsārĕ		convincĕrĕ	
insīmŭlārĕ		} to condemn, find guilty	
argŭĕrĕ			
arcessĕrĕ	} to summon	absolvĕrĕ,	to acquit
rĕŭm fācĕrĕ			

honestam familiam scelĕris argŭis you accuse an honorable family of crime  
 aliquem levitātis convincĕre to convict one of levity.

The Crime may be expressed by the **Ablative** with **dĕ**:

accusāre aliquem de vi, de reptundis, de veneficio to accuse one of assault, of extortion, of poisoning

or by the **Genitive** with **nōmīnĕ** or **crīmīnĕ**, as:

nomīne conjuratiōnis condemnāti sunt they were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.

Verbs of *Condemning* and *Acquitting* may also take the **Ablative** of the charge and the *punishment*, and always take the **Ablative** of *fine*; *multāre*, to mulct, punish, is always construed with the **Ablative**.

damnāre capitis or capite to condemn to death  
 Camillus decem milibus damnātus est Camillus was fined 10,000

Manlius virtutem filii morte multāvit Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.

**571.** The **Subjective Genitive** may be used as a **Predicate** with the verbs *essē* and *fīērī* to denote that to which something belongs or to which something is peculiar.

In English the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, are commonly supplied. Instead of the **Genitive** of Personal Pronouns the **Neuters** of the Possessives: *mēum, tūum*, etc., are used.

<i>haec domus est Caesāris</i>	<i>this house is Caesar's</i>
<i>temeritas est florentis aetātis,</i>	<i>rashness is the characteristic</i>
<i>prudētia senectūtis</i>	<i>of youth, prudence of old age</i>
<i>mentīri non est meum.</i>	<i>to lie is not my way.</i>

**572.** With the **Impersonal** *intērest* (and sometimes also with *rēfert*), *it concerns, interests, it is the interest of, it is of importance for*, the **Genitive** is used to denote the **Person** or **Thing** concerned.

The **Genitive** seems to be governed by *causā* understood; hence instead of the **Genitive** of the personal pronoun the **Ablative** singular feminine of the **Possessives** *mēā, tūā, suā, nostrā, vestrā* is used with these verbs, as: *mēā intērest, I am concerned*; with *omniūm*, however, *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* must be used: *omniūm nostrūm intērest, it concerns all of us*.

**rēfert** seldom occurs with the **Genitive**, occasionally with *mēā, tūā*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a **Genitive**, as: *nihil rēfert, no matter*; *quid rēfert, what matter?*

The *thing* which is of interest or importance is expressed:

By a **Neuter Pronoun**, as: *hoc vehementer intērest reipublicae, this is of very much importance to the state*;

By an **Infinitive**, as: *intērest omniūm recte facēre, to do right is the interest of all*;

By an **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**, as: *multum mēā intērest te diligentem esse, it is of great importance to me that you be diligent*;

By an **Interrogative Sentence**, as: *multum mea intērest utrum diligens sis necne, it is of great importance to me whether you are diligent or not*.

**573.** The *Degree* of importance is expressed by:

**Adverbs:** magnōpĕrĕ, mǎgĭs, maxĭmĕ, pǎrŭm, etc.

**Neuter Adjectives:** multŭm, plŭs, plŭrĭmŭm, mĭnŭs, etc.

**Genitives of Value:** magnĭ, plŭrĭs, parvĭ, tantĭ, etc.

The *Thing with reference* to which one is interested is expressed by the Accusative with **ād**: magni ad honōrem nostrum intĕrest, *it is of great consequence to our honor.* [227. 228.]

### ACCUSATIVE CASE.

#### Direct Object.

**574.** Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative Case.

The **Object** of a transitive verb in the *active* voice becomes **Subject** in the *passive*.

boni cives amant patriam	<i>good citizens love their country</i>
patria a bonis civibus amatur	<i>their country is loved by good citizens.</i>

**575.** Many verbs are intransitive in English which are both transitive and intransitive in Latin. Such are:

dōlĕrĕ, <i>to grieve (for)</i>	rĭdĕrĕ, <i>to laugh (at)</i>
horrĕrĕ, <i>to shudder (at)</i>	sĭtĭrĕ, <i>to thirst (for).</i>

**576.** Some intransitive verbs may take an accusative of kindred meaning, as:

vitam jucundam vivĕre	<i>to live a pleasant life</i>
longam viam ire	<i>to go a long way.</i>

**577.** Many **Intransitive Verbs**, especially verbs of motion, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and accordingly take an **Accusative**. The commonest of them are **Compounds** of:

#### circŭm, pĕr, praetĕr, trans.

circumstārĕ, <i>to stand around</i>	praetĕrirĕ, <i>to pass by</i>
permĕārĕ, <i>to flow through</i>	transĭrĕ, <i>to cross</i>
triginta tyranni circumstetĕrunt Socrĕtĕm	<i>the 30 tyrants stood around So- crates.</i> [207. 208.]

**Two Accusatives. Same Person.**

**578.** Verbs of **Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing** admit **two Accusatives** of the same person or thing.

appellārē }  
nōmīnārē } *to name or call*  
vōcārē }  
dīcārē }

arbitrārī }  
existimārē } *to regard, con-*  
hābērē } *sider, think,*  
pūtārē } *pronounce*  
jūdicārē, *to judge*

fācērē }  
efficērē } *to make*  
reddērē }

crēārē } *to elect*  
ēlīgērē }

dēsīgnārē, *to appoint*

sē praebērē } *to show, offer*  
sē praestārē } *one's self*

Nerōnem senātus hostem iudicavit

*the senate declared Nero an enemy.*

Many other verbs, besides their proper Accusative, take a second, denoting **purpose, time, character**. Such are:

dārē, *to give*

rēlinquērē, *to leave*

hābērē, *to have*

sūmērē, *to take*

Athenienses Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumpsērunt

*the Athenians took Miltiades as their commander.*

[209. 210.]

**Two Accusatives. Person and Thing.**

**579.** dōcērē, ēdōcērē, *to teach*; cēlārē, *to conceal from*, take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

Dionysius Epaminondam musicam docuit  
non te celavi sermonem

*Dionysius taught Epaminondas music*  
*I did not conceal from you the conversation.*

The **Passive** of dōcērē or ēdōcērē with the **Nominative** of the person and the **Accusative** of the thing is *almost never* used, but is replaced by discērē āliquid āb āliquō. Special uses worthy of note are as follows:

ēdōcērē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to inform some one of something*;

cēlārē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to keep some one ignorant of something.*

**580.** Verbs signifying *to ask, to demand, to request, to inquire* take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

The commonest of them are:

poscĕrĕ	} <i>to ask, demand</i>	ōrārĕ	} <i>to ask, entreat, beseech</i>	rōgārĕ	} <i>to ask, inquire</i>
flāgītārĕ		rōgārĕ		interrōgārĕ	
postulārĕ		petĕrĕ		quaerĕrĕ	
posce deos venīam				<i>ask favor of the gods</i>	
me sententiām rogāvīt				<i>he asked me my opinion.</i>	

But to this there are many **Exceptions**. We may also say:

poscĕre or flagitāre aliquid ab aliquo.

We always say: postulāre or petĕre aliquid ab aliquo;  
quaerĕre aliquid ab, ex, or de aliquo.

**581.** The verbs ōrārĕ, rōgārĕ, *to ask, request,* and rōgārĕ, interrōgārĕ, *to ask, inquire,* admit a double accusative only when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or adjective, as: hoc te rogo, *this I inquire of you.* Otherwise we say: interrogāre aliquem de aliqua re, *to ask some one about something.*

**582.** A noun as second accusative appears with the verb rōgārĕ only in the official phrase:

sententiām rogāre aliquem, *to ask one for his opinion or vote.*

[211. 212.]

### Accusative with Impersonal Verbs.

**583.** The **Accusative** is used after the **Impersonals**:

fallīt mē	} <i>it escapes my notice, is un- known to me</i>	dĕcēt, it becomes
fūgīt mē		dĕdĕcēt, it is unbecoming
praetĕrīt mē		
me fugit ad te scribĕre		<i>I forgot to write to you</i>
oratōrem irasci dĕdĕcet		<i>it is unbecoming in an orator to be angry.</i>

An **Infinitive** or a **Neuter Pronoun or Adjective**, rarely a **Substantive**, may be used as the **Subject** of dĕcēt and dĕdĕcēt:

muliĕrem decet flĕre	<i>it becomes a woman to weep</i>
parvum parva decet	<i>small things become the small</i>
neglegentiā nemīnem decet	<i>carelessness becomes no one.</i>



**584.** Certain **Impersonal Verbs** take the Person who feels in the **Accusative**, and the Exciting Cause in the **Genitive**, or if a verb, in the **Infinitive**; viz.:

<i>miserēt, it excites pity</i>	<i>pudet, it shames</i>
<i>paenitēt, it causes sorrow</i>	<i>taedet</i>
<i>pigēt, it disgusts, grieves</i>	<i>pertaesum est</i> } <i>it wearies, tires.</i>

The **Persons** are expressed as follows:

<i>miserēt mē, I pity</i>	<i>paenitēt mē, I am sorry, repent</i>
<i>miserēt tē, thou pitiest</i>	<i>pigēt mē, I am grieved at, dis-</i>
<i>miserēt eum, he pities</i>	<i>gusted with</i>
<i>miserēt nōs, we pity</i>	<i>pudet mē, I am ashamed</i>
<i>miserēt vōs, you pity</i>	<i>taedet mē</i> } <i>I am weary,</i>
<i>miserēt eos, they pity</i>	<i>mē pertaesum est</i> } <i>tired</i>

*me stultitiae meae pudet*  
*non me paenitet vixisse*

*I am ashamed of my folly*  
*I am not sorry for having lived.*

#### Idiomatic Uses.

**585.** The **Accusative** is used in **Exclamations**, either with or without an Interjection.

*O, miserās hominum mentes! Oh, the wretched minds of men!*

**586.** A **Neuter Adjective** or **Pronoun** is used *adverbially* in the **Accusative**, as: *aliquid, somewhat; nihil, not at all; multum, much*, etc. The **Accusative** is also found in a few *adverbial phrases*, as: *maximam partem, mostly; id genus, of this kind; id temporis, at this time*:

<i>nihil movēor</i>	<i>I am not at all moved</i>
<i>forum id temporis omni turba</i>	<i>the forum was at this time free</i>
<i>vacuum erat</i>	<i>from all tumult.</i>

[213. 214.]

#### DATIVE CASE.

##### With Verbs.

**587.** The **Dative** is the Case of the **Indirect Object**, denoting *that for which, to the benefit or loss of which* any thing is or is done. It may be used with transitive and intransitive Verbs; *dativus commōdi et incommōdi*: **Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage.**

*scribo vobis hunc librum, I write this book for you;*  
*tibi seris, tibi metis, you sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.*

588. A large number of **Transitive Verbs** take along with the Accusative a **Dative** as an **Indirect Object**.

The English expresses the **Dative Relation** by *to* or *for*; but where the verb implies removal, the Latin Dative frequently answers to the English Objective with *from*; *for* = *in defence of* is **prō**.

errantibus viam monstrēmus	<i>let us show the way to the erring</i>
dolor somnum mihi adimit	<i>grief takes away my sleep from</i>
pro patria mori	<i>to die for one's country. [me</i>

589. Many **Intransitive Verbs** signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *favor* or *resist*, *trust* or *distrust*, also *indulge*, *believe*, *persuade*, *envy*, *threaten*, *spare*, and the like, take the **Dative**.

Examples are:

prōdessē, <i>to do good</i>	crēdērē, <i>to believe</i>
nōcērē, <i>to do harm</i>	sūādērē, <i>to advise, recommend</i>
blandirī, <i>to soothe</i>	mīnārī, <i>imminērē, to threaten</i>
fāvērē, <i>to favor</i>	bēnēdicērē, <i>to bless</i>
rēsistērē, <i>to offer resistance</i>	nūbērē, <i>to marry</i>
plācērē, <i>to please</i>	persūādērē, <i>to persuade, con-</i>
displicērē, <i>to displease</i>	mēdērī, <i>to heal</i> [vince
impērārē, <i>to command</i>	supplicārē, <i>to beg</i>
ōboedirē, <i>pārērē, to obey</i>	mālēdicērē, <i>to curse</i>
fīdērē, <i>to trust</i>	parcērē, <i>to spare</i>
diffidērē, <i>to distrust</i>	stūdērē, <i>to devote one's self</i>
īrascī, <i>to be angry with</i>	obtrectārē, <i>to decry</i>
indulgērē, <i>to give up, to favor</i>	invidērē, <i>to envy</i>

arbor resistit ventis	<i>the tree offers resistance to the winds</i>
probus invidet nemīni	<i>the upright man envies no one</i>
non parcam opērae	<i>I will spare no pains.</i>

Among the most notable **Exceptions** are:

jūvārē } <i>to help, assist</i>	dēficērē, <i>to be wanting</i>
adjūvārē }	jūbērē, <i>to order</i>
aequārē, <i>to be equal</i>	vētārē, <i>to forbid</i>

which govern the **Accusative**.

**590.** **Passives** are properly made only from transitive verbs. Intransitive Verbs which govern a Dative have an **Impersonal Passive** with the same Case, in the following manner:

**Active.** bōnūs invīdet nēmīnī, *a good man envies no one*

**Passive.** mīhī invīdētūr, *I am envied*

tībī invīdētūr, *thou art envied*

ēī invīdētūr, *he is envied*

nōbīs invīdētūr, *we are envied*

vōbīs invīdētūr, *you are envied*

īīs invīdētūr, *they are envied*

ā bōnō invīdētūr nēmīnī, *no one is envied by a good man.*

**591.** Some Verbs take the **Dative** or **Accusative** according to their signification:

cāvērē ālicūī, *to care for some one*

cāvērē āliquēm, *to beware of some one*

cāvērē āb āliquō, *to be on one's guard*

consūlērē ālicūī, *to consult the interest of some one*

consūlērē āliquēm, *to consult some one*

mētūērē ālicūī, *to fear some one*

mētūērē ālicūī, *to fear for some one*

prōvīdērē āliquīd, *to foresee something*

prōvīdērē ālicūī rēī, *to provide for something*

mōdērārī āliquīd, *to manage something*

mōdērārī ālicūī rēī, *to set bounds to a matter*

tempērārē āliquīd, *to rule something*

tempērārē ālicūī, *to spare some one*

tempērārē āb āliquā rē, *to abstain from something.*

**592.** The **Dative** is used with many Verbs compounded with the **Prepositions**:

ād, antē, cōn, īn, intēr,

ōb, post, prae, sūb, sūpēr.

Examples are:

afferrē, *to bring to, to render*

interjicērē, *to throw in*

praecurrērē, *to precede*

impōnērē, *to place on*

suppōnērē, *to put under*

virtus omnībus rebus antēit

onēra quibusdam animalībus im-

ponimus

ādīmērē, *to take away*

intērēssē, *to be present*

injicērē, *to strike into*

oppōnērē, *to oppose*

virtue goes before all things

we put burdens on some ani-

mals.

[215, 216.]

**593.** Certain Verbs of *giving* and *putting* may take either a **Dative** with an **Accusative**, or an **Accusative** with an **Ablative**, as:

dono tibi librum, *I present you a book;*  
 dono te libro, *I present you with a book;*  
 circumdat urbi murum, *he puts a wall around the city;*  
 circumdat urbem muro, *he surrounds the city with a wall.*

So with *adspergĕrĕ*, *to sprinkle*, and *indŭĕrĕ*, *to put on*.

**594.** The **Dative** is used with *essĕ* to denote the **Possessor**, the thing possessed being the subject.

When so used it is commonly translated by *to have*; *mihĭ nŏmĕn est*, means *my name is* or *I am called*; the proper name is put either in the **Nominative** or the **Dative**, as:

est mihi domi pater *I have a father at home*  
 puĕro nomen est Carŏlus (Carŏlo) *the boy's name is Charles.*

**595.** Certain Verbs take the **Dative** to denote the **purpose** or **end**, and often at the same time another **Dative** of the person **for whom** or **to whom**. Such are:

essĕ, <i>to be</i>	mittĕrĕ, <i>to send</i>	hĕbĕrĕ, <i>to hold</i>
fĭĕrĭ } <i>to become,</i>	accĭpĕrĕ, <i>to receive</i>	vertĕrĕ, <i>to interpret,</i>
} <i>turn out</i>	vĕnĭrĕ, <i>to come</i>	} <i>turn (against)</i>
dĀrĕ, <i>to put</i>	rĕlinquĕrĕ, <i>to leave</i>	dŭĕĕrĕ, <i>to count</i>

exemplo est formĭca

*the ant is an example*

malo est hominĭbus avaritĭa

*avarice is an evil to men*

dono dare

*to give as a present.*

**596.** The **Dative** is used with the **Gerundive** to denote the person on whom a necessity rests, as:

adhibenda est nobis diligentĭa *we must use diligence*  
 nobis omnĭbus moriendum est *we all must die.*

**597.** Verbs in the **Passive Voice** are sometimes followed by a **Dative** of the Agent — instead of *Ā*, *Āb* with the **Ablative**.

res mihi tota provĭsa est *I have had the whole matter provided for*

carminĭa mihi scripta sunt nulla *I have no poems written.*

With Adjectives.

**598.** Many **Adjectives** and **Adverbs** are followed by the **Dative** denoting that to which the quality is directed.

The most common are those signifying:

*useful, fit, pleasant, like,*

*near, easy, inclined, necessary, and their Opposites.*

acceptūs, *acceptable*

amicūs, *friendly*

inimicūs, *unfriendly, opposed*

aptūs, *apt, suitable*

cārūs, *dear*

commūnis, *common*

dulcīs, *agreeable*

fācīlīs, *easy*

difficīlīs, *difficult*

grātūs, *pleasing*

ingrātūs, *unpleasant*

grāvīs, *burdensome*

jūcundūs, *agreeable*

injūcundūs, *disagreeable*

molestūs, *troublesome*

necessārīūs, *necessary*

ōdīōsūs, *hateful*

pār, *equal, a match for*

dispār, *unlike*

sālūtārīs, *beneficial*

sīmīlīs, *like*

dissīmīlīs, *unlike*

turpīs, *disgraceful*

ūtīlīs, *useful*

canis simīlis lupō est

flamma fumo est proxīma

*a dog is similar to a wolf*

*fire is next akin to smoke.*

Many Adjectives which belong to this class become *Substantives* and as such take the **Genitive**; e. g.:

amicūs, *a friend*

inimicūs, *an enemy*

fāmīliārīs, *an (intimate) friend*

aequālīs, *a contemporary*

vīcīnūs, *a neighbor*

necessārīūs, *a relation*

**599.** Adjectives of **Inclination** may take the **Accusative** with *ergā* (when *friendly* feelings are spoken of) or with *īn*, *adversūs* (for *friendly and unfriendly* feelings); those signifying *useful, suitable* take oftener the **Accusative** with *ād* to denote the thing *for which*, but regularly the **Dative** of **Persons**; as: *sevērus in filiūm, severe towards his son; homo ad nullam rem utīlis, a good-for-nothing fellow.*

**600.** The Adjectives *prōpīōr*, *proxīmūs* (sometimes), and the Adverbs *prōpīūs*, *proxīmē* (commonly) take the **Accusative**. After *sīmīlīs, like*, the **Genitive** is used to denote *exact resemblance*; as: *mei, tui, nostri simīlis, my, your, our like*, and *vērī simīlis, likely*.

**601.** A few **Derivative Substantives** take the **Dative** after the analogy of their **Primitives**, as: *justitiā est obtemperantiā legībūs, justice is obedience to the laws.*

**Ethical Dative.**

**602.** The **Dative** of a **Personal Pronoun** is sometimes introduced for liveliness of expression: **Ethical Dative.**

fur mihi est, *he is a thief in my opinion;*  
quid tibi vis? *what do you want?*

[219. 220.]

**ABLATIVE CASE.**

**Ablative of Cause.**

**603.** The **Ablative** is used to express the **Cause**.

The **Ablative of Cause** designates *that by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* something is or is done. Accordingly it is used with passive verbs and such active verbs and adjectives as imply a passive meaning. In the passive construction, however, the *Person* or *Living Agent* by whom any thing is done is put in the **Ablative** with **ā, āb**.

Dei providentiā mundus admini- strātur	<i>the world is governed by God's providence</i>
a Deo mundus administrātur	<i>the world is governed by God</i>
concordiā res parvae crescunt	<i>by concord small affairs grow</i>
milites praelio fessi erant	<i>the soldiers were weary with the battle.</i>

**604.** The **Ablative of Cause** is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with **Verbs** and **Adjectives** like the following:

dolērē, <i>to grieve</i>	glōriārī, <i>to boast</i>
maerērē, <i>to mourn</i>	lābōrārē, <i>to suffer</i>
gandērē } <i>to rejoice, delight</i>	sūperbūs, <i>proud</i>
laetārī } <i>to be delighted</i>	laetūs, <i>pleased</i> — aegēr, <i>ill</i>
	anxiūs, <i>anxious</i>

agricōla gaudet equis, *the husbandman delights in horses;*  
Miltiādes aeger erat vulneribus, *Miltiades was ill from his wounds;*  
aliis malis labōras, *you suffer with other ills.*

This includes such **Ablatives** as: jussū, *by order;* rōgātū, *at the request,* etc. On causā and grātīā, *for the sake of,* see **566. 8.**

Akin to the Causal Ablative is the **Ablative** with **verbs** expressing **origin**, as:

humilibus parentibus ortus	<i>sprung from low parents.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

**Ablative of Means or Instrument.**

**605.** The **Ablative** is used to denote the **Means** or **Instrument** by which anything is effected.

Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est	<i>Pyrrhus was killed by a stone</i>
benevolentiam civium blanditiis colligere turpe est	<i>to win the good will of one's fellow-citizens by flattery is disgraceful.</i>

**606.** The **Person**, considered as *Means* or *Instrument*, is expressed by **pĕr** with the accusative, or by **ĕpĕrā** with a genitive or possessive:

Caesar certior factus est per legatos	<i>Caesar was informed by (means of) ambassadors.</i>
---------------------------------------	---

**607.** *ĕrŭdĭrĕ, instĭtŭĕrĕ, to instruct; as: aliquem artibus erudire, to instruct some one in the arts; and affĭcĕrĕ, to treat, in such expressions as: aliquem honoribus affĭcĕre, to honor some one; aliquem molestia affĭcĕre, to trouble some one — are worthy of note.*

**Ablative of Limitation.**

**608.** That *in respect to which* or *in accordance with which* anything is or is done is denoted by the **Ablative of Limitation**.

Out of this usage grow a number of **Particular Phrases**:

grandis nātū, <i>old</i>	mĕā sententiā, mĕā ōpĭnĭōnĕ,
mājor nātū, <i>older</i>	<i>according to my opinion</i>
maximŭs nātū, <i>oldest</i>	jŭdiciō, testĭmōnĭō ālicŭjŭs,
minor nātū, <i>younger</i>	<i>according to the judgment,</i>
minimŭs nātū, <i>youngest</i>	<i>testimony, of some one</i>
reges nomine magis quam imperio	<i>kings in name rather than in authority.</i>

[229. 230.]

**Ablative of Comparison.**

**609.** The **Ablative of Comparison** may be used with the **Comparative**, instead of *quā*m, *than*, with the *Nominative* or *Accusative*.

filius melior est quam pater	} <i>the son is better than his father</i>
filius melior est patre	
scio filium meliorem esse patre	<i>I know that the son is better than his father.</i>

**610.** The **Ablative**, instead of **quām** with the same case as the thing compared, must be regularly used in **Relative Sentences**:  
amicitiā, qua nihil melius habē- *friendship than which we have*  
mus. . . *nothing better. . .*

**quām** is often omitted after **plūs**, **amplūs**, *more*; **mīnūs**, *less*; **longiūs**, *farther*, and the like, without influence upon the construction. But the **Ablative** may also be used when the word with **quām** would be in the **Nominative** or **Accusative**.

ex Romānis minus trecenti per-	<i>of the Romans less than 300</i>
iērunt	<i>perished</i>
tecum plus annum vixit	<i>he lived with you more than a</i>
	<i>year</i>

plus quam ducenti interfecti sunt	} <i>more than 200 were killed.</i>
plus ducenti interfecti sunt	
plus ducentis interfecti sunt	

**611.** **Certain Ablatives**, as **ōpīnīōnē**, **expectātiōnē**, **spē**, **sōlītō**, preceding a comparative are used instead of a **Clause**, as:

opiniōne celerius, *sooner than is expected*;  
dicto citius, *quicker than the word was spoken*;  
serius spe, *later than was hoped*;  
amnis solīto citatior, *the river running faster than usual*.

**612.** The **Ablative** is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the **Degree of Difference**. This use is especially frequent with the **Ablatives**:

multō, <i>much</i>	altērō tantō, <i>twice as much</i>
paulō, <i>a little</i>	nīhilō, <i>by nothing, no</i>
ālīquantō, <i>some more</i>	quō. . . ēō
tantō, <i>so much</i>	quantō. . . tantō } <i>the. . . the</i>
quantō, <i>how much</i>	
minor uno mense	<i>younger by one month</i>
multo praestat virtus divitiis	<i>virtue is much better than riches.</i>

#### Ablative of Manner.

**613.** The **Ablative of Manner** answers the question **How?**

It is used with the preposition **cūm** when it has no Adjective; with or without **cūm** when it has an Adjective. Words signifying *manner* themselves, such as: **mōdūs**, **rātīō**, **mōs**, **rītūs**, and likewise **ānīmūs**, **mens**, **consīlīūm**, never take **cūm**.



cum voluptâte aliquem audire	<i>to hear some one with pleasure</i>
aliquid facere magno studio,	<i>to do something with great zeal</i>
or magno cum studio	
aliquid aequo animo ferre	<i>to bear something with an even</i>
(never aequo cum animo)	<i>mind.</i>

**614.** The following Ablatives are used without an Adjective or Preposition:

silentio, <i>in silence</i>	jure, <i>rightfully</i>
ordine, <i>in an orderly manner</i>	injuria, <i>unjustly</i>
casu, <i>by chance</i>	vi, <i>violently</i>
viam et ratione, <i>methodically</i>	vi et armis; <i>by force of arms</i>
voluntate, <i>voluntarily</i>	pedibus, <i>a-foot</i>
dolo, fraude, <i>fraudulently</i>	navibus, <i>by ship</i>

#### Ablative of Quality.

**615.** The Ablative with an Adjective or an equivalent is used to denote Quality.

**616.** External qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; measure, number, time and space are put in the Genitive only.

serpens ingenti magnitudine, *a serpent of huge size;*  
 Britanni sunt capillo promisso, *the Britons have long hanging locks.*

#### Ablative of Price.

**617.** As a rule, Price is put in the Ablative.

The Ablative of Price is used with:

emere	} <i>to buy</i>	aestimare, <i>to value</i>
redimere		locare
mercari	} <i>to let</i>	collocare
vendere, <i>to sell (pass. venire)</i>		conducere, <i>to hire</i>
licere, <i>to be for sale</i>		esse, stare, constare, <i>to cost</i>
patriam auro vendidit		<i>he sold his country for gold</i>
equus mihi talento stetit		<i>the horse cost me a talent.</i>

**618.** General Value or Cost is expressed by the following Ablatives:

magno, <i>at a high price</i>	plurimo, <i>at a very high price</i>
parvo, <i>at a low price</i>	minimo, <i>at a very low price</i>
nihil, <i>for nothing</i>	

hortos istos emamus magno, si  
 parvo non possumus *let us buy those gardens at a  
 high price, if we cannot have  
 them cheap.*

**619.** Comparative Value or Cost (see 569) is expressed by these Genitives:

tantī, <i>so much</i>	quantī, <i>how much</i>
tantīdēm, <i>at the same price</i>	plūrīs, <i>dearer</i> ; mīnūrīs, <i>cheaper</i>
mercatorēs non tantīdem vendunt quanti emērunt	<i>merchants do not sell at the same price at which they bought</i>
quanti cenas?	<i>what do you pay for your dinner?</i>

Mark the following Particular Phrases:

bēnē ěmērē, <i>to buy cheap</i>	bēnē vendērē, <i>to sell dear</i>
mālē ěmērē, <i>to buy dear</i>	mālē vendērē, <i>to sell at a loss.</i>

[231. 232.]

#### Ablative of Separation, Plenty, Want.

**620.** Verbs signifying *to remove, abstain, set free* take the Ablative with or without the Prepositions *ex, dē, āb*; but with *Persons* a Preposition, usually *āb*, must be used.

Examples are:

dēpellērē lōcō, <i>to drive from a place</i>
abstīnērē injūrīā, <i>to abstain from wrong-doing</i>
abstīnērē mānūs āb ālīēnīs, <i>to keep one's hands from other people's property</i>
ējīcērē ē cīvītātē, <i>to drive from the state</i>
ērumpērē ē saxīs, <i>to burst from the rocks</i>
ābhorrērē āb ālīquā rē, <i>to differ from something</i>
dētterrērē āb injūrīā, <i>to deter from wrong-doing</i>
libērārē ā cūrīs, <i>to release from cares</i>
dēcēdērē (dē) vītā, <i>to depart from life</i>

Hannībal ex Italiā decedēre	<i>Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy</i>
coactus est	
Alexander vix a se manus abstīnūit	<i>Alexander hardly kept his hands from himself</i>
multōs fortūna libērat paena, metu nemīnem	<i>fortune rids many of punishment, none of fear</i>
Themistōclem Athenienses e civitātē expulērunt	<i>the Athenians banished Themistocles from the state.</i>

**621.** Verbs compounded with **sē** and **dīs** take nearly always **ā** or **āb**; such are:

discernĕrĕ }  
distinguĕrĕ } *to distinguish*  
differrĕ }  
discrĕpārĕ }  
dissentīrĕ } *to differ, disagree*  
distārĕ }

sĕcernĕrĕ }  
sĕjungĕrĕ } *to separate*  
sĕpārārĕ }  
likewise:  
ālĕnārĕ, *to alienate*  
ābhorrĕrĕ, *to be averse*

crede mihi, mores distant a car-  
mīne nostro

*believe me, my conduct far  
differs from my song.*

Mark the **Particular Phrase**:

interdīcĕrĕ ālicuī āquā ĕt ignī, *to forbid one the use of fire  
and water, to banish one.*

**622.** Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, of *Filling* and *De-  
priving* take the **Ablative**.

ābundārĕ, *to abound, have abun-  
dant*  
cārĕrĕ, *to be or do without, to  
lack*  
ĕgĕrĕ, indīgĕrĕ, *to need*  
vācārĕ, *to be void of, to be free  
from*  
sātīārĕ, *to glut*

explĕrĕ }  
implĕrĕ } *to fill*  
complĕrĕ }  
rĕplĕrĕ }  
orbārĕ } *to deprive*  
prīvārĕ }  
spōliārĕ } *to plunder, to strip*  
nūdārĕ }

non egĕo medicīna  
admonitĕo acerbitāte carĕre de-  
bet

*I do not need medicine  
an admonition should be with-  
out bitterness*

America abundat lacūbus et flu-  
minībus

*America abounds in lakes and  
rivers.*

ĕgĕo and indīgĕo are often followed by the **Genitive**.

**623.** **Adjectives** of *Plenty* and *Want* regularly take the **Genitive** (see **567.** 1.), but some of them follow the analogy of the corresponding verbs and take the **Ablative**. Among the latter are:

nūdūs, *naked*  
orbūs, *deprived of*  
libĕr, *free*

ōnustūs, *laden*  
īnānīs } *void*  
vācūūs }

rĕfertūs, *stuffed*  
praeditūs, *endowed*

asellus onustus auro  
urbs nuda praesidiō

*a donkey laden with gold  
a city naked of defense.*

**624.** *ōpūs est*, *there is need, it is needful, necessary*, takes the **Dative** of the **Person** who is in want, and the **Ablative** of the **Thing** wanted (Impersonal Construction); but the Thing wanted may be the Subject and *ōpūs est (sunt)* the Predicate (Personal Construction).

The **Impersonal Construction** must regularly be used in *Negative Sentences*, and the **Personal** with *Neuter Adjectives* and *Pronouns*; *ōpūs* is always indeclinable.

opus mihi est libro	<i>I want a book</i>
liber mihi opus est	<i>a book is what I want</i>
opus mihi est libris	<i>I want books</i>
libri mihi opus sunt	<i>books are what I want</i>
nihil opus est duce	<i>there is no need of a leader</i>
multa opus sunt	<i>there is need of many things.</i>

**Ablative in Special Constructions.**

**625.** The **Ablative** is used with the **Adjectives**:

dignūs, <i>worthy</i>	frētūs, <i>trusting, relying</i>
indignūs, <i>unworthy</i>	contentūs, <i>satisfied</i>
also with dignōr, <i>I deem worthy.</i>	

*ālīenūs*, *strange, foreign*, takes the **Ablative** with or without **ā**, **āb**.

vir patre dignissimus	<i>a man most worthy of his father</i>
me dignor honōre	<i>I deem myself worthy of honor</i>
homo sum, humāni nihil a me aliēnum puto	<i>I am a man, and nothing relating to man I deem foreign to me.</i>

**626.** The **Ablative** is used with the **Deponent Verbs**:

ūtōr, -ī, <i>to use</i>	pōtītōr, -īrī, <i>to make one's self master of</i>
frūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy</i>	
fungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>	vescōr, -ī, <i>to feed</i>

and their **Compounds**:

ābūtōr, -ī, <i>to abuse</i>	dēfungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>
perfrūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy fully</i>	perfungōr, -ī, <i>to fulfil</i>

utar vestra benignitāte, *I will avail myself of your kindness*;  
vescīmur bestiīs, *we live upon animals.*

pōtīōr sometimes takes the **Genitive**; always in the phrase: pōtīrī rērūm, *to get control of affairs*.

**627.** nītōr, *I stay myself, rest upon*, takes the **Ablative** with or without **in**.

in Pompēji vita nititur salus ci- *the welfare of the state depends*  
vitātis *on Pompey's life.*

**628.** fīdō and confīdō, *I trust*, take the **Ablative** when the object is a *Thing*, and the **Dative** when the object is a *Person*. diffīdō, *I distrust*, commonly takes the **Dative**. See **589**.

nemo potest fortunae stabilitate *no one can trust to the stability*  
confidere *of fortune*  
huic legiōni Caesar maxīme con- *this legion Caesar especially*  
fidēbat *trusted.* [235. 236.]

## Time, Space, Place.

### USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

**Prepositions** construed with the **Accusative**:

antē, āpūd, ād, adversūs,  
circūm, circā, cītrā, cīs,  
ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,  
infra, intrā, juxtā, ōb,  
pēnēs, (pōnē), pōst & praetēr,  
prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundūm,  
suprā, versūs, ultrā, trans.

**629.** ād, with many varieties of application, generally means *to*. It denotes:

*direction* toward a *place* or *person*, as: ad urbem, *to town*;  
venio ad te, *I come to you*;

*nearness* with reference to *place*, *time* or *quantity*, as: urbs sita  
ad mare, *a town situated near the sea*; ad vespēram, *towards*  
*evening*; ad ducentos, *nearly 200*;

*time*, answering the question *till when?* as: ad summam senec-  
tūtem, *until extreme old age*. It also denotes a fixed time, as: ad  
horam, *at the hour*;

*aim* or *purpose* = *in respect of*, as: res ad bellum utiles,  
*things useful for war*;

*accord* or *agreement* = *according to*, as: ad voluntātem ali-  
cujus loqui, *to speak according to some one's will*.

**Particular Phrases are:**

ad verbum, *word for word*

nihil ad hanc rem, *nothing in comparison with this thing*

ad unum omnes, *all to the last man.*

**630. āpūd, at,** chiefly used of persons, denotes:

*nearness or presence*, as: **apud** Caesārem, *at Caesar's house*; **apud** iudices, *before, in presence of, the judges*; **apud** Cannas, *near Cannae*;

*situation or estimation among, regard by*, as: **apud** vetēres, *among the ancients*; **apud** me nihil valet homīnum opinio, *with me the opinion of the multitude has no weight.*

āpūd is also used with the *Names of Authors* instead of *in* with the name of their works, as: **apud** Plīnium legimus, *we read in Pliny (in his works).*

**631. antē, before,** means *preceding in space or time*, as: **ante** portas, *before the gates*; **ante** noctem, *before night.*

**632. adversūs,** more rarely **adversūm,** indicates:

*direction toward a place or person*, and combines the meanings of both *against* and *toward*, as: castra **adversus** urbem ponere, *to pitch the camp over against the city*; **adversus** aliquem pugnāre, *to fight with (against) some one*; piētas **adversus** parentes, *duty to(ward) parents.*

**633. cīs** and **citrā,** *on this side*, are used in reference to *place* opposed to **trans**, as: **citra** Rubicōnem, *on this side of the Rubicon.*

**634. circā** and **circūm** are equivalent to both *around* and *about* with reference to *place*, as: **circum** haec loca, *hereabout*; homīnes **circum** se habent, *they have people with them.* *circa* is also used of *time*, as: **circa** eandem horam, *about the same hour.*

**Particular Phrase :**

circum amīcos mittere, *to send around to one's friends.*

**635. circitēr,** *near, about*, is used of *time* only, as: **circiter** meridiem, *about noon*, but is more commonly an *Adverb.*

**636. contrā** is equivalent to *against* in both its meanings: *opposite to*, as: **contra** Italiām, *over against Italy*; *in opposition to*, as: **contra** natūrā vivere, *to live against nature.*

**637.** *ergā*, toward, always implies friendly feelings, as: *divīna bonitas erga homīnes*, *God's goodness toward men*.

**638.** *extrā* means *without* = *out of*, sometimes *beyond* or *except*, as: *extra urbem*, *without the city*; *extra modum*, *beyond measure*; *extra ducem reliqui rapāces sunt*, *except the leader the rest are robbers*.

**639.** *intrā* denotes *within* in regard to both *place* and *time*, as: *intra urbem*, *within the city*; *intra decem annos*, *within or during 10 years*. *intra* with an Ordinal Number means *before the expiration of*; as: *intra decimum diem urbem cepit*, *before the expiration of the 10th day he took the city*.

**640.** *intēr* is equivalent to both *between* and *among*, as: *inter Padum et Alpes*, *between the Po and the Alps*; *Croesus inter reges opulentissimus*, *Croesus, the wealthiest among kings*. It is also used to denote *time*, as: *inter cenam*, *during dinner*; *inter ludendum*, *while playing*. With the personal pronouns, as: *inter nōs*, *vōs*, *ēōs*, *sē*, it is employed in a reciprocal sense, answering to the English *one another*, *each other*, as: *Cicerōnis puēri amant inter se*, *Cicero's boys love one another*.

**641.** *infrā*, below, means:

*lower in place*, as: *infra caelum*, *under the sky*;

*lower in rank or esteem*, as: *eum infra omnes puto*, *I think him beneath all men*;

*later in time*, as: *Homērus non infra Lycurgum fuit*, *Homer was not later than Lycurgus*;

*smaller than*, as: *magnitudīne infra elephantum*, *in size smaller than an elephant*.

**642.** *juxtā*, hard by, beside, as: *juxta murum castra posuit*, *he pitched the camp hard by the wall*.

**643.** *ōb* sometimes means *before*, as: *ob oculos versāri*, *to be before the eyes*. Generally it means *by reason of*, *on account of*, as: *ob eam causam*, *for that reason*.

**644.** *pēnēs* denotes *in the possession or power of*, as: *summum imperium penes Agamemnonem erat*, *the chief command was in the hands of Agamemnon*.

**645.** *pěr*, *through*, is used in a great variety of applications, as: denoting *place, from end to end*, as: *per urbem ire, to go through the city*;

denoting *duration* as: *per noctem, during the night*;

denoting *the agent or means*, as: *per amicum servatus sum, by (means of) my friend I was saved*;

denoting *the manner* in which a thing is done, as: *per litteras, by letter*; *per potestatem, by authority*; *per iram, from or in anger*; *per vim, by violence*;

denoting *the object invoked in forms of swearing*, as: *per deos immortales jurare, to swear by the immortal gods*.

**Particular Phrases:**

*per me licet, you may for all I care*; *per aetatem, on account of his age*; *per valetudinem, on account of ill health*.

**646.** *pōst*, *after*, denotes:

*behind in place*, as: *post equitem sedet atra cura, behind the rider sits black care*;

*later in time*, as: *post tenēbras lux, after darkness comes light*.

**647.** *praetēr* primarily means *along*, as: *praeter litus, along shore*; yet it is more commonly equivalent to *except* or *besides*, as: *praeter te amicum neminem habeo, except you I have no friend*; *praeter auctoritatem etiam vires habet, besides authority he has also strength*.

**Particular Phrases:**

*praeter spem, contrary to hope*; *praeter modum, immoderately*; *praeter ceteros, more than the rest*.

**648.** *prōpě*, *near, near by*, as: *prope urbem, near the city*.

**649.** *proptēr* is equivalent to *prōpě, near*, as: *propter Siciliam insulae Vulcaniae sunt, near Sicily are the Vulcanian islands*; but most frequently it is *on account of*, implying *motive or reason*, as: *propter modestiam tuam te diligo, I love you on account of your modesty*.

**650.** *sēcundūm* (derived from *sēquī, to follow*) means:

*along*, as: *secundum mare iter facere, to make a journey along the sea shore*;

*next to, immediately after*, as: *secundum cenam, immediately after dinner*;

*according to*, as: *secundum naturam vivere, to live according to nature*.



**651.** *suprā*, *above* (opposite to *infrā*) denotes: *higher in place*, as: *supra lunam*, *above the moon*; *more than, superior to*, as: *supra duos menses*, *more than two months*; *supra vires*, *above one's strength*.

**652.** *trans*, *beyond, across, on the other side*, is used with verbs expressing *motion*, as: *multae aves ante hiemem trans mare migrant*, *many birds migrate across the sea before winter*; also with verbs expressing *rest*, as: *eo ipso tempore trans mare fui*, *at that very time I was beyond the sea*.

**653.** *versūs*, *towards, -ward*, follows an accusative which is usually governed by *ād* or *īn*, as: *ad Oceānum versus proficisci*, *to set out towards the ocean*. With *dōmūs* and names of towns *versūs* alone is used, as: *Romam versus*, *Romeward*; *domum versus*, *homeward*.

**654.** *ultrā* signifies *beyond, on the further side*, as: *ultra Atlantem montem*, *beyond mount Atlas*. It is also used to denote *measure*, as: *ultra septa transilire*, *to go beyond bounds*.

[91. 92. 237. 238.]

**Prepositions construed with the Ablative.**

*ā, āb, abs, cūm, dē,*  
*cōrām, prō, ex, ē,*  
*tēnūs, sīnē, prae.*

**655.** *ā* (*āb, abs*), *from*, is used in a variety of applications; it denotes:

the *point of time* or *space* at which the action, state, etc. are regarded as setting out, or beginning, as: *a prima aetate*, *from an early age*; *ab urbe profectus est*, *he departed from the city*;

that *from which anything proceeds* or *by which anything is produced*, as: *calor est a sole*, *the heat is from the sun*; *ab hoste interfectus est*, *he was killed by an enemy*;

that *from which anything is guarded*, with such verbs as *dēfendēre*, *tūērī*, etc., as: *urbem defendere ab hostibus*, *to defend the city against the enemy*;

that *with reference to which anything is* or *is done*, equivalent to *with respect to*, as: *imparāti sumus a militibus*, *as to soldiers we are not ready*.

Before vowels and *h*, it is *āb*; before consonants, *ā* or *āb*; *abs* before *tē*, but we say also *ā tē*, *never āb tē*.

**656.** *absquē*, *without*, is rarely used.

**657.** *dē* primarily means *down from* or *away from*, as: *de caelo, down from heaven; de vita decedēre, to depart from life.* It is also used in a *partitive* sense in such expressions as: *unus de plebe, one of the people.* When denoting *time*, it is *as early as, even at*, as: *de nocte, even at night; de mense Decembri, as early as December.* Most commonly, however, it is *concerning, about or on*, as: *de gestis Alexandri, on the exploits of Alexander; liber de amicitia, a book on friendship.* Sometimes it is equivalent to *sēcundūm, according to*, as: *de consilio meo, according to my advice;* and frequently it denotes the *manner of action*, as: *denūo (de novo), de intēgro, afresh; de improvīso, unexpectedly; de industriā, purposely; qua de causa, quibus de causis, for which reason or reasons.*

**658.** *cōrām*, *in the presence of, before*, as: *coram amico, in the presence of a friend.* When used as an adverb, *coram* means *personally*, as: *coram adesse, to be present in person.*

**659.** *cūm*, *with*, expresses *association or accompanying circumstances*, as: *cum aliquo ire, to go with some one; esse cum telo, to go armed; configēre cum hoste, to fight with the enemy.*

*cum* with the Ablative of a **Personal Pronoun** is *always* appended to it, as: *tecum loquitur, he talks with you;* and commonly also with the **Relative**: *quocum, quibuscum (likewise cum quo, cum quibus); quicum* is used for the Ablative of both numbers and all genders.

**660.** *ē, ex*, *out of, from*, denotes:

*the place*, answering to the question *whence?* as: *aliquem ex regno pellere, to drive some one out of the kingdom; e longinquo videre, to see from afar; ex equo pugnare, to fight on horseback;*

*the point of time from which*, as: *ex illo die, from that day;*

*the cause out of which* anything proceeds, as: *ex nihilo nihil fit, of nothing nothing comes; aeger ex vulnere, sick from a wound; ex quo, whence or for which reason.*

In a great many cases *ē (ex)* has the signification *in accordance with*, as: *ex ejus sententia, according to his opinion;* or it denotes the *manner of an action*, as: *ex animo laudare, to praise heartily; ex improvīso, unexpectedly.* In such phrases as: *unus e multis, one of many*, it is used in a *partitive* sense.

Mark the **Particular Phrases**:

*ex tua re, to your advantage; e republica, for the good of the state.*

Before consonants it is *ē*; before vowels and consonants, *ex*.

**661. prō** means:

*before or in front of, preceding in space, as: pro castris aciem instruere, to array the army for battle before the camp;*

*for = in defence of, in behalf of, as: pro patria mori, to die for one's country;*

*for = instead of, as: pro consule, in place of consul;*

*in accordance with or in proportion to, as: pro portione, in proportion; pro virili parte, to the best of one's ability.*

**662. prae** is *before = in front of*, only in combination with *agerē* and *ferrē*, as: *prae se ferre, to carry before one's self, i. e. to show*. Most commonly it means: *in comparison with, in contrast with, as: prae me beatus es, in comparison with me you are happy*; it is also frequently used in the sense of *on account of*, implying an obstacle, as: *prae lacrimis scribere non possum, I cannot write on account of tears*.

**663. tēnūs**, *as far as*, follows its noun, as: *Tauro tenus, as far as Taurus; hoc tenus, hitherto*.

**664. sīnē**, *without*, opposed to *cūm*, has a negative power, hence we say: *sine ulla spe, without any hope*.

[93. 94. 239. 240.]

**Prepositions construed with the Accusative & Ablative.**

**sūb, sūpēr, subtēr, ĩn.**

**665. sūb** and **ĩn**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion towards*, when by the **Ablative**, *rest in, a place*.

**666. sūb** with the **Accusative** means:

*under, close to, as: sub montem succedere, to come close to the hill;*

*about, shortly before, of time, as: sub noctem, towards night; sub lucem, near daylight;*

**667. sūb** with the **Ablative** is always:

*under, as: sub terra habitare, to live under ground; sub divo, in the open air; sub monte, at the foot of a hill.*

**668. sūpēr** has the **Ablative** only when used in the sense of **dē**, *concerning*, as: *hac super re, concerning this thing*. With the **Accusative** it is *over, above*, answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *super aliquem sedere, to sit above some one*.

**Particular Phrases:** *vulnus super vulnus, wound upon wound; super cenam, during dinner.*

**669.** *subtēr*, *beneath*, takes the **Accusative** answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *subter togam*, *under the toga*.

**670.** *In*, with the **Accusative** denotes *entrance* with regard to *place*, as: *in urbem venit*, *he came into town*; it also indicates the *object toward* which an action is directed, either with a friendly or hostile intention, as: *amor in patrem*, *love for one's father*; *oratio in Catilinam*, *a speech against Catiline*. With words denoting *time* it is equivalent to *for*, expressing a predetermination of that time, as: *in diem vivere*, *to live for the day*; *in perpetuum*, *forever*; *in dies*, *from day to day*.

Mark the **Adverbial Expressions**: *hunc in modum*, *in this way*; *mirum in modum*, *in a wonderful manner*; *in vicem*, *alternately* or *instead of*.

**671.** *In* with the **Ablative**, denotes *presence in place, time or circumstances*, as: *in urbe habito*, *I live in town*; *est mihi in animo*, *I have it in mind*; *in scribendo*, *while writing*. When a **Number or Quantity** is indicated, it is equivalent to *among*, as: *numerari in bonis civibus*, *to be counted among the good citizens*.

[95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

#### TIME.

**672.** *Time when* is expressed by the **Ablative** of words denoting time, such as:

<i>tempus</i> , <i>time</i>	<i>saeculum</i> , <i>a century</i>
<i>aetas</i> , <i>an age</i>	<i>ver</i> , <i>spring</i>
<i>punctum temporis</i> , <i>a moment</i>	<i>aestas</i> , <i>summer</i>
<i>hora</i> , <i>an hour</i>	<i>autumnus</i> , <i>autumn</i>
<i>die</i> , <i>a day</i>	<i>hiems</i> , <i>winter</i>
<i>mensis</i> , <i>a month</i>	<i>vesper</i> , <i>evening</i>
<i>annus</i> , <i>a year</i>	<i>nox</i> , <i>night</i>
<i>Hannibal's milites vere convenere</i>	<i>Hannibal's soldiers assembled in spring.</i>

**673.** Words not explicitly expressing time, such as: *bellum*, *pax*, *pueritia*, usually take *in* with the **Ablative**, but they are without *in*, if accompanied by an **Adjective or Genitive**. So we say:

<i>in bello</i> , <i>in war times</i>	<i>bello Persico</i> , <i>at the time of the Persian war</i>
<i>in pace</i> , <i>in time of peace</i>	<i>prima pueritia</i> , <i>in early boyhood</i>
<i>in pueritia</i> , <i>in boyhood</i>	<i>bello Antiocchi</i> , <i>during the war with Antiochus.</i>
<i>in adolescentia</i> , <i>in youth</i>	
<i>in senectute</i> , <i>in old age</i>	

**Particular Phrases.**

initio	} at the beginning	temporibus	} in the times of
principio		aetate	
adventu, at the arrival		ludis, during the games	
discessu, at the departure		bis die, twice a day	
in tempore, at the right time		hora nona, at 9 o'clock	

**674. Time how long is put in the Accusative.**

Appius caecus multos annos fuit, *Appius was blind many years.*

The Preposition **per** may be used to denote *from beginning to end*, as: est mecum per totum diem, *he is with me the livelong day.*

**Time how long since** may be expressed by an ordinal number in the Accusative, as:

Mithridates jam annum tertium et vicesimum regnat *Mithridates has reigned going on 23 years.*

**Time how long before the present moment** is expressed by **abhinc** with the Accusative, as: abhinc sex menses, *six months ago.*

**675. Distance of time how long before or after is expressed by the Ablative with antē or pōst following:**

paucis diēbus ante, *a few days before*  
 paucis diēbus post, *a few days afterward.*

The **Accusative** can also be employed, but then the *Preposition* precedes, thus: ante, post paucos dies.

**Either Case** and the **cardinal** as well as the **ordinal** numbers may be used, when the *Preposition* is placed **between** the Numeral and the Substantive. Hence the English phrase *three years after* may be expressed as follows:

tribus annis post	post tres annos
tertio anno post	post tertium annum
tribus post annis	tres post annos
tertio post anno	tertium post annum

**quā**m and a verb may be added to **antē** and **pōst** in all the forms above specified, as:

tribus annis postquam venērat	} <i>three years after he had come.</i>
post tres annos quam venērat	
tertio anno postquam venērat	
post annum tertium quam venērat	

**676.** Time *within which* is expressed by the **Ablative** or by *intrā* with the **Accusative**:

Agamemnon vix decem annis *Agamemnon in ten years*  
(intra decem annos) unam *hardly took one city.*  
cepit urbem

**677.** Time *for how long* is expressed by *in* with the **Accusative**, as:

Phaëton currum paternum *in Phaëton asked his father's char-*  
diem rogāvit *riot for a day.*

**678.** The **Question** *how old?* is answered in different ways:

By **nātūs** (*born*) with the **Accusative**, as: puer decem annos natus est, *the boy is ten years old*;

By the **Genitive of Quality**: Hamilcar secum duxit filium Hannibālem annōrum novem, *Hamilcar took with him his son Hannibal 9 years of age*;

By *ägērē*, *to pass*, with **annūs** and an ordinal number, as: quartum annum ago et octogesimū, *I am 33 years old.*

*Older* and *younger* are expressed by **mājōr** and **mīnōr** with following **Ablative**, as:

māior quinque et triginta annis, *older than 35 years.* [243. 244.]

#### SPACE.

**679.** **Extent of Space** is put in the **Accusative**, as:

fossa pedes trecentos longa est, *the ditch is 300 feet long, 6 feet*  
sex pedes alta *deep.*

**680.** **Measures of length, depth, etc.**, are often expressed by the **Genitive of Quality**, as:

vallum pedum duodēcim fieri *he ordered a rampart to be*  
jussit *made of 12 feet (in height).*

**681.** **Distance** *how far* is put in the **Accusative** or **Ablative**, as:

a recta conscientia transversum *we ought not to swerve a nail's*  
unguem non oportet discedere *breadth from a right con-*  
*science*

copiae Ariovisti a Romānis mi- *the troops of Ariovistus were*  
libus quattuor et viginti afue- *twenty four miles from the*  
runt *Romans.* [241. 242.]

PLACE.

**682.** To express relations of **Place**, *Prepositions* are necessary, viz.:

**īn** with the **Ablative** to denote the place *where*, as: in urbe, *in town*;

**īn** or **ād** with the **Accusative** to denote the place *to which*, as: in Eurōpam, *to Europe*; ad urbem, *to town*;

**ex** with the **Ablative** to denote the place *from which*, as: ex Britanniā, *from Great Britain*.

**683.** But the *Prepositions* are not used with the names of **Towns** and **small Islands**.

In answer to the question *whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the **Accusative Case**, as: Romam venit, *he came to Rome*.

In answer to the question *whence?* the names of towns and small islands are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Roma cessit, *he retired from Rome*.

In answer to the question *where?* the names of towns and small islands, if of the first or second declension and in the singular, are put in the **Genitive Case**, as: Romae mansit, *he remained at Rome*. But if the names are of the plural number or belong to the third declension, they are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Babylōne mortuus est, *he died at Babylon*. (For the place *where* there was formerly a special Case, the **Locative**, ending in **ī** which is preserved in Carthaginī, *at Carthage*; ruri, *in the country*, etc.)

**684.** **urbs** or **oppīdum** *without an Attribute* is placed **before** the proper name, and the preposition **īn** or **ex** is **always** employed, as:

in urbem Cirtam

*to the city of Cirta*

ex oppīdo Gergovīa

*from the town of Gergovia*

in urbe Roma

*in the city of Rome*.

**685.** **urbs** or **oppīdum** *with an Attribute* is placed **after** the proper name, **commonly** with **īn** or **ex**. But in answer to the question *where?* the **Ablative** may be used with or without **īn**, even though the proper name be in the **Genitive**.

Aulīde, ex oppīdo Boeotiāe

*from Aulis, a town of Boeotia*

Thalam, in oppīdum magnum

*to Thala, a great town*

Albae, (in) urbe munita

*at Alba, a fortified city.*

**686.** The following words are used like names of towns, without a preposition:

rūs, into the country	dōmūm, home	
rūrē, from the country	dōmō, from home	hūmō, from the ground
rūrī, in the country	dōmī, at home	hūmī, on the ground
	dōmī mīlītīaequē, at home and in the field	
	bellī dōmīquē, in war and in peace	
	fōrās, to the doors; fōrīs, out-of-doors, abroad.	

A **Genitive** or **Possessive** may be used with **dōmūs** in this construction, but when it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally employed, as:

domi meae, at my house; domum Caesāris, to Caesar's house;  
in domum vetērem e nova, to the old house from the new.

**687.** The **Ablative** is used without a preposition to denote the place *where*:

With nouns when qualified by the Adjective **tōtūs**, or **cunctūs**:  
Demosthēnes disertissimus tota Graecia fuit  
Demosthenes was the most eloquent man in all Greece;

With **lōcō**, **lōcīs** when qualified by Adjectives:  
hoc loco, multis locis in this place, in many places.

**688.** The *way by which* is put in the **Ablative**:  
terra marique by sea and by land  
Appia via profectus est he set out by the Appian way.

**689.** The **Preposition In** is generally joined with the **Ablative** after *Verbs of Placing*, as:

pōnērē, to place	stātūrērē	} to set	dēmergērē, to plunge
collōcārē, to put	constituērē		imprimērē, to stamp
considērē, to settle	dēfigērē, to plant		inscribērē, to write upon
Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit	Plato has put reason in the head		
Lucretia cultrum in corde defigit	Lucretia plants a knife in her heart.		

**690.** Again, after *Verbs of Assembling* and kindred significations the **Preposition In** is followed by the **Accusative**. Such are:  
advēnērē, to arrive    congrēgārī, to assemble    cōgērē, to assemble  
convēnīre, to meet    nuntiārē, to bring word  
conjurāti in curiam convenērunt the conspirators met in the senate house.



## Special Uses of Substantives.

**691.** In place of the **Abstract** expressions: in pueritiā, in adulescentiā, in senectūte, in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the Latin employs the **Concretes** pūēr, ādūlescens, sēnex; ab infante, a parvūlo, *from childhood*.

**692.** When official titles are used to indicate time, the **concrete** nouns consūl, praetōr, &c., are used instead of consūlātūs, praetūrā, &c. as: L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō consulībus, *in the consulship of L. Piso and A. Gabinius*.

**693.** Again, **Abstract** nouns are sometimes used instead of **Concretes**, as: nobilitās for nobiles, *noblemen*  
 posteritas “ postēri, *descendants*  
 vicinītas “ vicīni, *neighbors*.

**694.** In Latin, **Abstract** nouns when referring to several objects or denoting repetition at different times admit of *plural use*, as:  
 adventūs imperatōrum, *the arrival of the generals*;  
 interītūs exercitiūm, *the destruction of the armies*.

**695.** Some **Abstract** nouns take such a modified sense as to admit of *plural use*, as: fortitudīnes, *gallant actions*; irae, *quarrels*.

**696.** Symmetrical parts of the human body are usually in the plural, as: cervīces, *the neck*; pectōra, *the breast*; also words denoting phenomena of nature, as: nives, *snow*; grandīnes, *hail*; pluvīae, *rain*.

**697.** Other **Plural** expressions to be noted are:

ligna, ( <i>logs of</i> ) wood	carnes, <i>pieces of meat</i>
aera, <i>articles of bronze</i>	vina, <i>kinds of wine</i> .

**698.** The Singular, in a **Collective** sense, is sometimes used for the plural, as:

pedes, <i>infantry</i>	faba, <i>beans</i>
miles, <i>the soldiery</i>	porcus, <i>pork</i>
eques, <i>cavalry</i>	gallīna, <i>fowl</i>
hostis, <i>the enemy</i>	vestis, <i>clothing</i> .

**699.** A **Proper** name may be applied to two or more members of the same family, or to persons of the same character, and so becomes strictly **common** as: Horatīi, *the Horatii*; Nerōnes, *Neros (tyrants)*.

**700.** The Substantive **nēmō** is often used with other Substantives so as to become equivalent to the Adjective **nullūs**, as: nēmo civis, *no citizen*. It wants the **genitive** and **ablative**. The oblique cases of **nīhīl** are supplied by the respective cases of **nulla res**.

## Special Uses of Adjectives.

**701.** Adjectives are often used as **Substantives**. In the **Plural** masculine adjectives denote *persons*, neuter adjectives *things*.

paupères, *the poor*

divītes, *the rich*

omnes, *all men*

humāna, *human affairs*

omnīa, *all things*

vēra, *truth*.

**702.** The **Neuter Singular** may denote either a *single object* or a *quality*, as:

honestum, *an honorable act*

malum, *an evil*

bonum, *a good*

pulchrum, *beauty*

**703.** Adjectives are often used in Latin where the English has the *Possessive*, or a *noun with a preposition*, as:

domus regīa, *a king's palace*

pugna Cannensis, *the fight at Cannae*

iter campestre, *a journey across country*

aliēna domus, *another man's house*

Miltiādes Atheniensis, *Miltiades of Athens*.

**704.** The *first part, last part, middle part* of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the Adjectives *primūs, mēdiūs, ultimūs, infimūs, imūs, summūs, rēliquūs*, as: *mediā nox, the middle of the night; summa arbor, the top of the tree; suprēmi montes, the summits of the mountains*.

**705.** The **Comparative** sometimes has the force of *too, unusually, somewhat*, and the **Superlative** of *very*, as: *brevior, rather short; audācior, too bold; amīcūs carissimūs, a very dear friend; Cato, homo doctissimūs, Cato, a very learned man*.

**706.** The force of the **Comparative** is increased by *multō, much, far; āliquantō, some more, considerably; etīām, even, still*, as: *multo melior, much better; etīam doctior, still more learned*.

**707.** The **Superlative** is strengthened by *longē, by far; multō, much; vėl, even; unus omnīum, one above all others; quām, quantūs potuit, as...as possible*; as: *multo maxīma pars, by far the largest part; quam maxīmae copīae, forces as large as possible; sophistes vel maxīmus, the very greatest sophist*.

**708.** When two qualities of the *same* object are compared, both adjectives (or adverbs) are in the **Comparative**, as: *est doctior quam sapientior, he is more learned than wise*. Where *māgis quām* is used, both Adjectives are in the **Positive**: *amicus tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens, your friend is eloquent rather than wise*.

**709.** The **Comparative** is to be used in reference to *only two* objects; the **Superlative** when comparing *more than two* objects, as: *uter fratrum natu major est? Which of the two brothers is the older? Quaeritur ex duobus uter dignior, ex pluribus quis dignissimus; the question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more, which is the worthiest.*

### Special Uses of Pronouns.

**710.** **Personal** and **Possessive** Pronouns of the *First* and *Second* Persons are not expressed in Latin except for distinction or emphasis, as: *amamus parentes, we love our parents.*

**711.** As a rule, the **Reflexive Pronoun** *sui, sibi, se* and its Possessive *suis*, are used when reference is made to the **Subject** of the sentence; as: *Caesar se ad suos recepit, Caesar betook himself to his men.*

The **Possessive** *suis* may also be used with reference to any noun in the same sentence on which *emphasis* is thrown, as:

Socrātem cives <b>sui</b> interfecerunt	<i>Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-citizens</i>
puer columbam cepit in nido <b>suo</b>	<i>the boy caught the dove in its nest.</i>

On the other hand, the **Determinatives** *ejus, eorum, earum* are used as **Possessives** of the third person, when *no* emphasis appears, or when reference is made to a noun in another sentence, as:

Deum agnoscis ex operibus <b>ejus</b>	<i>you recognize God by his works</i>
multi cives interfecti, <b>eorum-</b>	<i>many citizens were slain, and</i>
que bona publicata sunt	<i>their property confiscated.</i>

To express reciprocal action **inter se** is regularly used, as: *amant inter se, they love one another.*

**712.** *hic, this*, refers to that which is nearer the speaker (**Demonstrative** of the **First Person**); *istē, that (of yours)* to the person addressed (**Demonstrative** of the **Second Person**); *illē, that*, to that which is remote (**Demonstrative** of the **Third Person**).

*hic* very frequently means *that which is about to be mentioned*, as: *his condicionibus, on the following terms;*

*istē* especially refers to *one's opponent* (in court, etc.) and frequently implies contempt, as: *Mars alter, ut isti volunt, a second Mars, as those fellows say;*

*illē* is often used of *that which is well known, notorious*, as: *praeclārum illud Solōnis, that famous saying of Solon.* It is also used in the sense of *the following.*

**713.** Often **hīc** and **illē** are to be rendered *the latter* and *the former* (**hīc**, the one last mentioned, the *nearer*; **illē**, the one mentioned earlier, the *remoter*), thus:

<p>melius de quibusdam acerbi inimici merentur quam ii amici, qui suaves videntur; <b>illi</b> saepe verum dicunt, <b>hi</b> nunquam.</p>	<p><i>bitter enemies deserve better of some people than those friends who seem obliging; the former often tell the truth, the latter never.</i></p>
---	---

But the order is often reversed so that **hīc** refers to the object first mentioned (usually the more important), and **illē** to the one mentioned last.

<p>melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria; <b>haec</b> in tua, <b>illa</b> in deorum manu est</p>	<p><i>better is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in your hands, the latter in the hands of the gods.</i></p>
---	---

**714.** **is**, *that*, is either the regular *Antecedent* of the *Relative* or refers to an *Object just mentioned*.

<p>is sapiens est, qui se ad casus accommodet omnes</p>	<p><i>he is a wise man who accommodates himself to all circumstances</i></p>
---	--

<p>mihi obviam venit tuus puer; is mihi litteras abs te reddidit</p>	<p><i>I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.</i></p>
--	--

**715.** When a quality is ascribed with emphasis to an object already named, **is** with a copulative or adversative particle is used, thus:

et is, atque is, isque, *and he too, and that too*  
 neque is, et is non, *and he not, and that not*

<p>unam rem explicabo, eamque maximam</p>	<p><i>one point I shall explain, and that, too, a very important one.</i></p>
---	---

**716.** No demonstrative pronoun is employed in Latin in phrases where *that* or *those* in English is used in place of a noun which would have to be repeated:

<p>Terentii fabulis plus delector quam Plauti</p>	<p><i>I find more delight in the plays of Terence than in those of Plautus.</i></p>
---	---

**717.** **idem** is often equivalent to an adverb or an adverbial phrase (*also, likewise, yet, at the same time*), as: Quidquid honestum est, idem est utile. *Whatever is honorable is at the same time useful.*

**718.** *ipsē, self*, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis, often expressed in English by *just, mere, very*, as: *triginta erant dies ipsi, it was just 30 days.*

When added to any reflexive pronoun, *ipsē* agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the sentence, according as either is emphatic; as:

*piger ipse sibi obstat, the lazy man stands in his own way;*  
*nosce te ipsum! know thyself!*

**719.** For the agreement of **Relatives** see **551**, foll.

The **Antecedent**, and the Adjective or Apposition of the antecedent are often incorporated into the Relative clause, as: *in quem primum egressi sunt locum Troja vocatur; the first place they landed at was called Troy.*

**720.** The **Interrogative** *quīs?* is used substantively and adjectively; *qui?* mostly adjectively. Thus we say: *quis rex? which king?* inquiring for the *individual*; but *qui homo? what man?* inquiring for the *character*.

**721.** The **Indefinite Pronouns** are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant, without indicating *what one*.

**722.** *āliquis* means *some one or other*, as: *fecit hoc aliquis tui similis, some one or other like you did this*; *aliquid consuetudinī dandum est, something must be allowed to custom.*

**723.** *quīs* (fainter than *aliquis*) is used chiefly after **Relatives** and the following **Conjunctions**:

*sī, if; nīsī, if not; nē, lest; nūm, whether; cūm, when.*

*āliquis* after *sī* and the rest is *emphatic*.

*ne quid nimis! nothing in excess!*

*ne qua significatio fiat, that no sign may be made.*

**724.** *quisquā* (subst.) and *ullūs* (adj.) mean *any one at all*, and are chiefly used in negative, interrogative, and conditional sentences, also after *sīnē*, without; *vix, scarcely, quā*, than.

<i>neque ex castris Catilinae quisquam omnium discesserat</i>	<i>nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline</i>
<i>legati sine ulla spe pacis domum redierunt</i>	<i>the ambassadors returned home without any hope of peace</i>
<i>legati non sine aliqua spe pacis domum redierunt</i>	<i>the ambassadors returned home, not without some hope of peace.</i>

**725.** *quīdām*, means *one, a, a certain one*; in the plural it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, as: *quidam rhetor antiquus, a certain ancient rhetorician*; *certi quidam homīnes, some reliable persons*.

**726.** *ūnusquisquē* means *every single one*; *quīvīs & quīlibēt*, *any one you like*; *quisquē*, *each one*; *omnēs*, *all together*.

**727.** The Distributive *quisquē* is used:

After the reflexive pronoun, *sūī, sībī, sē*, and its possessive *sūūs*, as: *sua cuique voluptas, each man has his hobby*;

With *Superlatives* and *Ordinals*, as: *optimum quidque rarissimum est, the best is the rarest, or every good thing is rare, or the better a thing, the rarer it is*; *quinto quoque anno, every fifth year*.

**728.** *āliūs* is simply *another*; *altēr*, is *the other of two, or the second*; *cētēri*, *all the rest or others*.

**729.** The expressions *āliūs . . āliūs, altēr . . altēr* may be used in a *reciprocal* sense: *puēri alter alterum amant, the boys love each other*. *āliūs* repeated in different propositions is translated *one — another*; *aliud agitur, aliud simulatur, one thing is done, another pretended*. *āliī . . āliī*, is *some . . others*; *altēri . . altēri*, *one party . . another party*. *āliūs* with another case of the same word may be translated by two separate propositions commencing with *one—another* respectively; as: *aliud aliī natūra iter ostendit, nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

[245. 246.]

## SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

### Use of Tenses.

**730.** There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

#### Of Continued Action.

the **Present**, as: *scribō, I am writing*;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: *scribēbām, I was writing*;

the **Future**, as: *scribām, I shall write*.

#### Of Completed Action:

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: *scripsī, I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: *scripsērām, I had written*;

the **Future Perfect**, as: *scripsērō, I shall have written*.

**731.** The **Present** is used of what is going on now, at the present time, and of what is true at all times, as:

loquēris adhuc, cum omnes ta-	<i>you are still speaking while all</i>
cent	<i>are silent</i>
fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>fortune helps the brave.</i>

**732.** The **Present** is often substituted for the *Historical Perfect* in lively narration, as:

triginta rectōres reipublicae	<i>30 rulers of the Athenian com-</i>
Atheniensis constituuntur, qui	<i>monwealth are appointed, who</i>
fiunt tyranni	<i>become tyrants.</i>

**733.** The **Present** is used in Latin to express a past action or state which is continued so as to be present also, especially with *jām*, *now*; *jām dīū*, *now for a long time*; *jām pridēm*, *now long since*, as:

tot annos bella gero	<i>for so many years I have waged</i>
	<i>and am still waging war.</i>

**734.** The **Present** is regularly used with *dūm*, *while*, though the time referred to is past, as:

haec dum aguntur, Caesāri nun-	<i>while this is going on, word</i>
tiātum est	<i>was brought to Caesar.</i>

**735.** The **Imperfect** denotes an action continuing in the past, but not then accomplished. It is employed to describe manners, customs and situations.

scribēbam epistūlam, cum amī-	<i>I was writing a letter when my</i>
cus adesset	<i>friend came</i>
ante oppidum planitiēs patēbat	<i>before the town extended a plain</i>
Pausaniās epulabātur more Per-	<i>Pausanias was wont to banquet</i>
sārum	<i>in the Persian style.</i>

**736.** The **Future** represents an action that is yet to come. In subordinate clauses it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English:

sanabimur, si volēmus	<i>we shall be healed if we wish.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------------------------

The **Future** sometimes has the force of an *Imperative*:

in sudōre vultus tui comēdes pa-	<i>in the sweat of thy face thou</i>
nem tuum	<i>shalt eat thy bread.</i>

**737.** The **Perfect** has two distinct uses:

I. As the **Perfect Definite** it denotes an action as now completed, and is rendered by the English Perfect with *have*.

<p>triste est nomen carendi, quia subjicitur haec vis: habuit, non habet</p>	<p><i>sad is the phrase "do without" because this meaning is at- tributed to it: he has had, he has no longer.</i></p>
--	--

II. As the **Historical Perfect** it denotes an action as completed in past time, but leaves it, in other respects, wholly indeterminate.

<p>Caesar armis rem gerere con- stituit, exercitum finibus Ita- liae admovit, Rubiconem trans- iit, Romam et aerarium occu- pavit, Pompejum cedentem persecutus est, eumque in campis Pharsalicis devicit.</p>	<p><i>Caesar resolved to use armed force; he advanced with his army to the frontiers of Italy, passed the Rubicon, took pos- session of Rome and the treasury, pursued Pompey and defeated him in the plain of Pharsalus</i></p>
--	--

The following **Conjunctions**:

<p>postquam } posteaquam } <i>after</i></p>	<p>ubi } ubi primum } <i>as soon as</i></p>
<p>ut } ut primum } <i>as soon as</i></p>	<p>simulac } simulatque } <i>as soon as</i></p>

are usually followed by the **Historical Perfect**:

<p>milites postquam victoriam adepti sunt, nihil reliqui vic- tis fecere</p>	<p><i>when the soldiers had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.</i></p>
--	---

**738.** The **Pluperfect** is used of an action that was completed before another was begun; as:

<p>consul copias, quas pro castris collocaverat, reduxit</p>	<p><i>the consul led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.</i></p>
--	--

**739.** The **Future Perfect** denotes an action as completed in the future; it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, as:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*



**740.** In the statement of an action repeated before another, with such particles as: *cūm, ūbī, whenever; sīmūlāc, as soon as; sī, when;* and Relatives, as: *quōtīens, as often as*, the **Perfect** and **Pluperfect Indicative** are used — the Perfect referring to *Present Time*, the Pluperfect to *Past*.

*quōtīens cecīdit, surgit, as often as he falls, he rises,*  
*quōtīens cecidērat, surgēbat, as often as he fell, he rose.*

In like manner, in letters the **Perfect**, or **Imperfect** may be used for the *present* and the **Pluperfect** for *past tenses*, as in the phrase: *nihil erat quod scribērem, I have nothing to write.*

**741.** The **Periphrastic Conjugations** are formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the **Future Participle (Active)**, and with the **Gerundive (Passive)**.

The **Active Periphrastic Conjugation** denotes either intention or being on the point of doing something, as:

*scriptūrūs sūm, I purpose to write, or am about to write.*

The **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** expresses necessity or propriety, as:

*pārentēs āmandī sunt, parents must be loved, deserve or ought to be loved.*

The **Person by whom** is put in the **Dative**, as:

*pārentēs libērīs āmandī sunt, parents ought to be loved by their children.*

*bellum scriptūrus sum, quod populus Romānus cum Jugurtha gessit* *I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.*

[247. 248.]

## Sequence of Tenses.

**742.** When two sentences are so related to each other, that the one defines and explains the other, or that the one is dependent on the other, they are connected in the way of **Subordination**, as:

*crepant aedificīa, priusquam cadant, houses creak before they fall;*  
*crepant aedificīa* is the **Principal Clause**,  
*priusquam cadant* is the **Dependent Clause**.

The **Subjunctive** is largely used in **Subordinate Sentences**, and will be treated at length in that connection.

**743.** In those **Dependent Clauses** which require the **Subjunctive** the choice of the tenses of the *Dependent Clause* is determined by the tense of the *Principal Clause* according to the following

GENERAL RULES.

I. **Tenses**, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes:

**Principal**, including the *Present*, both *Futures* and the *Perfect Definite*;

**Historical**, including the *Imperfect*, the *Historical Perfect* and the *Pluperfect*.

II. **Principal Tenses** are followed by the *Present Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

III. **Historical Tenses** are followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

	Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.
Present.	cognosco, <i>I am finding out</i>	quid faciās, <i>what you are doing</i> quid fecēris, <i>what you have done, what you have been doing, what you did</i>
Future.	cognoscam, <i>I shall find out</i>	
Fut. Perf.	cognovēro, <i>I shall have found out (shall know)</i>	
Perf. Defin.	cognōvi, <i>I have found out (I know)</i>	
Imperf.	cognoscēbam, <i>I was finding out</i>	quid facēres, <i>what you were doing</i> quid fecisses, <i>what you had done, had been doing</i> quid facērent hostes, <i>what the enemy was doing</i> quid fecissent hostes, <i>what the enemy had done.</i>
Pluperf.	cognovēram, <i>I had found out (I knew)</i>	
Hist. Perf.	Caesar cognōvit, <i>Caesar found out</i>	

**744.** The **Perfect Definite**, though properly a *Principal* tense, is more commonly treated as a *Historical* tense, and admits after it the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*:  
oblītus es, quod dixērim, *you have forgotten what I said*;  
interrogāvi eum, quid facēret, *I have asked him what he was doing*;  
feci hoc, ut intellegēres, *I have done this that you might see.*

**745.** In **Sentences of Result**, with *ūt*, *quī*, *quīn*, the verb of the **Dependent Clause** has the same tense as it would have if the clause were a **Principal** one.

Verres Siciliā ita perdidit, ut ea restitūi in antiquum sta- tum non possit	<i>Verres so ruined Sicily, that she can not be restored to her ancient condition.</i>
---	--

**746.** The **Future Tenses** are wanting in the *Subjunctive*. After a **Future** or **Future Perfect**, their place is supplied by the **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**; after the other tenses by the **Active Periphrastic Subjunctive**, **Present** or **Imperfect**; as:

*cognoscam, quid faciās, I shall find out what you will be doing;*  
*cognovĕro, quid fecĕris, I shall have found out what you have done;*  
*cognosco, quid factūrus sis, I am finding out what you will do;*  
*cognovĕram, quid factūrus esses, I had found out what you would do.*  
[249. 250.]

### Use of the Indicative.

**747.** The **Indicative** is the mood of *Direct Assertions* or *Questions*, as:

necessitas non habet legem	<i>necessity recognizes no law</i>
quare vitia sua nemo confitetur?	<i>why will no man confess his</i>
quia etiam nunc in illis est	<i>faults? because he continues</i>
	<i>to indulge in them.</i>

The **Indicative** is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Subjunctive*, chiefly in expressions denoting the *propriety, advantage* or *necessity* of an action not performed, such as:

longum est, <i>it would be tedious</i>	possum	} <i>I might, I could</i>
utilius fuit, <i>it would have been better</i>	poteram	
pār est, <i>it would be fair</i>	debĕo	} <i>I ought or I should</i>
	debĕbam	

*perturbationes animōrum poteram appellāre morbos, sed non conveniet ad omnia* *I might call the disturbances of the mind "diseases", but that would not suit all the cases.*

The **Indicative** of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used, as: *haec condicio non accipienda fuit; these terms ought not to have been accepted.*

**748.** The **Indicative** is used after **General Relatives**, such as:

quisquīs, *no matter who*; quotquōt, *no matter how many*, and all forms in -cunquē, *-ever*, also after sīvē..sīvē, *whether..or*, where in English the **Potential** may be used, as:

quidquid id est, timēo Danāos *whatever it may be, I fear the*  
 et dona ferentes *Danai, even when they bring*  
*presents.*

### Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

**749.** The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances.

**750.** The **Present and Perfect Subjunctive** are used to denote an action as *possible* (**Potential Subjunctive**); also the *second person* of the **Imperfect Subjunctive** in the same manner, but only in the expressions:

credēres, putāres, *you would, might have thought*  
 vidēres, cernēres, *you would, might have seen.*

hic quaerat quispiam *here some one may ask*  
 dixērit quis *some one may say.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nōn**.

**751.** The **Subjunctive** is used to denote a *wish*—the **Present and Perfect** a wish conceived as possible; the **Imperfect and Pluperfect** an unaccomplished one (**Optative Subjunctive**). When so used, the **Present and Perfect** are commonly, and the **Imperfect and Pluperfect** regularly preceded by **ūtīnām**, *O that, I wish that, would that.*

stet haec urbs *may this city continue to stand*  
 falsus utīnam vates sim *I wish I may be a false prophet*  
 utīnam me mortuum vidisses *would you had seen me dead.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

**752.** The **Subjunctive** is used to express an *exhortation* or a *command* (**Hortatory or Imperative Subjunctive**).

**Pres. First Pers.** amēmus patriam, *let us love our country*  
 “ **Second Pers.** corpōris robōre utāre, *use your bodily strength*  
 “ **Third Pers.** amet, *let him love*

**Perf. Second Pers.** } ne transiēris Iherum, *do not cross the Ebro*  
 (negative only) } hoc ne fecēris, *thou shalt not do that.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

**753.** The **Subjunctive** is used in the Present and Perfect to express a *concession* (**Concessive Subjunctive**), as:

vendat aedes vir bonus, *suppose an honest man is selling a house;*  
sit fur, *granted that he be a thief.*

The regular negative here is **nē**.

**754.** The **Subjunctive** is used in *doubtful questions* (**Dubitative Subjunctive**), as:

quid hoc homīne faciās? *what are you to do with this man?*  
quid agērem? *what was I to do?*

The regular negative here is **nōn**.

[251. 252.]

### Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive.

**755.** Dependent **Subjunctive** Clauses may be classified as follows:

<b>Conjunctive Clauses</b>	introduced by	<i>Conjunctions,</i>
<b>Relative Clauses</b>	“	“ <i>Relatives,</i>
<b>Indirect Questions</b>	“	“ <i>Interrogative Words.</i>

### Consecutive and Final Conjunctions.

**756.** *ūt, that,* governs the **Subjunctive**:

I. When it means *that, in order that* (often to be translated by the Infinitive with *to, in order to*) to express **Purpose**; its Negative is **nē, that not, lest**.

esse oportet, ut vivas, non vi-	<i>you must eat to live, not live</i>
vēre, ut edas	<i>to eat</i>
cura, ne quid ei desit	<i>take care that nothing be want-</i>
	<i>ing to him.</i>

II. When it means *so that* (often rendered by *to, so as to*) to express a **Result**. Its Negative is **ūt nōn, so that not**.

tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam	<i>so great is the power of upright-</i>
in hoste etiā diligāmus	<i>ness that we love it even in</i>
	<i>an enemy</i>

ita vixi, ut non frustra me na-	<i>I have so lived that I do not</i>
tum esse existimem	<i>think I was born in vain.</i>

III. When it means *granted that* to express a **Concession**; its Negative is **nē**.

ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas  ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est	<i>granted that strength be wanting, yet the good will is to be praised</i>  <i>granted that pain is not the greatest evil, an evil it certainly is.</i>
--	--

**757.** **nēvē**, and *not, nor*, is used as *Continuative* after **nē**, as:  
**Thrasylbulus legem tulit, ne quis ante actarum rerum accusaretur neve multaretur** *Thrasylbulus proposed a law that no one should be accused of or punished for past offences.*

**758.** The most general way of expressing **Purpose** is by **ūt** (negatively **nē**) as: *esse oportet, ut vivas, non vivere, ut edas; you must eat to live, not live to eat* This is the regular construction with verbs of *Willing* and *Wishing*, of *Warning* and *Beseeking*, of *Urging* and *Demanding*, of *Resolving* and *Endeavoring*, of *Forcing* and *Permitting*; such as:

consūlo, curo, prospiciō, providēo, vidēo;  
 contendo, labōro, nitor, opēram do, id ago, id specto, nihil anti-  
 quū habēo, quam;  
 opto, postūlo, flagīto, oro, rogo, peto, precor, obsēcro;  
 mando, edīco, impēro, praecipīo;  
 impello, incīto, movēo, addūco;  
 hortor, monēo, suadēo, persuadēo;  
 concēdo, permitto;  
 faciō, perficiō, adipiscor, assēquor, consēquor, impētro.

volo, ut mihi respondēas, oro et hortor te, ut in munere diligentissimus sis ne nocēas, dum vis prodesse vidēto	<i>I wish you to answer me</i> <i>I entreat and admonish you to be very careful in your office</i> <i>see to it that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.</i>
---	--

**759.** A clause of **Result** introduced by **ūt**, so that (negatively **ūt nōn**) is used:

After such words as *tām, tālis, tantus, itā, sic, adēo*;

After verbs denoting *it happens, it remains, it follows*, and the like; (*accidit, contingit, evenit, sequitur, restat, &c.*)

After *quām* with a *Comparative*:

Atticus ta vixit, ut Atheniensibus carissimus esset	<i>Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians</i>
accidit, ut plena esset luna	<i>it chanced to be full moon</i>
urbs munitior erat, quam ut primo impetu capi posset	<i>the town was too strong to be taken in the first attack.</i>

**760.** The phrase tantum abest, ut. . . ut; *it is so far* (from being the case) deserves special notice:

tantum abest ab eo, ut malum sit mors, ut verer, ne homini sit nihil bonum aliud	<i>so far is death from being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.</i>
--	--

**761.** After metuo, timeo, verer, I fear, metus est, periculum est, *there is fear, danger,* ne must be rendered by *that or lest,* and ut by *that not.* as:

Milo metuēbat, ne a servis indicaretur	<i>Milo feared that he would be betrayed by his servants</i>
timeo, ut sustineas labores	<i>I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.</i>

**762.** The prefix **ali-** in aliquis and similar Compounds is rejected after **Relatives** and the following **Conjunctions**:

sī, *if*; nīsī, *if not*; nē, *lest*; nūm, *whether*; cūm, *when*.

Hence we say in *Final Clauses*:

nē quis, <i>that no one</i>	nē quandō, <i>that never</i>
nē quid, <i>that nothing</i>	nē quisquā, <i>that no one at all</i>
nēcūbī, <i>that nowhere</i>	nē quidquā, <i>that nothing at all.</i>

[253. 254.]

**763.** The Ablative quō (= ut eō, *that thereby*), in order that, so that, with the **Subjunctive** is used as a **Conjunction** in clauses of **Purpose**, especially with **Comparatives**, as:

ager aratur, quo meliores fructus edere possit	<i>the field is plowed that it may yield better fruit.</i>
--	--

**764.** quōmīnūs (= ut eō mīnūs, *that thereby the less*), *that not*, with the **Subjunctive** is used with verbs of **Hindering**, such as:

impēdirē, <i>to hinder</i>	obstārē, <i>to be in the way</i>
dētērērē, <i>to frighten off</i>	obstērērē, <i>to oppose</i>
prōhibērē, <i>to keep from</i>	rēcūsārē, <i>to refuse</i>

mors non deterret sapientem,	<i>death does not deter a wise man</i>
quomīnus in omne tempus rei	<i>from consulting the interest</i>
publicae consūlat	<i>of the state the whole time.</i>
aetas non impēdit, quomīnus	<i>age does not hinder our retain-</i>
agri colendi studia teneāmus	<i>ing interest in agriculture.</i>

Instead of **quomīnūs**, we may use **nē**, and when the principal clause is *negative*, **quīn**:

Regūlus ne sententiā dicēret	<i>Regulus refused to pronounce</i>
recusāvit	<i>an opinion</i>

**765.** **quīn** (= **quī**, *how*, and **nē**, *not*), *that not*, with the **Subjunctive** is used only after *negative* clauses or such questions as expect a negative answer. It is equivalent

to **quī nōn**, **quōd nōn**, *but*, as:

nemo est, <b>quīn</b> hoc vidēat	<i>there is no one but sees this;</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

to **ūt nōn**, *but, as not*, as:

nemo est tam fortis, <b>quīn</b> rei	<i>no one is so brave as not to be</i>
novitāte perturbētur	<i>confounded by the newness</i>
	<i>of a thing.</i>

**766.** **quīn** is used in the sense of *that not* or *that* after **Negative Expressions** implying *doubt*, *omission* and the like; such are:

non dubīto, *I do not doubt*

non est dubīum, *there is no doubt*

quis dubītet? *who can doubt?*

non multum abest, *there is not much wanting*

nihil abest, *there is nothing wanting*

nihil praetermitto	} <i>I omit nothing</i>
nihil intermitto	

temperāre mihi non possum, *I cannot restrain myself*

vix me continēo, *I hardly refrain from*

retinēri non possum, *I cannot be restrained*

facērē non possum quin, *I cannot help*

fīeri non potest quin, *it cannot happen but that*

quis dubītet, quin in virtūte di-	<i>who can doubt that wealth con-</i>
vitīae sint?	<i>sists in virtue?</i>

non multum afūit, quin interficē-	<i>I was not far from being</i>
rer	<i>killed.</i>



## Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions.

**767. Concessive Conjunctions** express a *Concession*, with the general signification *although, granting that*.

These are: *etsī, ētīamsī, tāmetsī, quamquām*, *although*  
*quamvis (quantumvis)*, *however much, however*  
*licēt, ūt, cūm*, *though, suppose, whereas*.

**768.** Of these, *licēt* (*properly a verb*) exclusively, and *quamvis* usually, take the **Present or Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

<i>licet superbus ambūles pecuniā,</i>	<i>although you may strut about</i>
<i>fortūna non mutat genus</i>	<i>proud of your purse, fortune</i>
	<i>changes not birth</i>
<i>vitia mentis, quamvis exigua</i>	<i>defects of the mind, no matter</i>
<i>sint, in majus excēdunt</i>	<i>how slight they be, go on in-</i>
	<i>creasing.</i>

**769.** *cūm*, *whereas, since*; *ūt*, *granted that*; *nē*, *granted that not* (see **756. III.**) take the **Subjunctive**.

<i>Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper,</i>	<i>Phocion was constantly poor,</i>
<i>cum divitissimus esse posset</i>	<i>though he could be very rich.</i>

**770.** *ētīamsī* takes the **Indicative** to denote *real concessions*, and the **Subjunctive** to denote such as are *merely conceived* in the mind, as:

<i>ista veritas, etiamsi jucunda non</i>	<i>that truth, although it is not</i>
<i>est, mihi tamen grata est</i>	<i>agreeable, is nevertheless</i>
	<i>acceptable to me</i>
<i>vita brevis est, etiamsi supra</i>	<i>life is short, although it should</i>
<i>centum annos duret</i>	<i>last over 100 years.</i>

**771.** *etsī, tāmetsī* and *quamquām* regularly take the **Indicative** (unless otherwise required by the connection, as:

<i>viri boni recte agunt, etsi nul-</i>	<i>good men do right, though they</i>
<i>lum consecuturum emolumentum vident</i>	<i>see no profit about to result</i>
<i>quamquam omnis virtus nos ad</i>	<i>though all excellence attracts us</i>
<i>se allīcit, tamen justitiā et</i>	<i>to itself, yet justice and liber-</i>
<i>liberalitas id maxime efficit</i>	<i>ality do this most.</i>

## **772. The Conjunctions of Comparison**

*tamquām, quāsi (vēlūt sī, ūt sī, prōindē āc sī)*, *as if*, take the **Subjunctive**.

The **Tenses** follow the general rule of *Sequence* (743); accordingly the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Imperfect*, as:

superbi saepe ita se gerunt, *haughty people often behave as*  
 quasi ipsi soli **sint** homines *if they alone were men.*

The **Particles of Comparison**: *ūt, sicūt, quēmadmōdūm*, as, usually referring to *itā, sic, so*, take the **Indicative**:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

[255. 256.]

## Temporal Conjunctions.

**773.** As a rule, **Temporal Clauses** take the **Indicative**; they are introduced by the following Conjunctions:

postquā, <i>after that, after</i>	cū, <i>when</i>
ūt, <i>as</i>	dūm } <i>while, until</i>
ūbī, <i>when</i>	dōnēc }
sīmūlāc } <i>as soon as</i>	quōād, <i>up to</i>
sīmūlatquē }	quamdīū, <i>as long as</i>
ūt primūm } <i>the first moment</i>	antēquā } <i>before that, before</i>
cū primūm } <i>that (see 737)</i>	priusquā }

**774.** **Temporal cū**, meaning *when, at the time when*, takes the **Indicative** of all the tenses, as:

ager cum multos annos quievit, *when a field has rested many*  
 uberiōres efferre fructus solet *years, it usually produces a*  
*more abundant crop*

oracūla Graeci consulēbant, cum *the Greeks consulted the oracles*  
 bella erant initūri *when they were to begin war.*

**775.** **Historical cū**, meaning *when, as*, takes the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect Subjunctive**.

Agēsilaus cum ex Aegypto re- *Agesilaus died as he was re-*  
 verterētur, mortuus est *turning from Egypt*

cum Caesar Anconam occupas- *when Caesar had occupied An-*  
 set, urbem reliquimus *cona, we left the city.*

**776.** **dūm, quōād** and **dōnēc** (= *quamdīū*), *so long as, while*, take the **Indicative** of all the tenses; in narrative **dūm**, *while*, takes the **Present Indicative**. (734)

dum spiro, spero *while there is life, there is hope*  
 quoad potuit, restitit *as long as he could, he withstood*  
 haec dum aguntur, domi res *while this was going on, affairs*  
 quīetae erant *were quiet at home.*

**777. dūm, quōād, dōnēc, until,** take the Present, Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative when a *fact* is to be expressed, as:

haud desīnam, donec perfecēro *I will not cease, until I shall have accomplished.*

**778. dūm, quōād, until,** implying *purpose, doubt* or *futurity*, take the Subjunctive:

Alexander paulisper exercitum consistere jussit, donec consideret pulvis *Alexander ordered the army to halt a short time, until the dust should be down.*

**779. antēquām and priusquām, before,** have in narration the same construction as historical cūm or postquām, viz. either the Subjunctive of the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, or the **Perfect Indicative**, as:

Achaei non ante ausi sunt bellum capessere quam ab Roma revertissent legati *the Achaeans did not dare to begin the war before the ambassadors had returned from Rome*

antēquam bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit, potentissima fuit *before war consumed the wealth of our city it was very powerful.*

**780.** In reference to **Future Time**, these conjunctions take the *Present* and *Future Perfect Indicative*, also the **Present Subjunctive**, as:

tempestas minatur, antēquam surgat *the storm threatens before it rises*

ante revertar quam luna bis impleverit orbem *I will return before the moon has twice filled her orb.*

[257. 258.]

### Causal Conjunctions.

**781.** The following **Causal Conjunctions** take the *Indicative*:

quā } because  
quōd }  
quōniam } since, inas-  
quandōquidē } much as  
siquidē }

quoniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite *since it is now night, go to your houses*

quia natura mutari non potest, idcirco verae amicitiae aeternae sunt *because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.*

**782.** The **Subjunctive** is used in causal clauses when a statement is made *not as a fact*, but as the *assertion* or *opinion* of some one else, as:

Socrātes accusātus est, quod Socrates was brought to trial  
 corrumpēret juventūtem because (as they said) he cor-  
 rupted youth.

**783.** After those verbs which express the feeling of *joy*, *grief*, etc., as: *gaudērē, to rejoice; grātiām āgērē, to thank; dōlērē, to grieve; glōriārī, to boast*, **quōd** is used to give the ground of emotion, as:

quod scribis, gaudēo I am glad that you write  
 tibi grātiās ago, quod me omni I thank you that you free me  
 molestīa libēras from all trouble.

**784.** **quōd**, *that*, is also used to introduce explanatory clauses, chiefly after a **Demonstrative**:

bene facis, quod me adjuvas you do well in assisting me  
 quod Regūlus rediit mihi mira- that Regulus returned seems  
 bile vidētur wonderful to me.

**785.** At the beginning of a sentence, **quōd** is used in the sense of *as to*, especially in letters, as:

quod de domo scribis. ., as to what you write of the house. .

**nōn quōd**, **nōn quō**, *not as if*, and **nōn quīn**, *not as if not*, take the **Subjunctive**, as:

pugīles ingemiscunt, non quod boxers groan not as if they  
 dolēant, sed quod omne cor- were in pain, but because all  
 pus intenditur the body is put to the stretch.

**786.** **Causal cūm**, *as, since*, takes the **Subjunctive**.

cum vita sine amicis insidiarum since life without friends is full  
 et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa of treachery and fear, reason  
 monet amicitias comparare itself advises us to contract  
 friendships. [259. 260.]

## Conditional Conjunctions.

**787.** In a **Conditional Sentence** the clause containing the condition is called the **Protāsis**, and that containing the conclusion the **Apodōsis**.

**Protasis.** si bovem non possis, if you cannot drive an ox,  
**Apodosis.** asīnum agas drive a donkey,

The **Protasis** is regularly introduced by the conditional particle **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds, viz:

nīsī, <i>unless</i>	sīn, <i>if not, but if</i>
sī nōn, <i>if not</i>	quodsī, <i>but if.</i>

**788.** There are **Three Classes** of Conditional Sentences:

I. The condition is represented as a *fact*: **sī** with the **Indicative** in both clauses:

si Deus est, aeternus est      *if there is a God, he is eternal.*

II. The condition is represented as *possible* or *likely* to be realized: **sī** with **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**:

si quis ita agat, imprūdens sit      *if anybody were to act thus, he would not be wise.*

III. The condition is represented as *contrary to fact*: **sī** with **Imperfect** or **Pluperfect Subjunctive**:

facērem, si possem      *I should do it if I could.*

**789.** **nīsī** and **sī nōn** are used for negative conditions; with **nīsī** the negative belongs to the whole sentence, with **sī nōn** to a particular word, as:

nisi id confestim facis, te tradam magistratūi      *unless you do this at once I shall deliver you to the magistrate*

dolōrem si non potēro frangēre, occultābo      *if I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.*

**790.** The **Subjunctive** is used in **Conditional Wishes** with:

dummōdō	} <i>if only, provided</i>	dummōdō nē	} <i>provided only not</i>
dūm		dūm nē	
mōdō		mōdō nē	

odērint, dum metūant      *let them hate if they only fear*  
 Athenienses summas laudes merentur, dummodo ne tam leves fuissent      *the Athenians deserve the highest praise if only they had not been so wanton.*

**sī mōdō**, *if only, provided that*, requires the **Indicative**.

## Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive.

**791.** As a rule, the **Relative Clause** is in the *Indicative* when a *definite fact* is stated:

planta, quae saepius transfer-	a tree often transplanted does
tur, non coalescit	not thrive.

**792.** The **Subjunctive** is used in **Relative Clauses**:

I. to denote **purpose** or **motive**; **quī = ūt ēgō, ūt tū, ūt is**, etc.  
 missi sunt delecti cum Leonīda, *picked men were sent with*  
 qui Thermopylas occuparent *Leonidas to take possession*  
*of Thermopylae.*

II. to denote the **cause**, *on account of which* or the **hindrance** *in spite of which*; **quī = cūm ēgō, cūm tū, cūm is**, etc. (often with *ūt, ūtpōtē, as; quīppē, namely*).

o virum simplicem, qui nos nihil *O guileless man who hidest*  
 celet! *nothing from us!*

III. to denote **result** or to indicate a **characteristic** of the antecedent, sometimes in a restrictive sense, as:

non is sum, qui hoc faciām	<i>I am not such a one as to do this</i>
oratiōnes Catōnis, quas quidem	<i>Cato's speeches as far as I have</i>
legērim	<i>read them.</i>

**793.** The construction of the **Consecutive** or **Characteristic Relative** is especially common:

a. after **is, tālis, ējasmōdī, tantūs, tām** with an Adjective or Adverb, **sōlūs** and **ūnūs**:

est innocentīa affectiō talis anīmi, quae nocēat nemīni, *innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.*

b. after general expressions of *existence* and *non-existence*, as:

est qui	} <i>there is, there are</i>	habēo quod, <i>I have to</i>
sunt qui		} <i>some who</i>
nemo est qui,	<i>there is none to</i>	<i>found who</i>
nihil est quod,	<i>there is nothing</i>	

sunt qui censēant una animum cum corpore interīre, *there are some who believe that the soul perishes together with the body.*

c. after **dignūs, indignūs, idōnēūs, aptūs**:

indignus es, cui fides habeātur, *you are unworthy of being believed.*

**794.** A clause joined to another by a Relative, takes the **Subjunctive**, when it contains *not the sentiment of the writer*, but of *some other person* alluded to, as:

Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit  
*Paetus presented to me all the books that his brother had left.*

**795.** Comparatives may be followed by **quām ūt, quām quī** with the **Subjunctive**, corresponding to the English *too . . to*, as:

damna majōra sunt quam quae aestimāri possint  
*the losses are too great to be estimated.*

[263. 264.]

### Direct Questions.

**796.** Questions in Latin are introduced by **Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs or Particles**.

#### Interrogative Pronouns.

quīs? quīd? *who? what?* quisnām? quidnām? *who, what pray?*

quī? quae? quōd? *which?*

ūtēr? ūtrā? ūtrūm? *which of the two?*

quālis? quālē? *of what kind?*

quantūs? quantā? quantūm? *how great?*

quōtūs? quōtā? quōtūm? *what? (in number or order)*

quōtusquisquē? quōtāquaequē? quōtumquodquē? *how few?*

quōt? *how many?*

#### Interrogative Adverbs.

ūbī? *where?*

undē? *whence?*

quō? *whither?*

quā? *where? which way?*

quandō? *when?*

quōtīens? *how often?*

quōmōdō?

quēmadmōdūm? } *how?*

cūr?

quārē?

quām ob rēm? } *why? what for?*

ūbīnām? *where pray?*

undēnām? *whence pray?*

quōnām? *whither pray?*

quānām? *which way pray?*

quamdīū? } *how long?*

quōusquē? } *how long?*

quām? (only before **Adjectives** and

**Adverbs**) *how? how much?*

quantōpērē? (only before **Verbs**)

*how greatly? how much?*

quidnī? cūr nōn? *why not?*

**797.** The **Interrogative Particles** are:

**nē, nūm, nonnē, ūtrūm, ān.**

Of these **nē** asks merely for information; it cannot stand by itself, but is joined to any emphatic word, usually the verb, which then comes first in the sentence; it is not translated, as:

omnisne pecunia debita soluta est? *is all the money owing paid?*

When a **negative answer** is expected, **nūm** is used, which stands at the beginning of the sentence and is likewise not translated, as:

**num** vespertilio avis est?                    *Is the bat a bird?*

With **nōn**, **nē** forms a special interrogative particle **nonnē**, *not*; the answer expected is *yes*, as:

**nonne** lectio hujus libri te delectat?    *does not the perusal of this book delight you?*

**798. Double or Alternative questions** have the following forms:

ūtrūm, <i>whether</i> ..	ān, <i>or</i> ..
— nē, “ ..	ān “ ..
....., “ ..	ān “ ..

utrum domi fuisti <b>an</b> in schola?	}	<i>have you been at home or in school?</i>
domine fuisti <b>an</b> in schola?		
domi fuisti <b>an</b> in schola?		

Sometimes the first part of an alternative question is omitted or implied, and **ān** alone asks a question, as:

**an** nescis regibus longas esse manus?    *or perhaps do you not know that kings have long arms?*

In *Direct* questions *or not* is **annōn**; in *Indirect* **necnē**.

utrum domi fuisti **annon**?                    *have you been at home or not?*

QUESTION AND ANSWER.

**799. In answering a question the emphatic word is generally repeated, as:**

vidistine eum? *did you see him?*    vidi, *yes, I did.*  
 solusne venisti? *did you come alone?*    non solus, *no, I did not.*

The following **Responsives** are also used in answer to a direct question:

<b>yes</b>	<b>no</b>
itā, <i>so</i>	nōn itā, <i>no, not so</i>
itā est, <i>so it is</i>	mīnīmē, <i>by no means</i>
itā vērō est, <i>so it is indeed</i>	mīnīmē vērō, <i>by no means indeed</i>
sānē, <i>of course</i>	
sānē quīdēm, <i>yes, indeed</i>	nīhīl mīnūs, <i>nothing less so</i>
ētīām, <i>even so</i>	neutīquām, <i>not at all.</i>
vērō, <i>truly, in truth</i>	



**800.** *immō*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of a previous statement, as:

causa igitur non bona est? Im-	<i>the cause, then, is a bad one?</i>
mo optima	<i>Nay, it is an excellent one</i>
num ille tibi familiaris est? Im-	<i>is he a friend of yours? On the</i>
mo alienissimus	<i>contrary, a perfect stranger.</i>

[265. 266.]

### Indirect Questions.

**801.** The **Subjunctive** is used in such questions as are dependent upon some word in the former part of the sentence (**Indirect Questions**).

The words: *ubi fuisti? where have you been?*

are a **Direct Question**, with the verb in the **Indicative**; in the sentence:

*dic mihi ubi fueris, tell me where you have been,*

the same words are an **Indirect Question**, and the dependent verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

qualis sit animus ipse animus	<i>the mind itself knows not what</i>
nescit	<i>the mind is</i>
quis ego sim me rogatas?	<i>do you ask me who I am?</i>

**802.** **Indirect Questions** have the same particles as the direct, **nūm** and **nē**, corresponding to *whether* in English; **sī**, *if*, is used for *whether* after *tentārē*, *expēriri*, *to try*, and *exspectārē*, *to expect*.

Epaminondas quaesivit salvusne	<i>Epaminondas asked whether</i>
esset clipeus	<i>his shield was safe</i>
paludem si nostri transirent	<i>the enemy were waiting (to see)</i>
hostes exspectabant	<i>whether our men would cross</i>
	<i>the swamp.</i>

### 803. INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

quaero utrum verum an falsum sit	} <i>I ask whether it is true or</i>
quaero verumne an falsum sit	
quaero verum an falsum sit	
quaero verum falsumne sit	

*false*

When the interrogative particle is omitted in the first member, **nē** may stand in the second, but only in **Indirect Questions**.

or not in **Indirect Questions** is **necnē**, as: *dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, the question is whether there are gods or not.*

## The Imperative.

**804.** The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice* or *exhortation*.

The **Present Imperative** denotes that an action is to be performed *at once*, or to be continued if actually being performed, as:

si quid in te peccāvi, ignosce	<i>if I have sinned against you,</i>
	<i>forgive me</i>
justitiā cole et pietātem	<i>cultivate justice and piety.</i>

The **Future Imperative** is used where there is a direct reference to *future time*; it corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall* or to the Imperative *let*, and is properly used in general directions, laws, statutes and wills, as:

regio imperio duo sunt, consules appellantor	<i>there shall be two officers with royal power; they shall be called consuls.</i>
--	--

**805.** The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē**, which is, however, in classical Latin only found with the **Future Imperative**, as:

hominem mortuum, in urbe nē sepelito	<i>thou shalt not bury a dead man in the city, says the law.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

In prohibitions instead of the **Negative Imperative** the following forms of the **Subjunctive** with **nē** are usually employed:

the second person of the **Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

hoc nē feceris, *leave that undone;*

the third person of the **Present Subjunctive**:

puer telum ne habeat, *a boy is not to have a weapon.*

**806.** Instead of the **Simple Imperative** several **Imperative Phrases** are common:

cūrā ūt, <i>take care that</i>	} each with the <b>Subjunctive</b> .
fāc ūt, <i>cause that</i>	
fāc, <i>do</i>	

cura ut quam primum venias, *come as soon as possible;*

valetudinem tuam fac ut cures, *take care of your health.*

cāvē nē, <i>beware lest</i>	} each with the <b>Subjunctive</b> .
cāvē, <i>beware</i>	

nōlī, *be unwilling*, with the **Infinitive**.

cave festines, *do not be in a hurry;* cave existimes, *do not think;*

noli me tangere, *do not touch me;* noli putare, *do not suppose.*



### Accusative with the Infinitive.

**810.** The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used like the English Objective with the Infinitive in such sentences as: *hoc verum esse scīmus, we know this to be true.*

In English we might also say: *We know that this is true;* but Latin permits *only* of the Infinitive Construction.

**811.** The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** may be the **Subject** of the sentence. The *Predicate* is either a noun or an adjective with *est*, or an impersonal verb.

The most common phrases under this rule are:

pār est, <i>it is fair</i>	oportēt, <i>there is need, ought</i>
justūm est, <i>it is just</i>	appārēt, <i>it is clear</i>
certūm est, <i>it is certain</i>	constāt, <i>it is agreed, evident</i>
crēdibilē est, <i>it is credible</i>	conducīt, expēdit, <i>it is useful</i>
fās est, <i>it is right</i>	convēnit, <i>it is fitting</i>
nēfās est, <i>it is forbidden</i>	plācēt, <i>it pleases</i>
fāmā est, <i>the story goes</i>	displicēt, <i>it displeases</i>
ōpiniō est, <i>there is a report</i>	necessē est, <i>it must needs</i>
spēs est, <i>there is hope</i>	ōpūs est, <i>there is need</i>

*me scribere oportet, I must write or I ought to write*

*certum est liberos amari, it is certain that children are loved.*

**812.** The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used as the **Object** of verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*:

**Verba sentiendi:**

sentirē, <i>to perceive, notice</i>
ānimadvertērē, <i>to see</i>
audirē, <i>to hear</i>
vidērē, <i>to see</i>
accipērē, <i>to hear</i>
compērērē, <i>to ascertain</i>
cognoscērē, <i>to know</i>
intellēgērē, <i>to learn</i>
cōgitārē, <i>to think</i>
arbitrārī, crēdērē, <i>to believe</i>

**Verba declarandi:**

dēclārārē, <i>to declare</i>
dīcērē, <i>to say</i>
nēgārē, <i>to deny</i>
affirmārē, <i>to affirm</i>
respondērē, <i>to answer</i>
scribērē, <i>to write</i>
fātērī, <i>to confess</i>
dēmōstrārē, <i>to prove</i>
narrārē, <i>to tell</i>
nuntiārē, <i>to bring word</i>

*aves videmus construere nidos, we see that birds build nests;*

*nemo negabit se esse mortalem, no one will deny that he is mortal.*

**813.** Verbs of *Perceiving* take the **Acc.** with the **Pres. Participle** to represent the object as *actually seen, heard, etc.*, as: *Catōnem vidi in bibliothēca sedentem, I saw Cato sitting in the library.*

**814.** Verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring* take a dependent **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**. Such are:

vōlō, <i>I wish</i>	cūpīō, <i>I desire</i>	sīnō, <i>I permit</i>
nōlō, <i>I do not wish</i>	jūbēō, <i>I bid</i>	pātīōr, <i>I suffer</i>
mālō, <i>I like better</i>	vētō, <i>I forbid</i>	

discipūlum me habēri volo, non *I wish to be taken for a learner,*  
doctōrem *not for a teacher*  
Caesar pontem jubet rescindi *Caesar orders the bridge to be*  
*broken down.*

These verbs may take the *simple* Infinitive when the subject remains the same. Instead of the Accusative with the Infinitive, ut with the Subjunctive is frequently used with this class of verbs (**758**); but never with nolo, and seldom with volo and malo; jubēo and veto *regularly* take the Accusative with the Infinitive.

**815.** Verbs of *Emotion*, as: gaudērē, *to rejoice*, grātiām āgērē, *to thank*, dōlērē, *to grieve* (see **783**) may be considered as verbs of *saying* and *thinking* and, as such, take an **Accusative** with Infinitive, as: *salvum te advenisse gaudēo, I rejoice that you have arrived safe.*

**816.** To translate such clauses as are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, and require in Latin the **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**,

take no notice of *that*;

translate the **English Nominative** following *that* by the **Latin Accusative**;

translate the **English Verb** by the **Latin Infinitive**.

**817.** A **Predicate Noun** or **Adjective** and the **Participles** of the Compound Infinitives must agree with the **Accusative-Subject**; but, of course, the **Supine** remains unaltered.

sentīo borēam frigidum esse  
medīci causa morbi inventa cu-  
ratiōnem esse inventam pu-  
tant

*I feel that the north-wind is cold*  
*physicians think that when the*  
*cause of disease is discovered,*  
*the cure has been discovered.*

## Tenses of the Infinitive.

### 818. After Verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring* (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*)

the **Present Infinitive** expresses *contemporaneous* action,  
the **Perfect Infinitive** expresses *antecedent* action,  
the **Future Infinitive** expresses *future* action.

#### Present Infinitive.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scribĕre     | <i>I believe that he is writing</i>    |
| II. credĕbam eum scribĕre | <i>I believed that he was writing.</i> |

#### Perfect Infinitive.

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scripsisse     | <i>I believe that he has written</i>   |
| II. credĕbam eum scripsisse | <i>I believed that he had written.</i> |

#### Future Infinitive.

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scriptūrum esse     | <i>I believe that he will write</i>    |
| II. credĕbam eum scriptūrum esse | <i>I believed that he would write.</i> |

#### I. After a **Principal Tense** translate:

the **Infinitive** like the **Indicative** of the *same* tense.

#### II. After a **Historical Tense** translate:

the **Infinitive Present** like the **Indicative Imperfect**

the **Infinitive Perfect** “ **Indicative Pluperfect**

the **Infinitive Future** “ **Subjunctive Imperfect** (*should and would*).

819. The **Future Infinitive** is often expressed by **fōrĕ** or **fūtūrūm**  
**essĕ ūt** — necessarily so when the verb has no **Supine**, as:

- |                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| credo fore ut pluāt      | <i>I believe it will rain</i>    |
| credĕbam fore ut pluĕret | <i>I believed it would rain.</i> |

820. The **Personal Pronouns**, which are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis, must be **always** expressed in the **Accusative** with **Infinitive**. For the Pronouns of the third person the Reflexive **sĕ** is used *in reference to the subject* of the **Principal Clause**, and the Demonstratives **ĕūm**, **ĕām**, **ĕōs**, **ĕās** when referring *to another noun*.

- |                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| nemo tam senex est quī se an- | <i>no one is so old but thinks he</i> |
| num non putet posse vivĕre    | <i>can live another year</i>          |
| Ennius deos esse censet, sed  | <i>Ennius believes that there are</i> |
| eos non curāre opinātur, quid | <i>gods, but he does not think</i>    |
| agat humānum genus            | <i>they care what mankind are</i>     |
|                               | <i>doing.</i>                         |

## Nominative with the Infinitive.

**821.** With **Passive Verbs** of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*, instead of the Infinitive with the Accusative a personal construction is more common by which the *Subject Accusative* becomes the *Subject Nominative* of the leading verb: **Nominative with the Infinitive.**

**Accus. with Inf.** tradunt Homērum caecum fuisse, *they say that Homer was blind*

**Nomin. with Inf.** Homērus caecus fuisse traditur, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

**822.** Especially to be noted is the construction of the **Nominative** with the **Infinitive** after:

jūbēō, *I order*

sīnō, *I permit*

vētō, *I forbid*

vīdēōr, *I seem*

consules jubentur exercitum scribere *the consuls are ordered to levy an army*

omnibus videmur recte fecisse, quod amici causam defenderimus *it seems to all that we did right in defending the cause of our friend.* [277. 278.]

## Direct Discourse.

**823.** A *Statement* which gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer is called *oratio recta*, or **Direct Discourse.**

**inquām**, *quoth I*, is used in *direct* quotations, **ājō**, *I say*, in *indirect* quotations. *inquām* always follows one or more of the words quoted. When a nominative is added to *inquit*, it commonly follows this verb: *uva, inquit vulpes, nondum matūra est, the grape is not yet ripe, says the fox* [279. 280.]

## Indirect Discourse.

**824.** An **Indirect Quotation** expresses a thought indirectly, as *reported*, *recognized* or *contemplated* by some one: *oratio obliqua.*

**Oratio recta.**

Socrātes dicere solēbat: "omnes in eo quod **sciunt** satis sunt eloquentes," *Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."*

**Oratio obliqua.**

Socrātes dicere solēbat, omnes in eo quod **scirent**, satis esse eloquentes; *Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.*

**825.** In **Indirect Discourse** the *Verb* of the *Principal Clause* is in the **Infinitive** and its *Subject* in the **Accusative**; *Dependent Clauses* connected with it by **Relatives** and **Particles** take the **Subjunctive**.

**Interrogative Sentences** are put in the **Subjunctive** according to **801**.

<p>Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesāris pauca respondit: quid sibi <b>vellet</b>? cur in suas possessiones <b>venīret</b>?</p>	<p><i>Ariovistus gave a brief answer to Caesar's demands: what did he mean? why did he come into his possessions?</i></p>
--	---

**Imperative Sentences** are put in the **Subjunctive**; the negative is, of course, **nē**.

<p>mandāta remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverterētur, exercitus dimittēret</p>	<p><i>they sent back orders of which the substance was as follows: Caesar should return into Gaul and disband his armies.</i></p>
--	---

**826.** A **Clause** depending upon a *Subjunctive* or *Infinitive* takes the **Subjunctive** if it is regarded as an integral part of that clause. This is called **Attraction of Mood**.

<p>mos est Athēnis laudāri in concione eos, qui <b>sint</b> in proeliis interfecti</p>	<p><i>it is custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.</i></p>
--	--

**827.** The **Subjunctive** is used in *subordinate clauses* to express the thought of *some other person* than the speaker or writer.

<p>quos vicēris, amīcos tibi esse cave credas</p>	<p><i>do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends.</i></p>
---	---

**828.** All references to the **Subject** of the leading clause are regularly expressed by the Reflexive **sūi** (**sūūs**); as: *anīmus sentit se sua vi movēri, the mind feels that it moves by its own force.*



## Participles.

**829.** There are **two Participles** in the *Active Voice*: the **Present Participle** denotes *continuance*, as: scribens, *writing*; the **Future Participle** is used to express *what is likely or about to happen*, as: scriptūrus, *about to write*.

**830.** There are **two Participles** in the *Passive Voice*:

the **Perfect Participle** denotes *completion*, as: scriptūs, *written*;  
the **Gerundive** (so-called **Future Participle**) denotes *necessity or propriety*, as: scribendūs, *to be written*.

**831.** Deponent Verbs have **four Participles**:

the **Present Participle**, as: hortans, *exhorting*;  
the **Perfect Participle**, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*;  
the **Fut. Part. Act.**, as: hortātūrus, *being about to exhort*;  
the **Fut. Part. Pass.**, as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted*.

**832.** The Participles are used **attributively**, or in the manner of ordinary Adjectives, as:

arbor florens, *a blossoming tree*    scripta epistūla, *a written letter*  
puer dormiens, *a sleeping boy*    urbs obsessa, *a besieged town*.

**833.** The Participles are used with the utmost freedom **appositively**, and may have the value

of a *Relative*, as: divitiæ semper duratūrae, *riches which will last forever*;

of *while, when, after*, as: Plato scribens mortūs est, *Plato died while writing*;

of *if*, as: mendāci homīni ne verum quidem dicenti credīmus, *we do not believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth*;

of *since, because*, as: cantus olorīnus recte fabulōsus habētur nunquam auditus, *the swan's song is justly regarded as fabulous, because it has never been heard*;

of *though, although*, as: oculus se non videns aliā cernit, *the eye, though not seeing itself, sees other things*;

of *to, in order to* (expressing a purpose), as: Scipio in Africam trajecit Carthaginem deletūrus, *Scipio crossed over into Africa to destroy Carthage*.

**834.** The Participle with a negative, as *nōn*, *nīhīl* is often best rendered

by *without* and a *Participial Noun*, as: *multi homīnes vitupērant libros non intellectos, many men find fault with books without understanding them.*

**835.** Verbs of *Perceiving* take the *Accusative* with the *Present Participle*, when the object is to be represented as *actually* seen, heard, etc.; also: *fācērē*, *indūcērē*, *to represent, introduce* (see **813**), as:

vidi puēros ludentes	<i>I saw the boys playing</i>
Xenōphon facit Socrātem disputantem	<i>Xenophon represents Socrates disputing.</i>

[195, 196, 283-286.]

### Ablative Absolute.

**836.** A Noun or Pronoun with a *Participle* is used in the *Ablative Case* **absolutely** to express some accompanying circumstance or condition of the action.

The *Ablative Absolute* may be translated by the English *Nominative Absolute* which is a close equivalent; but, as a rule, the same change of form is required as in translating *Participles* in general (see **833**). Examples are:

*Numa Pompilio regnante. Numa Pompilius reigning. When Numa Pompilius was reigning. In the reign of Numa Pompilius.*

*Tito imperante. In the reign of the emperor Titus.*

*Caesāre interfecto. Caesar being, having been murdered. When Caesar had been murdered. After the murder of Caesar.*

*Another Ablative* should not be placed in apposition with the *ablative absolute*. Thus we may say: *puēro mortūo, the boy having died*; but not: *Gaio puēro mortūo, the boy Gaius having died*; this should be expressed by: *cum Gaius puer mortūus esset*. The *ablative absolute* with the *Future Participle* is also avoided by the classic authors.

An *Adjective*, or another *Noun* may take the place of the *Participle*, as:

*Xerxe rege. Xerxes being king.*

*natūra duce. Nature being the leader. Under the guidance of nature.*

*nolentibus nobis. While we are unwilling. Against our will.*

*In spite of us.*

*patre invito. While father is, was unwilling. Against father's will.*

**837.** The want of a Perfect **Active** Participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the Ablative Absolute with a Perfect **Passive** Participle, thus:

Caesar, urbe capta, rediit	} <i>The city being taken, Caesar returned.</i> <i>Having taken the city, Caesar returned.</i>

[197. 198. 287. 288.]

### Gerund.

**838.** As the Infinitive is used as a *Verbal Noun* in the Nominative and Accusative Cases, so the **Gerund**, corresponding to the English participial noun in *ing*, is used in the remaining cases, viz.:

Nom.	scribere est utile	<i>writing is useful</i>
Gen.	ars scribendi	<i>the art of writing</i>
Dat.	scribendo adfui	<i>I was present at the writing</i>
Acc.	scribere disco	<i>I learn to write</i>
	ad scribendum utilis	<i>useful for writing</i>
Abl.	scribendo discimus	<i>we learn by writing.</i>

**839.** The **Gerund** governs the same case as the verb:

ars scribendi epistolam	<i>the art of writing a letter</i>
cupidus te audiendi	<i>desirous of hearing you</i>
injurias ferendo	<i>by bearing wrongs</i>
ad beate vivendum	<i>for living happily</i>
parendo legibus	<i>by obeying the laws.</i>

### Gerundive.

**840.** The **Gerundive**, in its adjective use, denotes *necessity* or *propriety*.

Its most frequent use is with *esse* in the **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** (see **314**). The neuter of the Gerundive with *est*, *erät*, etc., is used impersonally if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vivendum est*, *we or you must live*.

But the person *by whom* may also be added in the **Dative**, thus:

**mihi** scribendum est, *I must or should write*  
**tibi** scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*  
**ei** scribendum est, *he must or should write*  
**nobis** scribendum est, *we must or should write*  
**vobis** scribendum est, *you must or should write*  
**eis** scribendum est, *they must or should write.*

**841.** The **Gerundive** is used as an **Objective Predicate** to denote *Purpose* after verbs signifying *to give, take, send, leave*, as:

curāre, <i>to take care</i>	accipere, <i>to receive</i>
dāre, <i>to give</i>	permittere, <i>to permit</i>
relinquere, <i>to leave</i>	locāre, <i>to let, lease</i>
mittere, <i>to send</i>	conducere, <i>to contract for</i>
diviti homini id aurum servandum dedit	<i>he gave that gold to a rich man to keep.</i>

**842.** The **Gerundive** of verbs governing the accusative is frequently used instead of the Gerund in the following manner:

The **Accusative** is put in the same Case as the Gerund;

The Gerund is then changed into the Gerundive;

The Gerundive is made to agree with the Substantive in *Gender, Number and Case*; thus:

	Gerund.	Gerundive.
Gen.	scribendi epistulam	scribendae epistulae
Dat.	scribendo epistulam	scribendae epistulae
Acc.	ad scribendum epistulam	ad scribendam epistulam
Abl.	scribendo epistulam	scribenda epistula.

**843.** The **Genitive** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives, as:

ars vivendi, <i>the art of living</i>	equitandi peritus, <i>skillful in riding</i>
consilium urbis delendae, <i>a plan for destroying the city</i>	civitatis regendae peritus, <i>skillful in governing the state.</i>

Very common are **causā** and **grātiā**, *on account of, for the sake of, for the purpose of* with the **Genitive** of Gerund and Gerundive to point out *design* or *purpose*, as:

memoriae exercendae gratia, *for the sake of exercising the memory.*

**844.** The **Dative** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with adjectives of fitness and their opposites:

utilis, -ē, <i>useful, good</i>	aptus, -ā, -um, <i>adapted, suited</i>
inutilis, -ē, <i>useless, unfit</i>	idoneus, -ā, -um, <i>fit, suitable</i>

to denote the *object for which*; but the more common construction of these adjectives is that of the Accusative with *ād, to*, thus:

aqua utilis bibendo, *water good for drinking*,  
charta inutilis ad scribendum, *paper unfit to write upon*.

**845.** The **Accusative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is most frequently used after *ād, to*, denoting *purpose*, as:

ad colendos agros, *for cultivating the fields*;  
me vocas ad scribendum, *you summon me to write*;  
propensus ad discendum, *inclined to learn*.

**846.** The **Ablative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is used as Ablative of *means* or *instrument*, and most frequently after the preposition *īn, in*, as:

mens discendo alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning*  
moderatio in jocando, *restraint in joking*.

[199. 200. 289-292.]

### Supine.

**847.** The **Supines** are verbal nouns of the Fourth Declension, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm, āmātū, to love*.

The **Former Supine** (in *ūm*) is used after verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose* of the motion; it has an *active meaning*, as:

venio te rogātum                      *I come to ask you.*

With the passive infinitive *īrī* (lit. *to be gone*) the Supine in *ūm* forms the **Future Infinitive Passive**, *āmātūm īrī, to be about to be loved* (315).

The **Letter Supine** (in *ū*) has a *passive meaning*; it is used only with a few Adjectives denoting *ease* or *difficulty*, *pleasure* or *displeasure*, *right* or *wrong*; with the nouns *fās, right, nēfās, wrong*, sometimes with *ōpūs, need*, as:

quid est tam jucundum auditu?    *what is so agreeable in hearing?*

## Equivalents of the Supine.

**848.** The **Former Supine**, as an expression of *purpose*, is not very common, its place being supplied in various ways. Thus the sentence:

*The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to sue for peace,*  
may be rendered:

**Supine.** Carthaginienses legātos misērunt **pacem petītum.**

**Gerundive**  
with **ād,** { C. legātos misērunt **ad pacem petendam.**  
**causā** { C. legātos misērunt **pacis petendae causa.**

**Fut. Part.** C. legātos misērunt **pacem petitūros.**

**ūt w. Subj.** C. legātos misērunt, **ut pacem petērent.**

**quī w. Subj.** C. legātos misērunt, **qui pacem petērent.**

The use of the **Latter Supine** is confined to a few verbs, as: dictū, *to tell*; factū, *to do*; auditū, *to hear*; visū, *to see*. With *facilis*, *difficilis*, *jucundus*, the construction of *ād* with the gerund is more common, as: *res est facilis ad cognoscendum (cognitu), the thing is easy to know.*

[293. 294.]

## Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

**849.** The following **Particles** are called **Copulative Conjunctions**:

**ēt, -quē, atquē (āc), and**  
**nēquē, and not**  
**ētīām, quōquē, also**

**ēt** is simply *and*, the most common and general copulative, and connects independent words and clauses without any additional meaning; **-quē**, affixed to the word it annexes, combines things that belong closely to one another; **atquē** adds a more important to a less important member. The following may serve as an example to illustrate the various usages:

dies et noctes means *days and nights*, simply;

dies noctesque “ *days and nights*, as a whole;

dies atque noctes “ *days and (also) nights*.

furem fur cognoscit, et lupus *thief knows thief, and wolf*  
lupum *knows wolf*

dum vires annique sinunt, tole- *work while your strength and*  
rāte labōrem *years permit you*

intra moenia atque in sinu urbis *within the walls and even in*  
sunt hostes *the heart of the city are the*  
*enemies.*

**ac** does not stand before a vowel or **h**; **atquē** either before vowels or consonants. They generally mean *as, than*, after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness, as: **aequē ac**, *as much as, equally as*; **sēcūs ac**, **ālītēr atquē**, *otherwise than*.

**ētīām** (lit. *and farther*) *even, yet, still*, adds a new circumstance, and generally precedes the words to which it belongs; **quōquē**, *so also*, which refers only to a single word and follows that word, implies a sameness in the whole, as:

etīam mendīcus mendico invīdet *even the beggar envies the beggar*  
otīa corpus alunt, animus quo- *rest strengthens the body, the*  
que pascitur illis *mind, too, is thus supported.*

**850.** Several *Subjects* or *Objects*, standing in the same relations,

either take **ēt** throughout: **polysyndeton**, i. e. *joined in various ways*;  
or omit it throughout: **asyndeton**, i. e. *unconnected*;  
or take **quē** only after the last member, thus:

summa fide et constantīa et justitīa	} <i>with the greatest faith, con-</i> <i>stancy and justice.</i>
summa fide, constantīa, justitīa	
summa fide, constantīa, justitīaque	

**ēt** is used after **multī** followed by another adjective, where in English *and* is usually omitted; as: **multae et magnae arbōres**, *many large trees*.

**851.** In the second member of a sentence *and not* is expressed by **nēquē**, as: **dicunt, neque dubitant**, *they say and do not doubt*. Mark the following **Idiomatic Expressions**:

<i>and no one</i>	<b>nēquē quisquām</b>	<i>nor any one</i>
<i>and no</i>	<b>nēquē ullūs</b>	<i>nor any</i>
<i>and nothing</i>	<b>nēquē quidquām</b>	<i>nor any thing</i>
<i>and never</i>	<b>nēquē unquām</b>	<i>nor ever</i>

**852.** The following are **Disjunctive Conjunctions**:

**aut, vėl, -vė, sīvė (seu), or.**

**aut**, *or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution, as:  
**vincēris aut vincis**, *you are conquered or conquering*.

**vėl** (lit. *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **ētīām**, *even*, **pōtīūs**, *rather*, as:

**hic popūlus indomītus vel potīus** *this untamable or rather savage*  
**immānis** *people.*

-**vě**, which is always affixed to another word, is only a weaker form of **věl**, as: plus minus**vě**, *more or less*.

**sivě** (**seu**), *if you choose*, indicates merely an alternative of words, as:

discessus sive potius turpissima fuga    *the decampment, or rather the most shameful flight.*

[295. 296.]

### 853. The following are **Adversative Conjunctions**:

**autēm**, **sĕd**, **vĕrŭm**, **vĕrō**, **ĕt**, *but*  
**atquĭ**, *but for all that*  
**tĕmĕn**, *nevertheless*  
**ĕtĕrŭm**, *for the rest.*

The weakest of them all in adversative power is **autēm** which is only used to connect sentences, and commonly follows the first word.

spiritus promptus, caro autem infirma    *the spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak.*

**sĕd** has two meanings; after affirmative sentences **it** is equivalent to *but (yet)*; after negative sentences to *but (on the contrary)*.

homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit    *man proposeth, but God disposeth*

non opus est verbis, sed fustibus    *there is no need of words, but of knocks.*

**vĕrŭm**, lit: *it is true*, always takes the first place in the sentence; **vĕrō**, lit: *in truth*, is generally put in the second place:

verum praeterita omittāmus    *but let us lay aside past things*

illud vero plane ferendum non est    *but this, indeed, is not at all to be suffered.*

**ĕt** is stronger than **sĕd**; and **atquĭ**, *but for all that*, is even stronger again:

popŭlus me sibĭlat, at mihi plaudo    *the mob may hiss me, but I congratulate myself*

o rem difficĭlem, inquis, et inexplicabilem. Atqui explicanda est    *a hard case, you say, and an inexplicable one. And nevertheless it ought to be explained.*

**tĕmĕn**, *yet, nevertheless*, is the usual correlative of a concessive conjunction; generally it comes first unless a particular word is to be made emphatic: natŭram expellas furca, tamen usque recurret, *you may drive out nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*



**854. The Causal Conjunctions are:**

**nām, ěnīm, namquē, ětĕnīm, for**

**nām** is always put at the beginning, **ěnīm** always follows the first word of the sentence; **namquē** and **ětĕnīm** are commonly put in the first place.

**855. The Illative Conjunctions are:**

**ĭtāquē, ĭgĭtūr, ergō, therefore**

**ĭdĕō, ĭdcircō, on that account**

**prōindĕ, accordingly**

**ĭtāquē** is put at the beginning of the sentence and is used of *facts*; **ĭgĭtūr** follows one or more words in its clause, and is used of *opinions*; **ergō, therefore**, denotes necessary consequence and is more emphatic than **ĭgĭtūr**; it is put at the beginning of the sentence or after an emphatic word; **prōindĕ** is only employed in exhortations:

quot homĭnes, tot sententiāe; *many men, many minds; therefore we may be mistaken*  
falli ĭgitur possūmus

negat haec filiām me suam esse; *she says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother*  
non ergo haec mater mea est

proinde fac magno anĭmo sis! *accordingly, be of good cheer!*

**856. nĕquē** is used for **nōn** with the conjunctions: **ěnīm, vĕrō, tāmĕn, ĭgĭtūr**, thus:

neque enim, *for not*  
neque tamen, *yet not*

neque vero, *but not*  
neque ĭgitur, *therefore not.*

[297. 298.]

Corresponsive Conjunctions.

**857. Some Conjunctions** frequently have a **Correlative** in the preceding clause, to which they correspond.

Copulative.

ĕt. . . ĕt, *both. . . and*

cūm. . . tūm, *both. . . and especially*

mōdō. . . mōdō } *now. . . now*

nunc. . . nunc }

tūm. . . tūm, *then. . . then*

tām. . . quām, *both. . . and*

nĕquē. . . nĕquē } *neither. . . nor*  
nĕc. . . nĕc }

nĕquē. . . quē, *on the one hand not. . . and on the other*

ĕt. . . nĕquē, *on the one hand. . . and on the other hand not*

nōn sōlūm..sēd ētīām	}	<i>not only..but also</i>
nōn mōdō..sēd ētīām		
nōn tantūm..sēd ētīām		

Disjunctive.

Comparative.

aut..aut	}	<i>either..or</i>
vēl..vēl		

ūt..itā	}	<i>as..so</i>
quēmadmōdūm..itā		

sīvē..sīvē, *whether..or*

[299. 300.]

## POETICAL FORMS.

### PROSODY.

**858.** *Prosody* means *Accent*, and since Latin accent is regulated by quantity, *Prosody*, in the classic sense, has reference to the length of syllables, measured by the length of time taken up in pronouncing them. By modern Grammarians, *Prosody* is used in a wider sense to include both *quantity* and *versification*.

### Quantity.

**859.** As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long (—) or short, (v) and each syllable is considered as either long or short, according as it contains either a long or a short vowel — (*Longs and Shorts by Nature*). A long syllable is generally reckoned in length equal to two short ones.

**860.** All diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: *āūrum*, *cōgo* (*cō-ago*), *mālo* (*magis volo*), *nīl* (*nihil*), *jūnior* (*juvenior*).

Likewise *e* and *i* when corresponding to Greek *ei*:

*Aenēas*, *Alexandrēa*, *Thalīa*, *Arīon*.

**861.** A vowel before another vowel is *short*, no account being taken of *h*, as: *pīus*, *dēus*, *trāho*. Even a vowel naturally long or a diphthong becomes short before another vowel, as: *dēorsum*, *prāēopto*.

### EXCEPTIONS:

*e* in *ei* of the *Fifth Declension* is *long* when a vowel precedes, as: *diēi*, but *fidēi*.

*i* in the *Genitive form iūs* is long; it is, however, sometimes made short in verse, but never in *alius* (for *aliūs*).

In *fiō*, *i* is long, except when followed by *er*, as: *fiō*, *fiēbam*; but *fiērī*.

In the *Vocative* of proper names in *-ājūs*, *-ējūs*, *a* and *e* are *long*: *Gāi*, *Pompēi*.

In words from the Greek, vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original, as: *āer*, *musēum*, *ēos*, *Agēsilāus*, *Amphīon*.

**862.** A syllable with a short vowel is considered as *long* when the short vowel is followed by two or more consonants or a double consonant either in the same or in the following syllable, as: *ēst*, *ēssēm*, *rēstare*, *dūx*. The consonants may be divided between two words, as *sūb sidērē*. A short syllable made long by this rule is said to be *long by Position*.

**863.** But if the syllable ends in a short vowel, and the next syllable in the same word begins with a mute (see **6.**) followed by *r* or *l*, the syllable before the two consonants is *common* (anceps) — that is, it may be either *long* or *short* (⊔) in verse, as in *tenēbrae*; in prose it is invariably short.

**864.** Every vowel sound followed by *j* is long; only compounds of *jugum*, *yoke*, retain the short vowel before *j*, as: *bījūgus*, *two-horse*.

**865.** Forms from the same stem, whether **Inflections**, **Derivatives**, or **Compounds** retain the *original quantity* of the radical syllable, even when the vowel is changed, as:

*āmor*, *āmīcus*, *inīmīcus*, *inīmicitia*  
*sāpio*, *sāpor*, *sāpiens*, *insīpiens*.

EXCEPTIONS: <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> from <i>pāciscor</i>	<i>fīdes</i>	} from <i>fīdo</i>
<i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i> “ <i>rēgo</i>	<i>fīdelis</i>	
<i>sēdes</i> “ <i>sēdeo</i>	<i>perfīdus</i>	
<i>vōx</i> , <i>vōcis</i> “ <i>vōco</i>	<i>perfīdia</i>	
<i>dux</i> , <i>dūcis</i> “ <i>dūco</i>	but:	
<i>nōta</i> } “ <i>nōtus</i>	<i>confīdo</i>	
<i>nōtio</i> } “ <i>nōtus</i>	<i>diffīdo</i>	
<i>nōtare</i> } “ <i>nōtus</i>	<i>fīdus</i>	
<i>ōdium</i> “ <i>ōdi</i>	<i>infīdus</i>	
	<i>fīducia</i>	

### Middle Syllables.

**866.** **Perfects** and **Supines** of two syllables have the first syllable long even when that of the present is short, as: *vēnī*, *vīdī*, *vīcī*.

EXCEPTIONS: 7 **Perfects**: *bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*  
*stēti*, *stīti*, *tūli*, *scīdi*.

10 **Supines**: *dātum*, *rātum*, *sātum*  
*cītum*, *ītum*, *stātum*  
*lītum*, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rūtum*.

**867.** Reduplicated Perfects shorten both syllables, but the second may be made long by position, as: tango, tētīgi — fallo, fēfelli. The only exception is caedo, cēcīdi in distinction from cado, cēcīdi.

**868.** Perfects in ūī have their stem vowel short, as:

vētō-vētūī; plācēō-plācūī; cōlō-cōlūī.

EXCEPTIONS: dēbēō, = dēhibēō; flōrēō from flōs; pārēō, and pōno, but pōsui.

**869.** Supines in itūm have i long when from Perfects in īvī (ii), as: cupītum, petītum, audītum. recensēo has recensītum from recensūī in the Perfect.

**870.** Verbs in iō (iōr) of the Third Conjugation have a short stem vowel: fāciō, cūpiō, jāciō, pātiōr, &c. &c.

**871.** The verb endings imus, itis have only in the Present of the Fourth Conjugation a long penult; also in sīmus, sītis; possīmus, possītis; velīmus, velītis; nolīmus, nolītis; malīmus, malītis; faxīmus, faxītis.

**872.** In rīmūs and rītīs of the Future Perfect, and Perfect Subjunctive, i of the penult is common, i. e., it may be long in verse. āmāvērīmūs, āmāvērītīs.

**873.** The terminations ābūs, ōbūs, ēbūs in plural cases, have a long penult, ībūs and ūbūs a short one.

filiābus, duōbus, diēbus — ducībus, acūbus.

**874.** Derivative Adjectives in ālis, ārīs, ānūs, īvūs, ōsūs have the penult long: naturālis, vulgāris, humānus, natīvus, odiōsus;

those in īcūs and īdūs have it short: bellīcus, cupīdus.

EXCEPTIONS: amīcus, antīcus, aprīcus, postīcus, pudīcus.

**875.** Verbal Adjectives in ilis have the penult short, as docīlis, faciīlis. But Derivatives from nouns have it long, as hostīlis, puerīlis.

EXCEPTIONS: humīlis from humus; parīlis from pār.

**876.** Adjectives in īnūs have the penult long, as:

divīnus, genuīnus, peregrīnus, vicīnus.

But if such Adjectives denote time or material, the penult is short, as: adamantīnus, crastīnus, diutīnus.

EXCEPTIONS: matutīnus, vespertīnus, repentīnus.

**Final Syllables.**

**877.** In words of more than one syllable, final **a**, **e**, and **y** are short, **i**, **o**, and **u** are long:

1. **a** is short: terrā, tectā, capitā.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of the *First Declension*: terrā.

Vocative of *Greek words* in ās: Aeneā.

Imperative of *First Conjugation*: amā.

Most uninflected words as trīgintā, antēā, contrā; but: itā, quīā.

2. **e** is short: retē, ipse, antē.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of *Fifth Declension*, diē.

Imperative of *Second Conjugation*, mōnē.

Most Adverbs from Adjectives of the *Second Declension*, as: rectē, doctē. But notice: bēnē, mālē, saepē, temerē, supernē, infernē. impunē and necessē are from old forms impunīs and necessīs.

Greek words in e (η): Niobē, Tempē.

3. **i** is long: dominī, vigintī, amarī.

EXCEPTIONS:

nisī, quasī.

Dative and Vocative of *Greek words*, Daphnidī, Alexī.

**i** is common in: mihī, tībī, sibī, ibī, ūbī.

Notice the Compounds: of ūbī: ubīnam, ubīvis, ubīque — of ibī: alībī, ibīdem — of ut, utī: utīnam, utīque.

4. **o** is long: bonō, amātō.

EXCEPTIONS:

Nouns of the *Third Declension* and verbal forms, as: leō, vētō.

ēgō, dūō, mōdō, dummōdō, tantummōdō, quandō, quandōquidēm.

5. **u** is always long: cornū, fructū, auditū.

**878.** All *Final Syllables* that end in a single consonant other than **s** are short: ād, amāt, consūl, capūt.

EXCEPTIONS:

Compounds of pār, dispār, impār.—The *Adverbs* illic, illuc, istuc.

Many *Greek nouns*, as: aēr, aethēr, cratēr; also alēc, liēn.

**879.** Final **as, es, os** are long; final **is, us, ys** are short.

1. **as** is *long*: **Messiās, silvās, vocās.**

EXCEPTIONS:

**Greek nouns** in **ās, ādīs, as Arcās, Arcādīs.**

**Greek accusative plur.:** **herōās, Arcādās.**

**anās, anātis.**

2. **es** is *long*: **legēs, diēs, docēs.**

EXCEPTIONS:

**Nom. Sing. Third Declension,** when the Genitive has **ētīs, itīs, īdīs** with *short* penult, as **milēs, segēs, obsēs;** but **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.**

Compounds of **ēs, be;** as: **ādēs**

**penēs (Preposition).**

**Greek words** in **ēs (εϛ) Thracēs, Arcādēs.**

3. **os** is *long*: **deōs, nepōs.**

EXCEPTIONS: **compōs, impōs** — **Greek words** in **ōs: Delōs.**

4. **is** is *short*: **canīs, legīs.**

EXCEPTIONS:

**Plural Cases** of all Declensions: **mensīs, servīs, nobīs, omnīs, partīs (Accus. pl.).**

The **Nominative** of such substantives as have in the Genitive **itīs, inīs, entīs,** as **Salāmīs, Samnīs, Simōīs, -entīs.**

**Second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Active, Fourth Conjugation** **audīs;** likewise **velīs, nolīs, malīs, possīs** and the Compounds of **sīs. pulvīs** and **sanguīs.**

5. **us** is *short*: **gladiūs, vulnūs, fructūs, amāmūs.**

EXCEPTIONS:

**Gen. Sing. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Fourth Declension,** **fructūs.**

**Nominative** of the **Third Declension** when the Genitive has a long **u:** **virtūs, palūs, tellūs.**

**Greek words** with **u long (ov): tripūs.**

6. **ys** (in words of Greek origin) is *short*: **chlamýs, Halýs.**

### Monosyllables.

**880.** All words of *one syllable* that end in a vowel, are long: **ā, dā, mē, dē, hī, prō, tū.**

The attached particles **-quē, -vě, -ně, -cě, -tě, -ptě** are *short.*  
On the Prefix **rě** see below **885.**

**881.** **Substantives and Adjectives** of one syllable are *long*, when they end in a consonant even if the stem-syllable be short, as: **ōs**, **mōs**, **vēr**, **sōl**, **fūr**, **plūs**; **pēs** (**pēdis**), **bōs** (**bōvis**), **pār** (**pāris**).

EXCEPTIONS: **vīr**. **lāc**, **ōs** (**ossis**), **mēl**  
**cēr**, **vās** (**vādis**), **fēl**.

**hīc**, *this one*, is sometimes short.

**882.** All other words of one syllable that end in a consonant, are short: **pēr**, **tēr**, **cīs**, **īn**, **fāc**.

EXCEPTIONS: **ēn**, **nōn**, **quīn** — **crās**, **cūr**, **sīn**  
*the Adverbs*, **hīc**, **hūc**, **hāc**, **sīc**.

**dīc** and **dūc** have the quantity of their verbs; **ēs**, *be*, is short.

### Quantity in Compounds.

**883.** Compounds generally retain the quantity of their component parts, as: **dūco**, **dēdūco**, **condūco**; **ēō**, **ābēō**, **ōbēō**, **īnēō**; **dīco**, **contrādīcō**.

**884.** **pro** is *short* in Greek words, as **prōphēta**; but *long* in Latin (**880**) though there are many exceptions, especially before **f**; as:

<b>prōcellā</b>	<b>prōfestūs</b>	<b>prōfundō</b>
<b>prōfānūs</b>	<b>prōfītēōr</b>	<b>prōnēpōs</b>
<b>prōfārī</b>	<b>prōfīciscōr</b>	<b>prōpāgō</b>
<b>prōfectō</b>	<b>prōfūgīō</b>	<b>prōtervūs</b> .

**885.** Of the inseparable Prefixes, **dī**, **sē**, and **vē** are *long*, **rē** is *short*: **dīdūcō**, **sēdūcō**, **rēdūcō**.

EXCEPTIONS: **dīrīmō**, **dīsertūs**  
**rēlīgīō**, **rēfert**, **rēlīquīae**.

**886.** In a few words, the quantity of the second part is changed. Such are: **pejērō**, from **jūrō**; **cognītūs** from **nōtūs**.

A remarkable change of quantity appears in the Compounds of **-dīcūs**, from **dīcō**: **fatīdīcus**, **verīdīcus**, **maledīcus**, and in: **innūba**, **pronūba**, from **nūbo**.

### FIGURES OF PROSODY.

**887.** Elision is the *omission* or rather *partial suppression* of a final vowel or a final **m** when the following word begins with a vowel or **h**, as:

<b>deserto</b> in <b>litore</b>	<i>to be read</i> <b>desert'</b> in <b>litore</b>
<b>certae occumbere morti</b>	“ <b>cert'</b> <b>occumbere morti</b>
<b>supremum audire laborem</b>	“ <b>suprem'</b> <b>audire laborem</b> .

**888.** The practice of elision is followed in poetry to avoid the hiatus (*gaping*), or the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables. But *before* and *after Interjections* the hiatus is allowed, as:

O ēt | dē Lātī|ā, ō | ēt dē | gēntē Sā|binā.

**889.** Elided syllables should be sounded but lightly. After a vowel or **m** final, the word **est** drops its **e** and is joined with the preceding syllable; as:

multa est, *read* multa'st; multum est, *read* multum'st.

**890.** Synaerēsis, or the *contraction* of two vowels which are commonly pronounced separately, is regular in the following words: dēinde, prōinde, dēest, dēesse, āntehāc (= ānthāc) and in all forms of the verb anteire (= antīre).

**891.** In like manner **i** and **u** before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sounds of *y* and *w*, as: flūvīōrūm *say* flūvyōrūm; ābīētē = ābyētē; genūā = genwa.

**892.** One syllable is sometimes resolved into *two* by Diaerēsis, as: sī lū ae = sil vae; in sū ē tūs = in suē tūs.

**893.** Syncōpe, a *cutting short* is the taking away of one or more letters from the middle of a word, as: saeculum *for* saecūlum; prendere *for* prehendere.

**894.** Apocōpe, a *cutting off*, is the cutting off a letter or letters from the end of a word, as: viden, *for* videsne; ain *for* aisne.

**895.** Systōle is the *shortening* of a long syllable, as: dedē-runt *for* dedērunt; Diastōle the *lengthening* of a short syllable, as Prīamīdes *for* Prīamīdes.

**896.** Epenthēsis is the *insertion* of a letter or a syllable in the middle of a word, as in the old forms sīēt, possīēt *for* sīt, possīt.

**897.** Tmēsis is the *separation* of compound words into their parts, as:

quam rem cunque <i>for</i> ,	quamcunque rem
per mihi gratum	“ mihi pergratum
super unus eram	“ unus supereram.



ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION.

**898.** A verse, or line of poetry consists of a series of measures which are called Feet.

The feet most frequently employed in Latin verse are the following:

Of two syllables.

— —	Pyrrhichius, <i>Pyrrhic</i>	pătēr
— —	Spondēus, <i>Spondee</i>	virtūs
— —	Iambus, <i>Iambus</i>	āmāns
— —	{ Trochaeus, <i>Trochee</i> } { Chorēus, <i>Choree</i> }	mātēr

Of three syllables.

— — —	Tribrāchys, <i>Tribrach</i>	ādērīt
— — —	Molossus, <i>Molossus</i>	mōrtālēs
— — —	Dactylus, <i>Dactyl</i>	tēmporā
— — —	Anapaestus, <i>Anapaest</i>	sāpiēns
— — —	Amphibrāchys, <i>Amphibrach</i>	ādēssē
— — —	{ Amphimācrus, <i>Amphimacer</i> } { Creticus, <i>Cretic</i> }	fēcērānt
— — —		
— — —	Antibacchius, <i>Antibacchius</i>	āmōrī
— — —		pēccātā

Of Feet of four syllables the following are recognized:

— — — —	Proceleusmaticus, <i>Proceleusmatic</i>	cēlērītēr
— — — —	Dispondēus, <i>Double Spondee</i>	intērrūmpūnt
— — — —	Ditrochaeus, <i>Double Trochee</i>	infidēlis
— — — —	Diiambus, <i>Double Iambus</i>	rēnūntiāns
— — — —	Ionīcus a minōre, <i>Lesser Ionic</i>	mētūētēs
— — — —	Ionīcus a majōre, <i>Greater Ionic</i>	sēntēntiā
— — — —	Choriambus, <i>Choriambus</i>	cūrriculō
— — — —	Antispastus, <i>Antispast</i>	vērēcūndūs.

**899.** The Unit of measure is the *short syllable* (-); this is called a *mora* (*time*). A *long syllable* (—) is regularly equal to two *morae*. Accordingly in some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long, or a long instead of two short.

**900.** Rhythm is the *alternate* elevation and depression of the voice at certain intervals of time. That part of the foot which is distinguished from the rest by a greater stress of voice is called **Arsis**, the other part **Thesis**. The stress of voice laid upon the arsis is called *ictus* (*beat*); it is marked thus †.

**901.** The natural arsis is invariably on the long syllable or syllables of a foot; hence the *Trochee* and *Dactyl* have the ictus on the first syllable, the *Iambus* and *Anapaest* on the last, and the *Cretic* on the first and last. Only those feet which consist of both long and short syllables can have Arsis and Thesis, or Rhythm, and are, therefore, called **Rhythmical Feet**. Those consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are only used as substitutes for rhythmical feet, and take the ictus of the foot for which they stand; hence, a Spondee when used for the Dactyl takes the ictus of the Dactyl, viz: on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the Anapaestic rhythm, viz: the ictus on the last syllable.

**902.** **Rhythmical Feet** are *simple* when they have only one arsis, and *compound* when they have more than one. If the arsis follows, the rhythm is called *ascending*, if it precedes, *descending*.

**903.** A **Verse** is *simple* when it has one dominant measure which determines the rhythm of the whole verse; and *compound*, when different rhythms are combined in the same verse. The latter are only found in lyric poetry.

**904.** A verse takes its name from the predominant measure as *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Dactylic*, *Anapaestic*, and from the number of feet that compose it, as, *Hexameter*, *Pentameter*, *Tetrameter*, *Trimeter*, *Dimeter*, *Monometer*.

**905.** In **Dactyls** and all compound rhythmical feet (see above **902**) a measure is *a single foot*; accordingly, a verse having five dactyls is called a *pentameter*; one having six dactyls, *hexameter*.

**906.** **Trochaic**, **Iambic**, and **Anapaestic** verses are measured *not by single feet, but by pairs* (*dipodĭa*, *dipody*). In these rhythms a *monometer* contains two feet, a *dimeter* four, a *trimeter* six, a *tetrameter* eight.

**907.** A verse is termed **Acatalectic** (*not halting short*) when its last foot is complete; a verse lacking a syllable at the end is called **Catalectic**; it is catalectic in *syllābam*, or in *bisyllābum*, according to the number of syllables in the last foot.

**908.** The last syllable of a verse may be long or short indifferently, and is, therefore, called *syllāba anceps*, because the time wanting is made up by pause.

**909.** Most simple verses have certain breaks or pauses to rest the voice, and to prevent monotony. The *break* occasioned by the ending of a word in the middle of a foot, is called *Caesūra* marked thus †. The verse

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ |

Donec † eris † felix † multos † numerabis † amicos

has five *Caesūrae*. Again, the *coincidence* of the end of a word with the end of a foot is called *Diaerēsis* marked thus ||.

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ || ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ◡

Tempora || si fuerint || nubila || solus eris.

Every verse must have, about its middle, one principal *caesūra* or *diaerēsis*.

**910.** *Caesūra* is prevailing in *Iambic* and *Dactylic* verses, while the *Anapaestic Dimeter*, *Trochaic Tetrameter*, *Dactylic Pentameter* and the *Choriambic* verse have a fixed *diaerēsis* in the middle of the verse.

**911.** A *caesūra* occurring after the *arsis* of a foot is called *masculine*; a *caesūra* occurring after the *thesis* is called *feminine*:

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡

Una salus † victis † nullam † sperare † salutem.

masc.    masc.    masc.    fem.

A *caesūra* may be found in any foot of the verse except the first.

**912.** In *Iambic* and *Dactylic* metres, the *Caesūrae* are named according to the number of half-feet before them, thus:

- |                   |                   |                                |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. trithemimēres  | ( $\frac{3}{2}$ ) | at the end of the 3d half foot |
| 2. penthemimēres  | ( $\frac{5}{2}$ ) | “ 5th “                        |
| 3. hephthemimēres | ( $\frac{7}{2}$ ) | “ 7th “                        |
| 4. ennehemimēres  | ( $\frac{9}{2}$ ) | “ 9th “                        |

They are all represented in the following hexameter:

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ |

Ille latus † niveum † molli † fultus † hyacyntho.

1                      2                      3                      4

**913.** To read verse *rhythmically* is an accomplishment which must be taught orally. Observing the rules of quantity and versification, take care not to dwell on the rhythm of the verse to the neglect of accent and connection of the words. The ordinary mode of scanning, as:

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ |

Donec risse lixmul tosnume rabisa micos

is worse than useless.

DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

**914.** The Dactylic Hexameter (Heroic Verse) or simply Hexameter consists regularly of six dactyls and is *catalectic* in bisyllabum. Spondees may be substituted for the dactyl in the first four feet. Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth place, and when it is, the verse is called *Spondaic*. Accordingly its formula is:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏⏏ | ⏏

**915.** Of the great number of possible caesūrae in the Hexameter the following are the most usual:

The principal caesūra is the Penthemimeral, or masculine caesūra of the third foot, as:

⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏ -  
Arma virumque cano, † Trojae qui primus ab oris.

The next is the feminine caesūra of the third foot, also called *μετὰ τρίτον τροχαῖον*, as:

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏  
O passi graviora, † dabit deus his quoque finem.

Then comes the Hephthemimeral in the arsis of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by the trithemimēres after the second arsis, as:

⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏  
Stat sonipes † ac frena ferox † spumantia mandit.

**916.** The last word of a Hexameter should be either a *disyllable*, or a *trisyllable*; monosyllables at the end denote emphasis, as:

⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏ -  
Parturiunt montes † nascetur ridiculus mus.

**917.** In the first part of the verse variety in the use of dactyls and spondees has an agreeable effect. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls, a slow and heavy one by that of spondees. The following examples have been chosen with especial reference to this point:

⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏  
Quadrupedante † putrem † sonitu † quatit ungula campum.

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏ -  
(Cyclōpes) Illi inter † sese † magna † vi brachia tollunt.

ELEGIAC PENTAMETER.

**918.** The **Elegiac Pentameter** consists of two parts separated by *Diaerësis*. Each part consists of two dactyls and the arsis of a third; the first part admits spondees, the second does not:

$\bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | - || \bar{\text{L}} \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup |$   
 Tempora si fuerint nubila solus eris.

It derives its name from the number of dactyls. ( $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$ .)

**919.** The **Elegiac Pentameter** is seldom, if ever, used except in the *Elegiac Distich*, which consists of the *Hexameter* followed by the *Pentameter*:

$\bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup |$   
 Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos;  
 $\bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup |$   
 Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

**920.** No monosyllables can stand at the end of either part of the **Pentameter**, except when preceded by another one, as:

$\bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | - || \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | \bar{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \cup | -$   
 Magna tamen spes est in bonitate Dei.

**921.** Neither *sylläba anceps* nor *hiätus* is allowed at the *diaerësis*. Almost every **Pentameter** ends in a dissyllable, and elision is avoided.

IAMBIC TRIMETER.

**922.** The most common form of **Iambic verse** is the **Senarian**, or **Iambic Trimeter**; it is of frequent occurrence in lyric poetry, and is also the ordinary verse of dramatic dialogue. Since the final syllable must be *anceps*, the formula of the verse is as follows:

$\cup \bar{\text{L}} \cup - | \cup \bar{\text{L}} \cup - | \cup \bar{\text{L}} \cup \bar{\text{L}}$

**923.** In the **Iambic Trimeter** a *Spondee* or its equivalent (*Anapaest* or *Dactyl* with *Iambic ictus* —  $\cup \cup$ ) may be regularly substituted in the odd places (1st, 3d, 5th foot), also a *Tribrach* ( $\cup \cup \cup$ ) anywhere except in the last place.

**924.** The principal *caesūra* of the **Iambic Trimeter** is either the *penthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the 3d foot, or the *hepthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the fourth foot.

COMPOUND VERSES.

**925.** A verse is **compound** if different measures are combined in the same to produce a more artificial movement especially

characteristic of lyric poetry. If a dactylic rhythm passes into trochees, the movements are intermediate between those of prose and poetry. Hence the name **Logaoedic verse** (from *λόγος*, prose, and *ᾠδή*, song). Sometimes an introductory foot of two syllables which is called **Basis** and commonly marked thus X, is put before the dactylic or logaoedic series. The **Verses** constructed upon the **Logaoedic** form (especially those used by Horace) are the following:

1. **Adonic** (a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 Téruit úrbem.

2. **Aristophanic** (a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 Lýdia díe per ómnes.

3. **Pherecratean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 Vix duráre carínae.

4. **Glyconic** (basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \cup$   
 Rómae principis úrbium.

5. **Lesser Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \times \cup \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \dagger \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 Integér vitáe scelerísque púrus.

6. **Greater Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \times \cup \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 Té Deós oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

7. **Lesser Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \cup$   
 Máecenás atavis édite régíbús.

8. **Greater Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \cup$   
 Núllam Váre sacrá víte priús séveris árborem.

In the *Greater Sapphic* and both the *Asclepiadeans*, the dactyl with the catalectic trochee appears a simple Choriambus:  $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup \cup$ ; hence these metres have obtained the general name of **Choriambic**.

9. **Lesser Alcaic** (two dactyls; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 Víriginibús puerisque cánto.

10. **Greater Alcaic** (anacrŭsis; double basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\cup : \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$

Justum ét tenácem próposití virúm.

One or more syllables placed before the proper beginning of the measure are called an anacrŭsis; it is separated by a colon:

11. **Archilochian** (dactylic tetramēter; three trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \uparrow \cup || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup || \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 Sólvitur ácris hiéms † gratá vice vérís ét Favóni.

METRES OF HORACE.

**926.** Verses are combined in two different ways. Either the same verse is repeated throughout; such are the *Heroic Hexameter* and the *Iambic Trimeter*. Or the same verse or different verses recurring in a certain order are combined in a **Stanza** or **Strophe**. A strophe of two lines is called a **Distich**; of three, a **Tristich**; of four a **Tetrastich**.

**927.** Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires. The Odes include nineteen varieties of strophe, viz.:

1. **Alcaic Strophe**, consisting of:

Two Greater Alcaics  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup : \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \\ \cup : \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \end{array} \right\}$  925. 10

One Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis  $\cup : \underline{\quad} \cup \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \underline{\quad} \cup$

One Lesser Alcaic  $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$  925. 9

Justum ét tenácem próposití virúm

Non cívium árdor práva jubéntiúm

Non vúltus instantís tyránni

Ménte quatít solidá neque Aúster.

2. **Sapphic Strophe** (minor), consisting of:

Three lesser Sapphics  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \uparrow \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \\ \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \uparrow \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \\ \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \uparrow \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \end{array} \right\}$  925. 5

One Adonic  $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$  925. 1

Jám satis terrís nivis átque dírae

Grándinis misít pater ét rubénte

Déxterá sacrás jaculátus árces

Térruit úrbem.

3. Sapphic Strophe (major), consisting of:

One Aristophanic  $\frac{\text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \text{I} \cup}{925. 2}$

One Greater Sapphic  $\frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \text{I} \cup}{925. 6}$

Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

Lýdia díc per ómnes

Té deós oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

4. Asclepiadean Strophe I. (minor), consisting of:

Lesser Asclepiadeans  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \end{array} \right\} 925. 7$

repeated in tetrastichs:

Máecenás, atavís éдите régibús

O et praesidium ét dúlce decús meúm.

5. Asclepiadean Strophe II., consisting of:

One Glyconic  $\frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup}{925. 4}$

One Lesser Asclepiadean  $\frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup}{925. 7}$

alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

Návis, quáe tibi créditoúm

Débes Vérgiliúm, finibus Atticís

Réddas incolumém, precór,

Et servés animáe dímidíúm meáe.

6. Asclepiadean Strophe III., consisting of:

Three Lesser Asclepiadeans  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \end{array} \right\} 925. 7$

One Glyconic  $\frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup}{925. 4}$

Quís desíderió sít pudor áut modús

Tám carí capítis? — Praécipe lúgubrés

Cántus, Mélpomené, cú liquidám patér

Vócem cúm cythará dedít.

7. Asclepiadean Strophe IV., consisting of:

Two Lesser Asclepiadeans  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \parallel \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \end{array} \right\} 925. 7$

One Pherecratean  $\frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup}{925. 3}$

One Glyconic  $\frac{\text{I} \times \cup | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup}{925. 4}$

O fons Bándusiáe spléndidiór vitró

Dúlei dígne meró, nón sine flóribús

Crás donáberis háedo

Cuí frons túrgida córnibús.



8. **Asclepiadean Strophe V.**, consisting of the

Greater Asclepiadean  
repeated in fours

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \underline{\overset{\times}{\text{I}}}\text{—} | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup | \underline{\cup} \\ \underline{\overset{\times}{\text{I}}}\text{—} | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup | \underline{\cup} \\ \underline{\overset{\times}{\text{I}}}\text{—} | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup | \underline{\cup} \\ \underline{\overset{\times}{\text{I}}}\text{—} | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup | \underline{\cup} \end{array} \right\} 925.8$$

Tú ne quæsierís, scíre nefás quém mihi, quém tibi  
Fínem dí dederínt, Leúconoé, néc Babylóniós  
Téntaris numerós. At meliús, quídquid erít patí!  
Seú plurés hiemés, séu tribuít Júppiter últimám.

9. **Alcmanian Strophe**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter  $\underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \dagger \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi$   
Dactylic Tetrameter  $\underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi$

Quó nos cúnque ferét meliór fortuna parénte,  
Ibimus ó socií comitésque.

10. **Archilochian Strophe I.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter  $\underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \dagger \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi$   
Dactylic Trimeter  $\underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup}$

Díffugére nivés, redeúnt jam grámina cámpis  
Arboribúsque comáe.

11. **Archilochian Strophe II.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter  $\underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \dagger \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \varpi$   
Iambic Dimeter  $\varpi \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \text{—} | \varpi \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \text{—}$   
Dactylic Trimeter  $\underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup}$

Hórrida témpetás caelúm contráxit et ímbres  
Nivésque deducúnt Jovem:  
Núnc mare, núnc siluae.

The second and third lines of this strophe are often written as one verse.

12. **Archilochian Strophe III.**, consisting of:

Iambic Trimeter  $\varpi \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \text{—} | \varpi || \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \text{—} | \varpi \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \text{—}$   
Dactylic Trimeter  $\underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup}$   
Iambic Dimeter  $\varpi \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \text{—} | \varpi \underline{\text{I}}\text{—} \cup \text{—}$

Pectí, nihil me sícut antea júvat  
Scribere vérsículos  
Amóre perculsúm gravi.

The second and third lines of this strophe are often written as one verse.

13. **Archilochian Strophe IV.**, consisting of:

Archilochian  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} || \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$  925. 11  
 Iambic Trimeter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Sólvitur ácris hiéms gratá vice vérís ét Favóni  
 Trahúntque siccas máchinae carínas.

Two pairs are combined to form a tetrastich.

14. **Iambic Trimeter** alone (see 922).

15. **Iambic Strophe**, consisting of:

Iambic Trimeter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$   
 Iambic Dimeter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Beátus ille qui procul negótiis  
 Ut prisca gens mortálium.

16. **Pythiambic Strophe I.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$   
 Iambic Dimeter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Nóx erat, ét caeló fulgébat lúna seréno  
 Intér minora sídera.

17. **Pythiambic Strophe II.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$   
 Iambic Trimeter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Altera jám teritúr bellís civílibus áetas,  
 Suís et ipsa Róma viribús ruit.

18. **Trochaic Strophe**, consisting of:

Trochaic Dimeter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$   
 Iambic Trimeter  $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Nón ebur neque aúreum  
 Meá renidet ín domo lacúnar.

19. **Lesser Ionics** (see 898).

Two Dipodies  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - || \\ \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - || \end{array} \right.$   
 Two Tripodies  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - || \\ \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - || \end{array} \right.$

Miserárum est neque amóri  
 Dare lúdum neque dúlci  
 Mala víno lavere áut exanimári  
 Metuéntes patruáe verbera línguae.

928. INDEX TO THE METRES OF HORACE.

*The references are to the numbers in the preceding paragraph.*

LIB. I.

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Maecenas atavis: 4.        | 20. Vile potabis: 2.      |
| 2. Jam satis terris: 2.       | 21. Dianam tenerae: 7.    |
| 3. Sic te diva: 5.            | 22. Integer vitae: 2.     |
| 4. Solvitur acris hiems: 13   | 23. Vitas hinnuleo: 7.    |
| 5. Quis multa: 7.             | 24. Quis desiderio: 6.    |
| 6. Scriberis Vario: 6.        | 25. Parcius junctas: 2.   |
| 7. Laudabunt alii: 9.         | 26. Musis amicus: 1.      |
| 8. Lydia dic: 3.              | 27. Natis in usum: 1.     |
| 9. Vides ut alta: 1.          | 28. Te maris: 9.          |
| 10. Mercuri facunde nepos: 2. | 29. Icci beatis: 1.       |
| 11. Tu ne quaesieris: 8.      | 30. O Venus: 2.           |
| 12. Quem virum: 2.            | 31. Quid dedicatum: 1.    |
| 13. Cum tu Lydia: 5.          | 32. Poscimur: 2.          |
| 14. O navis: 7.               | 33. Albi ne doleas: 6.    |
| 15. Pastor cum traheret: 6.   | 34. Parcus deorum: 1.     |
| 16. O matre pulchra: 1.       | 35. O diva: 1.            |
| 17. Velox amoenum: 1.         | 36. Et ture: 5.           |
| 18. Nullam Vare: 8.           | 37. Nunc est bibendum: 1. |
| 19. Mater saeva: 5.           | 38. Persicos odi: 2.      |

LIB. II.

- |                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Motum ex Metello: 1.  | 11. Quid bellicosus: 1.    |
| 2. Nullus argento: 2.    | 12. Nolis longa: 6.        |
| 3. Aequam memento: 1.    | 13. Ille et nefasto: 1.    |
| 4. Ne sit ancillae: 2.   | 14. Eheu fugaces: 1.       |
| 5. Nondum subacta: 1.    | 15. Jam pauca: 1.          |
| 6. Septimi Gades: 2.     | 16. Otium divos: 2.        |
| 7. O saepe mecum: 1.     | 17. Cur me querelis: 1.    |
| 8. Ulla si juris: 2.     | 18. Non ebur: 18.          |
| 9. Non semper imbres: 1. | 19. Bacchum in remotis: 1. |
| 10. Rectius vives: 2.    | 20. Non usitata: 1.        |

LIB. III.

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Odi profanum: 1.      | 7. Quid fles: 7.        |
| 2. Angustam amice: 1.    | 8. Martiis caelebs: 2.  |
| 3. Justum et tenacem: 1. | 9. Donec gratus: 5.     |
| 4. Descende caelo: 1.    | 10. Extremum Tanain: 6. |
| 5. Caelo tonantem: 1.    | 11. Mercuri nam te: 2.  |
| 6. Delicta majorum: 1.   | 12. Miserarum est: 19.  |

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 13. O fons Bandusiae: 7. | 22. Montium custos: 2.      |
| 14. Herculis ritu: 2.    | 23. Caelo supinas: 1.       |
| 15. Uxor pauperis: 5.    | 24. Intactis opulentior: 5. |
| 16. Inclusam Danaën: 6.  | 25. Quo me Bacche: 5.       |
| 17. Aeli vetusto: 1.     | 26. Vixi puellis: 1.        |
| 18. Faune nympharum: 2.  | 27. Impios parrae: 2.       |
| 19. Quantum distet: 5.   | 28. Festo quid: 5.          |
| 20. Non vides: 2.        | 29. Tyrrhena regum: 1.      |
| 21. O nata mecum: 1.     | 30. Exegi monumentum: 4.    |

LIB. IV.

- |                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Intermissa Venus: 5.  | 9. Ne forte credas: 1.       |
| 2. Pindarum quisquis: 2. | 10. O crudelis adhuc: 8.     |
| 3. Quem tu Melpomene: 5. | 11. Est mihi nonum: 2.       |
| 4. Qualem ministrum: 1.  | 12. Jam veris comites: 6.    |
| 5. Divis orte bonus: 6.  | 13. Audivēre Lyce: 7.        |
| 6. Dive quem proles: 2.  | 14. Qua cura patrum: 1.      |
| 7. Diffugēre nives: 10.  | 15. Phoebus volentem: 1.     |
| 8. Donarem pateras: 4.   | <i>Carmen Saeculare</i> : 2. |

EPODES.

- |                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ibis liburnis: 15.    | 10. Mala soluta: 15.       |
| 2. Beatus ille: 15.      | 11. Pecti nihil: 12.       |
| 3. Parentis olim: 15.    | 12. Quid tibi, vis: 9.     |
| 4. Lupis et agnis: 15.   | 13. Horrida tempestas: 11. |
| 5. At O deorum: 15.      | 14. Mollis inertia: 16.    |
| 6. Quid immerentes: 15.  | 15. Nox erat: 16.          |
| 7. Quo quo scelesti: 15. | 16. Altera jam: 17.        |
| 8. Rogare longo: 15.     | 17. Jam jam efficaci: 14.  |
| 9. Quando repostum: 15.  |                            |

## MISCELLANEOUS.

### THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

**929.** The **Roman Year**, by the reformed Calendar of *Julius Caesar*, had 365 days, divided as at present into 12 months:

Januarius,	31 days.	Maius,	31 days.	September,	30 days.
Februarius,	28 “	Junius,	30 “	Octōber,	31 “
Martius,	31 “	Quintilis,	31 “	November,	30 “
Aprilis,	30 “	Sextilis,	31 “	December.	31 “

Every fourth year the 24th of February (VI. Kal. Mart.) was counted twice giving 29 days to that month. The *Intercalary day* — 25th of February — was called *bis sextus*.

In early times the year began in March; hence the names, Quintilis, Sextilis, September, etc. Quintilis and Sextilis were afterwards changed to Julius and Augustus, in honor of the first two Cæsars.

**930.** The first day of the month was called *Kalendæ* (*Calends*); on the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *thirteenth* of the other months, were the *Idūs* (*Ides*); on the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the other months were the *Nonæ* (*Nones*). To these the names of the months were added as Adjectives, as: *Kalendæ Januariæ* = *Jan. 1*; *Nonæ Februariæ* = *Febr. 5*; *Idus Martiæ* = *March 15*.

**931.** From these three points the days of the month were reckoned *backward* in the following manner: The *day before* each of them was expressed by *pridie* with the **Accusative**, as:

*pridie Kalendas Januariās* = *Dec. 31*.

*pridie Nonas Januariās* = *Jan. 4*.

*pridie Idus Januariās* = *Jan. 12*.

In counting further backward the point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning so that *ante diem tertium* Kal. Jan. means *two days before the Calends of January*; *ante diem quartum* Kal. Jan., *three days before the Calends of January*, and so on. This combination is treated as *one indeclinable word*, so that it can be used with prepositions, as: *ex ante diem III. Nonas Junias usque ad pridie Kal. Septembres*, *from June 3 to August 31*.

**932.** In stating the day of a month, two different constructions are used. The original construction is *die tertio ante Kalendas Martias*, *February 27.*; but *die* and *ante* are regularly omitted, thus: *tertio Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *III. Kal. Mart.* The other form is: *ante diem tertium Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *a. d. III. Kal. Mart.*

**933.** CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

*Days of  
our months.*

*January.*

*February.*

1.	KALENDIS JAN.	KALENDIS FEB.
2.	IV. Nonas Jan.	IV. Nonas Feb.
3.	III. " "	III. " "
4.	prid. " "	prid. " "
5.	NONIS JAN.	NONIS FEB.
6.	VIII. Idus Jan.	VIII. Idus Feb.
7.	VII. " "	VII. " "
8.	VI. " "	VI. " "
9.	V. " "	V. " "
10.	IV. " "	IV. " "
11.	III. " "	III. " "
12.	prid. " "	prid. " "
13.	IDIBUS JAN.	IDIBUS FEB.
14.	XIX. Kalendas Feb.	XVI. Kalendas Mart.
15.	XVIII. " "	XV. " "
16.	XVII. " "	XIV. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XIII. " "
18.	XV. " "	XII. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XI. " "
20.	XIII. " "	X. " "
21.	XII. " "	IX. " "
22.	XI. " "	VIII. " "
23.	X. " "	VII. " "
24.	IX. " "	VI. " "
25.	VIII. " "	V. " "
26.	VII. " "	IV. " "
27.	VI. " "	III. " "
28.	V. " "	prid. " "
29.	IV. " "	[prid. Kal. Mart. in leap-
30.	III. " "	year, the vi. Kal. (24th)
31.	prid. " "	being counted twice.]

(So *Aug., Dec.*)

Days of  
our months.

March.

April.

1.	KALENDIS MART.	KALENDIS APR.
2.	VI. Nonas Mart.	IV. Nonas Apr.
3.	V. " "	III. " "
4.	IV. " "	prid. " "
5.	III. " "	NONIS APR.
6.	prid. " "	VIII. Idus Apr.
7.	NONIS MART.	VII. " "
8.	VIII. Idus Mart.	VI. " "
9.	VII. " "	V. " "
10.	VI. " "	IV. " "
11.	V. " "	III. " "
12.	IV. " "	prid. " "
13.	III. " "	IDĪBUS APR.
14.	prid. " "	XVIII. Kalendas Maias.
15.	IDĪBUS MART.	XVII. " "
16.	XVII. Kalendas Aprilis.	XVI. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XV. " "
18.	XV. " "	XIV. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XIII. " "
20.	XIII. " "	XII. " "
21.	XII. " "	XI. " "
22.	XI. " "	X. " "
23.	X. " "	IX. " "
24.	IX. " "	VIII. " "
25.	VIII. " "	VII. " "
26.	VII. " "	VI. " "
27.	VI. " "	V. " "
28.	V. " "	IV. " "
29.	IV. " "	III. " "
30.	III. " "	prid. " "
31.	prid. " "	(So June, Sept., Nov.)

(So May, July, Oct.)

**934.** To turn Roman dates into English:

For **Calends**: Add *two* to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

For **Ides** and **Nones**: Add *one* to the date of the Nones and Ides of the month in question, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. VIII. Kal. Febr. ( $31 + 2 - 8$ ) = *Jan. 25*.

a. d. IV. Non. Mart. ( $7 + 1 - 4$ ) = *March 4*.

a. d. IV. Id. Sept. ( $13 + 1 - 4$ ) = *Sept. 10*.

**935.** The **Year** was designated by the names of the Consuls for that year: but was also reckoned from the building of the City (ab urbe condita, anno urbis conditae) which, according to Varro, corresponds with the 753d year B. C. In order to reduce such dates to those of the Christian era, if the given number be less than 754, subtract it from the latter, and the remainder will be the year B. C. as: a. u. c. 691 (the year of Cicero's consulship) = B. C. 63; if greater than 753, subtract 753 from it, and the remainder will be the year after Christ (A. D.), as: a. u. c. 767 (the year of Augustus' death) = 14 A. D.

**936.** The **Week** of seven days (hebdomas) was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were named from the planets:

dies Solis, <i>Sunday</i>	dies Jovis, <i>Thursday</i>
dies Lunae, <i>Monday</i>	dies Venëris, <i>Friday</i>
dies Martis, <i>Tuesday</i>	dies Saturni, <i>Saturday</i> .
dies Mercurii, <i>Wednesday</i>	

#### ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

**937.** The **Coins** of the Romans were in early times of copper. The *ās*, being originally the unit of currency, was nominally a pound weight, but was reduced by degrees to one twenty-fourth of its original weight and value. In the third century silver coins were introduced; the *denariūs* = 10 *asses*, and the *sestertius* = 2½ *asses* (*sestertius* = *semis-tertius*, *half third*, represented by IIS or HS = duo et semis, 2½).

**938.** The *Sestertius* was the ordinary coin of the Romans, by which the largest sums were reckoned. Gold was introduced later, the *aurēus* being equal to 100 *sesterces*. The value of these coins is seen in the following:

1 as	nearly 2 cents.
2½ asses = 1 sestertius or nummus (HS)	“ 4 “
10 asses = 4 sestertii = 1 denarius	“ 16 “
1000 sestertii = 1 sestertium	\$40.00

**939.** The *Sestertium* was a sum of money, not a coin. Though probably the genitive plural of *sestertius*, the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun, thus: *tria sestertia* = \$120.00. When joined with the multiplicative adverbs it denotes a sum of a *hundred thousand*, *centena milia* being omitted, thus: *decies sestertium*, *a million* = \$40,000.



**940.** The Roman **Measures of Length** are the following:

12 uncīae, *inches* = 1 pes, *Roman foot* (11.6 *Engl. inches*)

1 cubītus, *cubit* =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  feet

1 gradus, *step* =  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet

1 passus, *pace* = 5 feet

mille passūum, *1000 paces* = 1 mile (4850 *Engl. feet*).

**941.** The basis of **Square Measure** was the *jugĕrum*, an area of 240 Roman feet long and 120 broad, a little less than  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an English acre.

**942.** The **Measures of Weight** are:

12 uncīae (*ounces*) = one pound (*libra*, about  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb. *avoirdupois*).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are:

- |                                 |                                  |                                 |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ( $\frac{1}{12}$ ), uncīa;   | 5. ( $\frac{5}{12}$ ), quincunx; | 9. ( $\frac{3}{4}$ ), dodrans;  |
| 2. ( $\frac{1}{6}$ ), sextarī;  | 6. ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ), semissis;  | 10. ( $\frac{5}{8}$ ), dextans; |
| 3. ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), quadrans; | 7. ( $\frac{7}{12}$ ), septunx;  | 11. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ ), deunx;  |
| 4. ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ), trīens;   | 8. ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ), bessis;    | 12. <b>As</b> .                 |

The **Talent** was a Greek weight = 60 *librae*.

**943.** The **Measures of Capacity** are:

12 cyāthi = 1 sextarīus (*nearly a pint*).

16 sextarīi = 1 modīus (*peck*).

6 sextarīi = 1 congīus (*3 quarts, liquid measure*).

8 congīi = 1 amphōra (*6 gallons*).

#### 944.

#### ABBREVIATIONS.

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A., absolvo.                   | N. L., non liquet.                  |
| A. Chr., ante Christum.        | Non., Nonae.                        |
| A. D., ante diem.              | P. C., patres conscripti.           |
| A. U. C., anno urbis conditae. | P. M., pontifex maximus.            |
| C., condemno.                  | P. R., populus Romānus.             |
| Cos., consul. Coss., consules. | Pr., praetor.                       |
| D. D., dono dedit.             | Proc., proconsul.                   |
| D. D. D., dat, dicat, dedicat. | Q. B. F. F. Q. S., quod bonum felix |
| Des., designātus.              | faustumque sit.                     |
| F., filius.                    | Quir., Quirites.                    |
| H. S., sestertius.             | Resp., respública.                  |
| Ietus, jurisconsultus.         | S., senātus.                        |
| Id., idus.                     | S. C., senātus consultum.           |
| Imp., imperator.               | S. D. P., salutem dicit plurimam.   |
| J. O. M., Jovi optimo maximo.  | S. P. Q. R., Senātus Populusque     |
| K., Kal., Kalendae.            | Romānus.                            |
| Leg., legātus, legio.          | Tr. pl., tribūnus plebis.           |

945.

PRINCIPAL LATIN AUTHORS.

T. Maccius Plautus . . . . .	B.C.254-184
<i>Comedies.</i>	
Q. Ennius . . . . .	239-169
<i>Annals, Satires, &amp;c. (Fragments).</i>	
M. Porcius Cato . . . . .	236-149
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &amp;c.</i>	
M. Pacuvius . . . . .	220-130
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
P. Terentius Afer (TERENCE) . . . . .	195-159
<i>Comedies.</i>	
C. Lucilius . . . . .	149-103
<i>Satires (Fragments).</i>	
L. Attius (or Accius) . . . . .	170-75
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
M. Terentius Varro . . . . .	116-28
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &amp;c.</i>	
M. Tullius Cicero . . . . .	106-43
<i>Orations, Letters, Dialogues.</i>	
C. Julius Caesar . . . . .	100-44
<i>Commentaries.</i>	
T. Lucretius Carus . . . . .	99-55
<i>Poem "De Rerum Natura".</i>	
C. Valerius Catullus . . . . .	87-47
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
C. Sallustius Crispus (SALLUST) . . . . .	86-35
<i>Histories.</i>	
Cornelius Nepos . . . . .	90-
<i>Lives of Famous Commanders.</i>	
P. Vergilius Maro (VIRGIL) . . . . .	70-19
<i>Eclogues, Georgis, Aeneid.</i>	
Q. Horatius Flaccus (HORACE) . . . . .	65-8
<i>Satires, Odes, Epistles.</i>	
Albius Tibullus . . . . .	54-18
<i>Elegies.</i>	
Sex. Aurelius Propertius . . . . .	49-15
<i>Elegies.</i>	
T. Livius Patavinus (LIVY) . . . . .	B.C.59-A.D.17
<i>Roman History.</i>	

P. Ovidius Naso (OVID) . . . . .	B.C. 43—A.D. 16
<i>Metamorphoses, Fasti, &amp;c.</i>	
C. Velleius Paterculus . . . . .	B.C. 19—A.D. 31
<i>Roman History.</i>	
M. Valerius Maximus . . . . .	A.D. —31
<i>Anecdotes, &amp;c.</i>	
Pomponius Mela . . . . .	—50
<i>Husbandry &amp; Geography.</i>	
A. Persius Flaccus . . . . .	34—62
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Seneca . . . . .	—65
<i>Philos. Letters, &amp;c.; Tragedies.</i>	
M. Annæus Lucanus . . . . .	38—65
<i>Historical Poem "Pharsalia".</i>	
Q. Curtius Rufus . . . . .	?
<i>History of Alexander.</i>	
C. Plinius Secundus (PLINY) . . . . .	23—79
<i>Nat. Hist., &amp;c.</i>	
C. Valerius Flaccus . . . . .	—88
<i>Heroic Poem "Argonautica".</i>	
P. Papinius Statius . . . . .	45—96
<i>Heroic Poems "Thebais", &amp;c.</i>	
C. Silius Italicus . . . . .	25—100
<i>Heroic Poem "Punica".</i>	
D. Junius Juvenalis (JUVENAL) . . . . .	42—121
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Florus . . . . .	—120
<i>Historical Abridgment.</i>	
M. Valerius Martialis (MARTIAL) . . . . .	43—104
<i>Epigrams.</i>	
M. Fabius Quintilianus . . . . .	40—118
<i>Rhetoric.</i>	
C. Cornelius Tacitus . . . . .	57—118
<i>Annals, History, &amp;c.</i>	
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus (PLINY JUNIOR) . . . . .	62—113
<i>Letters.</i>	
C. Suetonius Tranquillus . . . . .	70—150
<i>The Twelve Cæsars.</i>	

Apulēius . . . . .	A. D. 110-
<i>Philos. Writings, "Metamorphoses".</i>	
A. Gellius . . . . .	-180
<i>Miscellanies, "Noctes Atticæ".</i>	
*Q. Septimius Florens Tertullianus . . . . .	160-220
<i>Apologist.</i>	
*M. Minucius Felix . . . . .	-250
<i>Apologetic Dialogue, "Octavius".</i>	
*Firmianus Lactantius . . . . .	250-325
<i>Theology.</i>	
D. Magnus Ausonius . . . . .	-380
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
Ammianus Marcellinus . . . . .	-395
<i>Roman History.</i>	
Claudius Claudianus . . . . .	-408
<i>Poems, Panegyrics, &amp;c.</i>	
*Aurelius Prudentius Clemens . . . . .	348-410
<i>Christian Poems.</i>	
*Aurelius Augustinus . . . . .	354-430
<i>Confessions, Discourses, &amp;c.</i>	
Anicius Manlius Boethius . . . . .	470-520
<i>Philosophical Dialogues.</i>	

---

\* *Christian writers.*

## INDEX OF VERBS.

This Index contains all the *Simple Verbs* in common use which involve any important irregularities, with such of their *Compounds* as require particular notice. — *The references are to paragraphs.*

### A.

- ābēō, -īrě, to go away, 407  
 ābigō, -ěřě, to drive away, 383  
 ablūō, -ěřě, to wash (off), 366  
 abnūō, -ěřě, to dissent, 366  
 ābōlēō, -ērě, to abolish, 356  
 ābōlescō, -ěřě, to disappear, 394  
 abscindō, -ěřě, to tear off, 374  
 abscondō, -ěřě, to hide, 372  
 absistō, -ěřě, to cease, 374  
 absolvō, -ěřě, to acquit, 366  
 abstergēō, -ērě, to wipe off, 360  
 abstīnēō, -ērě, to abstain, 358  
 absūm, ābessě, to be absent, 306  
 absūmō, -ěřě, to use up, 385  
 ābūtōr, -ī, to use, abuse, 396  
 accēdō, -ěřě, to approach, 374  
 accendō, -ěřě, to kindle, 373  
 accīō, -īrě, to call in, 362  
 accīpīō, -ěřě, to receive, 368  
 accūbō, -ārě, to lie near, 347  
 accumbō, -ěřě, to recline at  
   table, 376  
 accurrō, -ěřě, to run to, 387  
 ācescō, -ěřě, to turn sour, 394  
 acquirō, -ěřě, to acquire, 389  
 ācūō, -ěřě, to sharpen, 366  
 adfērō, -rě, to afford, 404  
 ādhaerēō, -ērě, to stick, 360  
 ādīmō, -ěřě, to take away, 389  
 ādīpiscōr, -ī, to obtain, 396  
 adjungō, -ěřě, to join (to), 378  
 adjūvō, -ārě, to assist, 348  
 admittō, -ěřě, to admit, 374  
 adnūō, -ěřě, to nod assent, 366  
 ādōlēō, -ěřě, to grow up, 356  
 ādōlescō, -ěřě, to grow up, 394  
 ādōrīōr, -īrī, to attack, 399  
 adsistō, -ěřě, to stand by, 374  
 adsūm, ādessě, to be present, 306  
 aegrescō, -ěřě, to fall sick, 395  
 affligō, -ěřě, to dash, 378  
 āgě, come, 417  
 aggrēdīōr, -ī, to attack, 396  
 agnoscō, -ěřě, to acknowledge,  
   393  
 āgō, -ěřě, to drive, do, 383  
 ājō, I say, 416  
 albēō, -ērě, to be white, 354  
 algēō, -ērě, to be cold, 360  
 allēgō, -ěřě, to choose, 383  
 allīcīō, -ěřě, to allure, 368  
 allīdō, -ěřě, to dash against, 371  
 allīnō, -ěřě, to besmear, 388  
 allōquōr, -ī, to address, 396  
 ālō, -ěřě, to nourish, 386  
 ambīgō, -ěřě, to contend, 383  
 ambīō, -īrě, to go about, 408  
 āmicīō, -īrě, to clothe, 398  
 āmittō, -ěřě, to lose, 374  
 amplectōr, -ī, to embrace, 396  
 angō, -ěřě, to torment, vex, 381  
 anquirō, -ěřě, to search after, 389  
 antēcēllō, -ěřě, to excel, 386  
 antēpōnō, -ěřě, to prefer, 386  
 antistō, -ārě, to excel, 349

āpāgĕ, *be gone*, 417  
 āpĕrīō, -īrĕ, *to open*, 398  
 āpiscōr, -ī, *to reach after*, 396  
 applaudō, -ĕrĕ, *to applaud*, 371  
 applicō, -ārĕ, *to apply*, 347  
 appōnō, -ĕrĕ, *to put by*, 386  
 arcĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to keep off*, 353  
 arcessō, -ĕrĕ, *to summon*, 390  
 ardĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to burn*, 360  
 ārĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be dry*, 353  
 ārescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become dry*, 394  
 argūō, -ĕrĕ, *to accuse*, 366  
 arrīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to smile upon*, 360  
 arrīpīō, -ĕrĕ, *to seize*, 368  
 ascendō, -ĕrĕ, *to ascend*, 373  
 aspīcīō, -ĕrĕ, *to look*, 368  
 assentiōr, -īrī, *to assent*, 399  
 assĕquōr, -ī, *to pursue*, 396  
 assīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit by*, 361  
 assīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit down*, 374  
 assuescō, -ĕrĕ, *to be accustomed*,  
 393  
 attendō, -ĕrĕ, *to attend to*, 371  
 attīnĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to belong*, 358  
 attingō, -ĕrĕ, *to touch*, 382  
 audĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to dare*, 363  
 aufĕrō, -rĕ, *to carry away*, 404  
 augĕō -ĕrĕ, *to increase*, 359  
 augescō, -ĕrĕ, *to augment*, 394  
 āvĕ, *hail*, 417  
 āvellō, -ĕrĕ, *to pull down*, 389  
 āvĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to long for*, 354

**B.**

bībō, -ĕrĕ, *to drink*, 376

**C.**

cādō, -ĕrĕ, *to fall*, 371  
 caedō, -ĕrĕ, *to fell*, 371  
 cālescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become warm*,  
 394  
 callĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be versed*, 353

calvēō, -ĕrĕ, *to be bald*, 354  
 candĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to shine*, 353  
 candō, *I burn*, 373  
 cānĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be gray*, 354  
 cānō, -ĕrĕ, *to sing*, 387  
 cāpessō, -ĕrĕ, *to lay hold of*, 390  
 cāpīō, -ĕrĕ, *to take*, 331, 368  
 carpō, -ĕrĕ, *to pluck*, 375  
 cāvĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to take heed*, 357  
 cĕdō, *give*, 417  
 cĕdō, -ĕrĕ, *to yield*, 374  
 cellō, *I impel*, 386  
 cĕnō, -ārĕ, *to dine*, 278  
 censĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to value, think*, 358  
 cernō, -ĕrĕ, *to see, discern*, 388  
 cettĕ, *give*, 417  
 cīĕō, -ĕrĕ } *to rouse*, 362  
 cīō, -īrĕ }  
 cingō, -ĕrĕ, *to gird*, 378  
 circumdō, -ārĕ, *to surround*, 349  
 circumfundō, -ĕrĕ, *to surround*,  
 373  
 circumsĕdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit around*,  
 361  
 circumstō, -ārĕ, *to stand around*,  
 349  
 clangō, -ĕrĕ, *to clang*, 381  
 claudō, -ĕrĕ, *to shut, close*, 371  
 cōālescō, -ĕrĕ, *to grow together*,  
 394  
 cōargūō, -ĕrĕ, *to convict*, 366  
 cōĕmō, -ĕrĕ, *to buy together*, 389  
 coepī, coepissĕ, *to have begun*, 415  
 cognoscō, -ĕrĕ, *to know*, 393  
 cōgō, -ĕrĕ, *to force* (cō-āgō), 383  
 cōhaerĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to stick*, 360  
 collīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to dash together*,  
 371  
 collīgō, -ĕrĕ, *to collect*, 383  
 cōlō, -ĕrĕ, *to cultivate*, 386  
 combūrō, -ĕrĕ, *to burn (wholly)*,  
 389

comminiscōr, -ī, to devise, 396  
 committō, -ērē, to commit, 374  
 cōmō, -ērē, to adorn, 385  
 compescō, -ērē, to restrain, 393  
 compingō, -ērē, to drive tight, 382  
 complēō, -ērē, to fill (up), 356  
 comprimō, -ērē, to press together, 389  
 concinō, -ērē, to sound together, 387  
 concio, -irē, to call together, 362  
 conclūdō, -ērē, to shut up, 371  
 concūpiscō, -ērē, to covet, 394  
 concurrō, -ērē, to run together, 387  
 concūtiō, -ērē, to shake, 368  
 condō, -ērē, to found, 372  
 condōlescō, -ērē, to feel pain, 394  
 confērō, -rē, to collect, 404  
 conficiō, -ērē, to make, 368  
 confidō, -ērē, to confide, 373  
 confitēōr, -ērī, to confess, 364  
 configō, -ērē, to fight, 378  
 confōdiō, -ērē, to pick out, 368  
 confringō, -ērē, to break in two, 383  
 congērō, -ērē, to bring together, 389  
 congrūō, -ērē, to agree, 366  
 cōnivēō, -ērē, to shut the eyes, 357  
 consciscō, -ērē, to bring upon, 394  
 conscribō, -ērē, to frame, 375  
 consērō, -ērē, to plant, 388  
 considō, -ērē, to settle, 374  
 conspergō, -ērē, to sprinkle, 384  
 constō, -ārē, to consist, 349  
 constrūō, -ērē, to construct, 367  
 consuescō, -ērē, to be wont, 393  
 consūlō, -ērē, to counsel, 386  
 consūmō, -ērē, to consume, 385

contemnō, -ērē, to despise, 385  
 contendō, -ērē, to exert, 371  
 contērō, -ērē, to rub off, 388  
 conticescō, -ērē, to become still, 394  
 continēō, -ērē, to hold together, 358  
 contrāhō, -ērē, to contract, 378  
 contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble, 394  
 contribūō, -ērē, to contribute, 366  
 contundō, -ērē, to break down, 371  
 convālescō, -ērē, to recover, 394  
 cōquō, -ērē, to cook, bake, 378  
 corrīgō, -ērē, to correct, 378  
 corrumpō, -ērē, to corrupt, 376  
 corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground, 366  
 crebrescō, -ērē, to become frequent, 395  
 crēdō, -ērē, to believe, 372  
 crēpō, -ārē, to creak, 347  
 crescō, -ērē, to grow, 393  
 cūbō, -ārē, to lie down, 347  
 cūdō, -ērē, to forge, 373  
 cūpiō, -ērē, to desire, 332, 368  
 currō, -ērē, to run, 370, 387

D.

decernō, -ērē, to determine, 388  
 dēcerpō, -ērē, to pluck, 375  
 dēcēt, it becomes, 420  
 dēcidō, -ērē, to cut down, 371  
 dēcipiō, -ērē, to deceive, 368  
 dēdēcēt, it is unbecoming, 420  
 dēdiscō, -ērē, to unlearn, 393  
 dēfendō, -ērē, to defend, 373  
 dēfētiscōr, -ī, to be worn out, 396  
 dēfungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396  
 dēglūbō, -ērē, to skin, 375  
 dēgō, -ērē, to spend (dē-āgō), 383

dēlēō, -ērē, to destroy, 351, 356  
 dēlīgō, -ērē, to choose, 383  
 dēlītescō, -ērē, to hide away, 394  
 dēmō, -ērē, to take away, 385  
 dēpellō, -ērē, to dispel, 387  
 dēpendēō, -ērē, to hang down,  
 361  
 dēposcō, -ērē, to request, 393  
 depsō, -ērē, to knead, 390  
 dērīdēō, -ērē, to laugh at, 360  
 describō, -ērē, to describe, 375  
 dēsēcō, -ārē, to cut down, 347  
 dēsērō, -ērē, to forsake, 388  
 dēsīnō, -ērē, to leave off, 388  
 dēsīpīō, -ērē, to be foolish, 368  
 despīcīō, -ērē, to despise, 368  
 despondēō, -ērē, to promise, 361  
 dēsūm, deessē, to be wanting, 306  
 dētēgō, -ērē, to discover, 378  
 dētērō, -ērē, to wear away, 388  
 dēvincīō, -īrē, to bind, 398  
 dēvōvēcō, -ērē, to vow, devote, 357  
 dicō, -ērē, to say, tell, 336, 378  
 diffērō, -rē, to defer, 404  
 diffītēōr, -ērī, to disavow, 364  
 diffundō, -ērē, to pour forth, 373  
 dilābōr, -ī, to fall asunder, 396  
 diligō, -ērē, to love, 383  
 dīmīcō, -ārē, to fight, 347  
 dirīgō, -ērē, to direct, 378  
 dirūō, -ērē, to destroy, 366  
 discernō, -ērē, to distinguish, 388  
 discerpō, -ērē, to tear asunder,  
 375  
 discindō, -ērē, to split, 374  
 discō, -ērē, to learn, 370, 393  
 discrēpō, -ārē, to disagree, 347  
 dissērō, -ērē, to discourse, 388  
 dissīdēō, -ērē, to disagree, 361  
 dissīlīō, -īrē, to burst asunder,  
 398  
 dissuādēō, -ērē, to dissuade, 360

distingūō, -ērē, to distinguish,  
 378  
 distō, -ārē, to be distant, 349  
 distribūō, -ērē, to distribute, 366  
 dītescō, -ērē, to grow rich, 395  
 dīvidō, -ērē, to divide, 371  
 dō, -ārē, to give, 349, 370  
 dōcēō, -ērē, to teach, 358  
 dōmō, -ārē, to tame, 347  
 dūcō, -ērē, to lead, 336, 378  
 dulcescō, -ērē, to become sweet,  
 395  
 dūrescō, -ērē, to grow hard, 395

### E.

ēdiscō, -ērē, to learn by heart,  
 393  
 ēdō, -ērē, to eat, 373, 410  
 ēdō, -ērē, to give out, 372  
 ēducō, -ērē, to lead forth, 378  
 effērō, -rē, to carry out, 404  
 effervescō, -ērē, to boil up, 394  
 efflōrescō, -ērē, to begin to  
 bloom, 394  
 effōdīō, -ērē, to dig out, 368  
 effringō, -ērē, to break open, 383  
 effundō, -ērē, to pour out, 373  
 ēgēcō, -ērē, to be in want, 353  
 ēlīcīō, -ērē, to entice out, 368  
 ēlīdō, -ērē, to strike out, 371  
 ēlīgō, -ērē, to elect, 383  
 ēmīcō, -ārē, to shine forth, 347  
 ēmīnēō, -ērē, to be prominent,  
 353  
 ēmō, -ērē, to buy, 389  
 ēnēcō, -ārē, to slay, 347  
 ēō, īrē, to go, 406  
 ērūbescō, -ērē, to turn red, 394  
 ērumpō, -ērē, to break out, 376  
 ērūō, -ērē, to dig out, 366  
 ēsūrīō, -īrē, to want to eat, 398  
 ēvādō, -ērē, to turn out, 371



evānescō, -ěřě, to vanish, 395  
 ěvertō, -ěřě, to overthrow, 373  
 ěvōmō, -ěřě, to vomit up, 386  
 exardescō, -ěřě, to take fire, 394  
 excellō, -ěřě, to excel, 386  
 excidō, -ěřě, to hew out, 371  
 excindō, -ěřě, to destroy, 374  
 exhauriō, -īřě, to exhaust, 398  
 expergiscōr, -ī, to awake, 396  
 expēriōr, -īrī, to try, 399  
 explicō, -ārě, to unfold, 347  
 explōdō, -ěřě, to hiss off, 371  
 exposcō, -ěřě, to request earnestly, 393  
 exprimō, -ěřě, to press out, 389  
 existō, -ěřě, to come forth, 374  
 exstingūō, -ěřě, to put out, 378  
 exstō, -ārě, to exist, 349  
 extendō, -ěřě, to stretch out, 371  
 extimescō, -ěřě, to fear, 394  
 exūō, -ěřě, to put off, 366

## F.

fācessō, -ěřě, to accomplish, 390  
 fāciō, -ěřě, to do, make, 368  
 fallō, -ěřě, to cheat, 387  
 farcīō, -īřě, to stuff, 398  
 fārī, to speak, 416  
 fātěōr, -ērī, to confess, 364  
 fāvěō, -ěřě, to favor, 357  
 fendō, I fend, 373  
 fěriō, -īřě, to strike, beat, 398  
 fěrō, -řě, to bear, 336, 389, 403  
 fěročīō, -īřě, to be unruly, 398  
 fervěō, -ěřě, to glow, 357  
 fidō, -ěřě, to trust, confide, 373  
 figō, -ěřě, to fix, 379  
 findō, -ěřě, to split, cleave 374  
 fingō, -ěřě, to fashion, 379  
 fīō, fīērī, to become, 368, 411  
 flāvěō, -ěřě, to be golden yellow,

flāvescō, -ěřě, to become yellow, 394  
 flectō, -ěřě, to bend, 380  
 flěō, -ěřě, to weep, 356  
 flīgō, -ěřě, to strike, 378  
 flōřěō, -ěřě, to blossom, 353  
 fluctūō, -ārě, to wave, 365  
 flūō, -ěřě, to flow, 367  
 fōdīō, -ěřě, to dig, 332, 368  
 fōřem, I should be, 418  
 fówěō, -ěřě, to cherish, 357  
 frangō, -ěřě, to break, 385  
 frēmō, -ěřě, to growl, 386  
 frīcō, -ārě, to rub, 347  
 frīgěō, -ěřě, to be cold, 359  
 frūōr, -ī, to enjoy, 396  
 fūgiō, -ěřě, to flee, 332, 368  
 fulcīō, -īřě, to support, 398  
 fulgěō, -ěřě, to shine, 360  
 fundō, -ěřě, to pour, 373  
 fungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396  
 fūrō, -ěřě, to rage, 389

## G.

gauděō, -ěřě, to rejoice, 363  
 gěmō, -ěřě, to groan, 386  
 gěřō, -ěřě, to carry on, 389  
 gignō, -ěřě, to beget, 386  
 gliscō, -ěřě, to grow up, 393  
 glūbō, -ěřě, to peel, 375  
 grādīōr, -ī, to step, 396  
 grandescō, -ěřě, to grow, 395  
 grāvescō, -ěřě, to grow heavy, 395  
 grūō or rūō? 366

## H.

haerěō, -ěřě, to hang, 360  
 hauriō, -īřě, to draw, 398  
 hěběō, -ěřě, to be blunt, 354  
 hěbescō, -ěřě, to grow dull, 394  
 hiscō, -ěřě, to yawn, 394

horrēō, -ērē, to shudder, 353  
 horrescō, -ērē, to stand on end,  
 394  
 hūmēō, -ērē, to be moist, 354

**I.**

icō, -ērē, to strike, 383  
 illinō, -ērē, to bedaub, 388  
 illūcescō, -ērē, to grow light,  
 394  
 illūdō, -ērē, to mock, 371  
 imbūō, -ērē, to dip, dye, 366  
 immīnēō, -ērē, to threaten, 354  
 immīnūō, -ērē, to lessen, 366  
 impendēō, -ērē, to hang over,  
 361  
 implēō, -ērē, to fill (up), 356  
 implicō, -ārē, to involve, 347  
 incessō, -ērē, to fall upon, 390  
 incīdō, -ērē, to fall into, 371  
 incīdō, -ērē, to engrave, 371  
 incīpiō, -ērē, to begin, 368  
 incōlō, -ērē, to inhabit, 386  
 incrēpō, -ārē, to scold, 347  
 incūbō, -ārē, to lie upon, 347  
 indicō, -ērē, to declare, 378  
 indīgēō, -ērē, to be in want, 353  
 indōlescō, -ērē, to feel pain, 394  
 indulgēō, -ērē, to indulge, 359  
 indūō, -ērē, to put on, 366  
 inēō, -irē, to go into, 407  
 infērō, -rē, to carry into, 404  
 ingēmiscō, -ērē, to groan, 394  
 ingrūō, -ērē, to rush, 366  
 innōtescō, -ērē, to become known,  
 395  
 inquām, I say, 416  
 inquirō, -ērē, to inquire, 389  
 insērō, -ērē, to plant in, 388  
 insērō, -ērē, to insert, 388  
 insīdēō, -ērē, to sit upon, 361  
 instrūō, -ērē, to instruct, 367

insūm, inessē, to be in, 306  
 integrascō, -ērē, to begin anew,  
 395  
 intelligō, -ērē, to understand,  
 383  
 interēō, -irē, to perish, 407  
 interficiō, -ērē, to kill, 368, 413  
 intersūm, intēressē, to be between,  
 306  
 intūmescō, -ērē, to swell, 394  
 invēniō, -irē, to find out, 398  
 invētērascō, -ērē, to grow old,  
 394  
 invīdēō, -ērē, to envy, 361  
 irascōr, -ī, to grow angry, 396  
 irrēpō, -ērē, to creep into, 375

**J.**

jāciō, -ērē, to throw, 368  
 jūbēō, -ērē, to order, 360  
 jungō, -ērē, to join, 378  
 jūrō, -ārē, to swear, 278  
 jūvenescō, -ērē, to grow young,  
 395  
 jūvō, -ārē, to assist, 348

**L.**

lābōr, -ī, to glide, roll on, 396  
 lācessō, -ērē, to excite, 390  
 lāciō, I entice, 368  
 laedō, -ērē, to violate, hurt, 371  
 lambō, -ērē, to lick, 376  
 languēō, -ērē, to be weary, 353  
 lātēō, -ērē, to be hid, 353  
 lāvō, -ārē, to wash, 348  
 lēgō, -ērē, to read, 383  
 libēt, it pleases, 420  
 licēt, it is lawful, 420  
 līnō, -ērē, to smear, 388  
 līnquō, -ērē, to leave, 383  
 līquēficiō, -ērē, to liquefy, 413  
 līquōō, -ērē, to be fluid, 353

liquet, *it is clear*, 420

livĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be pale*, 354

lōquōr, -ī, *to speak*, 396

lūcĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to shine*, 359

lūdō, -ĕrĕ, *to play*, 371

lūgĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to mourn*, 359

lŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to atone for*, 366

lŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to wash*, 366

### M.

macrescō, -ĕrĕ, *to grow meager*,  
395

mādĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be wet*, 353

maerĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to grieve*, 354

mālō, mallĕ, *to be more willing*,  
405

mandō, -ĕrĕ, *to chew*, 373

mānĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to remain*, 360

mansuĕfāciō, -ĕrĕ, *to tame*, 413

mātūrescō, -ĕrĕ, *to ripen*, 395

mĕdĕōr, -ĕrī, *to cure*, 364

mĕmīnī, -issĕ, *to remember*, 415

mergō, -ĕrĕ, *to dip in*, 384

mĕtīōr, -īrī, *to measure*, 399

mĕtō, -ĕrĕ, *to reap*, 374

mĕtŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to fear*, 366

mīcō, -ārĕ, *to shine*, 347

mīniscōr, *I recollect*, 396

mīnŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to lessen*, 366

miscĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to mix*, 358

mīserĕōr, -ĕrī, *to have pity*, 364

miseret, *it excites pity*, 420

mītescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become mild*,  
395

mittō, -ĕrĕ, *to send*, 374

mōlō, -ĕrĕ, *to grind*, 386

mordĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to bite*, 361

mōrīōr, -ī, *to die*, 396

mōvēō, -ĕrĕ, *to move*, 357

mulcĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to soothe*, 360

mulgĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to milk*, 360

### N.

nanciscōr, -ī, *to get*, 396

nascōr, -ī, *to be born*, 396

nectō, -ĕrĕ, *to tie*, 380

neglēgō, -ĕrĕ, *to neglect*, 383

nĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to spin*, 356

nĕquĕō, -īrĕ, *not to be able*, 409

nīgrescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become black*,  
395

ningō, -ĕrĕ, *to snow*, 381

nītĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to glitter*, 353

nītōr, -ī, *to stay one's self on*, 396

nōlō, nollĕ, *to be unwilling*, 405

noscō, -ĕrĕ, *to (learn to) know*,  
393

nŭbō, -ĕrĕ, *to marry*, 375

nŭō, *I nod*, 366

### O.

obdormiscō, -ĕrĕ, *to fall asleep*,  
394

ōbĕō, -īrĕ, *to meet*, 407

objīciō, -ĕrĕ, *to throw to*, 368

oblīviscōr, -ī, *to forget*, 396

obmŭtescō, -ĕrĕ, *to grow dumb*,  
395

obrŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to cover*, 366

obsīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to besiege*, 361

obsistō, -ĕrĕ, *to oppose*, 374

obsōlēō, -ĕrĕ, *to go out of use*,  
356

obsōlescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become ob-  
solete*, 394

obsŭm, ōbessĕ, *to be in the way*,  
306

obtīnĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to occupy*, 358

obtundō, -ĕrĕ, *to stun*, 371

occīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to set*, 371

occīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to kill*, 371

occŭlō, -ĕrĕ, *to conceal*, 386

occurrō, -ĕrĕ, *to meet*, 387

ōdī, -issĕ, *to hate*, 415

offendō, -ěřě, to offend, 373  
 ōlěō, -ěřě, to smell, 353  
 ōlěō, I grow, 356  
 oportet, it is needful, 420  
 oppĕriōr, -īrī, to await, 399  
 oppōnō, -ěřě, to oppose, 386  
 ordīōr, -īrī, to begin, 399  
 ōrīōr, -īrī, to rise, 399  
 ostendō, -ěřě, to show, 371

P.

pāciscōr, -ī, to strike a bargain,  
 396  
 paenitēt, it causes sorrow, 420  
 pallĕō, -ěřě, to look pale, 353  
 pallescō, -ěřě, to turn pale, 394  
 pandō, -ěřě, to spread, 374  
 pangō, -ěřě, to strike, drive, 382  
 pangō, -ěřě, to bargain, 382  
 parcō, -ěřě, to spare, 382  
 pāriō, -ěřě, to bring forth, 368  
 pascō, -ěřě, to graze, 393  
 pascōr, -ī, to feed, 396  
 pātĕfāciō, -ěřě, to open, 332, 368  
 pātĕō, -ěřě, to stand open, 353  
 pātiōr, -ī, to suffer, 396  
 pāvĕō, -ěřě, to fear, 357  
 pectō, -ěřě, to comb, 380  
 pellicō, -ěřě, to allure, 368  
 pellō, -ěřě, to drive (away), 387  
 pendĕō, -ěřě, to hang, 361  
 pendō, -ěřě, to weigh, 371  
 pĕrāgō, -ěřě, to accomplish, 383  
 percĕllō, -ěřě, to beat down, 386  
 percensĕō, -ěřě, to survey, 358  
 perdō, -ěřě, to ruin, 372  
 pĕrĕō, -īřě, to perish, 408  
 perficiō, -ěřě, to finish, 368  
 perfrūōr, -ī, to enjoy fully, 396  
 pergo, see perrīgō

permittō, -ěřě, to permit, 374  
 permulcĕō, -ěřě, to appease, 360  
 perpĕtīōr, -ī, to endure, 396  
 (perrīgō) pergō, -ěřě, to go on,  
 378  
 perrumpō, -ěřě, to breakthrough,  
 376  
 persuādĕō, -ěřě, to persuade, 360  
 pertīnĕō, -ěřě, to pertain, 358  
 pessumdō, -āřě, to ruin, 349  
 pĕtō, -ěřě, to seek, 374  
 piĕet, it grieves, 420  
 pingō, -ěřě, to paint, 379  
 pinguescō, -ěřě, to grow fat, 395  
 pinsō, -ěřě, to pound, 390  
 plangō, -ěřě, to beat, lament, 378  
 plaudō, -ěřě, to applaud, 371  
 plectō, -ěřě, to beat, 380  
 plectōr, 396  
 plĕō, I fill, 356  
 plīcō, I fold, 347  
 plūmescō, -ěřě, to get feathers,  
 395  
 plūō, -ěřě, to rain, 366  
 pollĕō, -ěřě, to be powerful, 354  
 pōnō, -ěřě, to place, 386  
 poscō, -ěřě, to demand, 370, 393  
 possidĕō, -ěřě, to possess, 361  
 possūm, possĕ, to be able, 401  
 pōtō, -āřě, to drink, 278, 347  
 praecĕllō, -ěřě, to excel, 386  
 praecinō, -ěřě, to sing to one, 387  
 praedicō, -ěřě, to predict, 378  
 praefĕrō, -řě, to prefer, 404  
 praescribō, -ěřě, to prescribe, 375  
 praesidĕō, -ěřě, to preside, 361  
 praestō, -āřě, to afford, 349  
 praesūm, praessĕ, to be over,  
 306  
 praetĕrĕō, -īřě, to pass by, 407  
 prandĕō, -ěřě, to breakfast, 361  
 prĕhendō, -ěřě, to seize, 373

prēmō, -ērě, to press, 389  
 próficiscōr, -ī, to set out, start, 396  
 prófligō, -ārě, to strike down, 378  
 prōmittō, -ērě, to promise, 374  
 prōmō, -ērě, to take out, 385  
 prosternō, -ērě, to overthrow, 388  
 prōsum, prōdessě, to be useful, 306  
 prōtĕgō, -ērě, to protect, 378  
 prōvidĕō, -ērě, to provide, 361  
 psallō, -ērě, to play on the cithern, 389  
 pŭdĕt, it shames, 420  
 pŭĕrascō, -ērě, to become a child, 395  
 pungō, -ērě, to pierce, sting, 382  
 pŭtrescō, -ērě, to rot, 394

Q.

quaerō, -ērě, to seek, desire, 389  
 quaeso, I beseech, 418  
 quātiō, -ērě, to shake, 332, 368  
 quĕō, -īrě, to be able, 409  
 quĕrōr, -ī, to complain, 396  
 quiescō, -ērě, to rest, 393

R.

rādō, -ērě, to scrape, 371  
 rāpiō, -ērě, to seize, 332, 368  
 rĕcensĕō, -ērě, to review, 358  
 rĕcrŭdescō, -ērě, to break open afresh, 395  
 rĕcurrō, -ērě, to run back, 387  
 rĕdargŭō, -ērě, to refute, 366  
 reddō, -ērě, to give back, 372  
 rĕdĕō, -īrě, to return, 407  
 rĕdimō, -ērě, to buy back, 389  
 rĕfellō, -ērě, to refute, 387  
 rĕferciō, -īrě, to cram, 398  
 rĕfĕrō, -rĕ, to bring back, 404

rĕflŭō, -ērě, to flow back, 367  
 rĕgō, -ērě, to rule, govern, 378  
 rĕlĕgō, -ērě, to read over, 383  
 rĕlinquō, -ērě, to leave (behind), 383  
 rĕmānĕō, -ērě, to remain, 360  
 rĕmīniscōr, -ī, to remember, 396  
 rĕnīdĕō, -ērě, to shine, 354  
 rĕōr, -ērī, to think, 364  
 rĕpellō, -ērě, to repel, 387  
 rĕpĕrīō, -īrě, to find, 398  
 rĕpĕtō, -ērě, to repeat, 374  
 rĕplĕō, -ērě, to fill (up), 356  
 rĕpō, -ērě, to creep, crawl, 375  
 rĕposcō, -ērě, to demand back, 393  
 rĕquiescō, -ērě, to rest, 393  
 rĕsīdĕō, -ērě, to remain behind, 361

rĕsīpiscō, -ērě, to come to one's self again, 394

rĕsōnō, -ārě, to resound, 347  
 respiciō, -ērě, to consider, 368  
 respondĕō, -ērě, to answer, 361  
 restitŭō, -ērě, to restore, 366  
 rĕvertōr, -ī, to turn back, 396  
 rĕvīviscō, -ērě, to revive, 394  
 rīdĕō, -ērě, to laugh, 360  
 rīgĕō, -ērě, to be stiff, 353  
 rōdō, -ērě, to gnaw, 371  
 rūbĕō, -ērě, to be red, 353  
 rumpō, -ērě, to break, 376  
 rūō, -ērě, to rush forth, 366

S.

saepiō, -īrě, to hedge in, 398  
 sālīō, -īrě, to leap, 398  
 salvĕ, hail, 417  
 sancīō, -īrě, to sanction, 398  
 sāpiō, -ērě, to be wise, 368  
 sarcīō, -īrě, to mend, 398  
 sātisdō, -ārě, to give bail, 349

scābō, -ěřě, to scratch, 376  
 scalpō, -ěřě, to carve, 375  
 scandō, -ěřě, to climb, 373  
 scātěō, -ěřě, to gush, 354  
 scindō, -ěřě, to cut, 374  
 sciō, -īřě, to know, 338  
 sciscō, -ěřě, to decree, 394  
 scribō, -ěřě, to write, 375  
 sculpō, -ěřě, to chisel, 375  
 sécō, -āřě, to cut, 347  
 sěděō, -ěřě, to sit, 361  
 sěnescō, -ěřě, to grow old, 394  
 sentiō, -īřě, to feel, perceive, 398  
 sěpěliō, -īřě, to bury, 398  
 sěquōr, -ī, to follow, 396  
 sěřō, -ěřě, to sow, 388  
 sěřō, -ěřě, to join, 388  
 serpō, -ěřě, to creep, 375  
 sidō, -ěřě, to sit down, 374  
 silěō, -ěřě, to be silent, 353  
 sīnō, -ěřě, to let, 388  
 sistō, -ěřě, to stop, 374  
 sōlēō, -ěřě, to be wont, 363  
 solvō, -ěřě, to loose, 366  
 sōnō, -āřě, to sound, 347  
 sorběō, -ěřě, to sip, 353  
 sorděō, -ěřě, to be dirty, 353  
 spargō, -ěřě, to scatter, 384  
 spěciō, I see, 368  
 spernō, -ěřě, to despise, 388  
 splenděō, -ěřě, to gleam, 353  
 sponděō, -ěřě, to pledge, 361  
 spūō, -ěřě, to spit, 366  
 squālěō, -ěřě, to be filthy, 354  
 stātūō, -ěřě, to set, place, 366  
 sternō, -ěřě, to strew, 388  
 sternūō, -ěřě, to sneeze, 366  
 stertō, -ěřě, to snore, 373  
 stingūō, I put out, 378  
 stō, stāřě, to stand, 349, 370  
 strěpō, -ěřě, to make a noise, 376  
 strěděō, -ěřě, to whiz, creak, 361

stringō, -ěřě, to bind, 379  
 strūō, -ěřě, to build, 367  
 stūděō, -ěřě, to be zealous, 353  
 stūpěō, -ěřě, to be amazed, 353  
 suāděō, -ěřě, to advise, 360  
 sūběō, -īřě, to come under, 407  
 sūbigō, -ěřě, to subdue, 383  
 subjicīō, -ěřě, to subject, 368  
 subsūm, subessě, to be under, 306  
 succensěō, -ěřě, to be angry, 353  
 succurrō, -ěřě, to succor, 387  
 suescō, -ěřě, to become used, 393  
 sūgō, -ěřě, to suck, 378  
 sum, essě, to be, 303  
 sūmō, -ěřě, to take, 385  
 sūō, -ěřě, to sew, 366  
 sūperbīō, -īřě, to be proud, 398  
 sūpersěděō, -ěřě, to forbear, 361  
 sūpersum, sūpěressě, to remain  
 over, 306  
 supprīmō, -ěřě, to keep back, 389  
 (surrīgō) surgō, -ěřě, to rise, 378  
 suspendō, -ěřě, to hang, 371

## T.

taedet, it wearies, 420  
 tangō, -ěřě, to touch, 382  
 těgō, -ěřě, to cover, 378  
 temnō, I despise, 385  
 tendō, -ěřě, to spread, 371  
 těněō, -ěřě, to hold, 358  
 těněrescō, -ěřě, to grow tender,  
 395  
 tergěō, -ěřě } to wipe, 360, 384  
 tergō, -ěřě }  
 těrō, -ěřě, to rub, wear out, 388  
 texō, -ěřě, to weave, 390  
 tíměō, -ěřě, to fear, 353  
 tingō (tingūō), -ěřě, to stain, 378  
 tollō, -ěřě, to lift, take away, 389  
 tonděō, -ěřě, to shear, 361  
 tōnō, -āřě, to thunder, 347

torpěō, -ērě, *to be numb*, 353  
 torquēō, -ērě, *to torture*, 359  
 torrěō, -ērě, *to roast*, 358  
 trādō, -ěrě, *to deliver*, 372  
 trāhō, -ěrě, *to draw*, 378  
 transcō, -īrě, *to pass over*, 407  
 trēmō, -ěrě, *to tremble*, 386  
 tribūō, -ěrě, *to confer on*, 366  
 trūdō, -ěrě, *to thrust*, 371  
 tūměō, -ērě, *to swell*, 353  
 tundō, -ěrě, *to thump*, 371  
 turgěō, -ērě, *to swell*, 360

U.

ulciscōr, -ī, *to avenge*, 396  
 ungō (ungūō), -ěrě, *to anoint*, 378  
 urgěō, -ērě, *to urge*, 360  
 ūrō, -ěrě, *to burn*, 389  
 ūtōr, -ī, *to use*, 396

V.

vādō, -ěrě, *to go*, 371  
 vālě, *farewell*, 417

věhō, -ěrě, *to carry*, 378  
 vellō, -ěrě, *to pluck, pull*, 389  
 vendō, -ěrě, *to sell*, 372  
 vĕnĕō, -īrě, *to be for sale*, 408  
 vĕnīō, -īrě, *to come*, 398  
 vēnumdō, -ārě, *to sell*, 349  
 vergō, -ěrě, *to verge*, 384  
 verrō, -ěrě, *to sweep*, 389  
 vertō, -ěrě, *to turn*, 373  
 vescōr, -ī, *to feed upon, eat*, 396  
 vĕtō, -ārě, *to forbid*, 347  
 vĕdĕō, -ērě, *to see*, 361  
 vĕgĕō, -ērě, *to be vigorous*, 353  
 vĕlescō, -ěrě, *to become vile*, 395  
 vĕncĕō, -īrě, *to bind*, 398  
 vĕncō, -ěrě, *to conquer*, 383  
 vĕrĕō, -ērě, *to be green*, 353  
 vĕsō, -ěrě, *to visit*, 390  
 vĕvō, -ěrě, *to live*, 367  
 vōlō, vellĕ, *to be willing*, 405  
 volvō, -ěrě, *to roll, turn*, 366  
 vōmō, -ěrě, *to vomit*, 386  
 vōvĕō, -ērě, *to vow*, 357

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

*The references are to paragraphs.*

### A.

-a, Nouns in, of 1st decl., 56; of 3d decl., 83; acc. sing. 3d decl., 153; changed in compounds, 517

ā, ab, abs, 655; with abl. of separation, 620; of agent, 603; in compounds, 519; with negative force, 531. 2

Abbreviations, 944

abesse — non multum abest quin, nihil abest quin, 766; tantum abest ut. . ut, 760

abhinc, denoting *time*, 674

abhorrēre, with abl., 620, 621

ABLATIVE, 49; sing. of 3d decl., 140, 144; SYNTAX, 603-628; abl. of agent, 603; of cause, 603, 604; of comparison, 609-612; of difference, 612; of limitation, 608; of manner, 613, 614; with opus est, 624; of means or instrument, 605-607; of plenty and want, 622, 623; of price, 617-619; of quality, 615, 616; of separation, 620, 621; in special constructions, 625; of time, 672; with prepositions, 445, 446, 655-671; of place, 687, 688; with names of towns, 683-686; of distance how far, 681

Ablative absolute, 836, 837

absolvēre, with gen., 570

absque, 656

abstinēre, with abl., 620

Abstract substantives, 37; for concretes, 691, 693; in the plur., 694, 695; derivation, 488, 493

abundāre, with abl., 622

-ābūs for -īs, 1st decl., 59

abūti, with abl., 626

ac, atque, 849

Acatalectic verses, 907

Accent, rules of, 29-31

acceptus, with dat., 598

accīdit, with ut, 759

accipēre, with dat. of purpose, 595; with acc. & infin., 812; with gerundive, 841

accusāre, with gen., 570

ACCUSATIVE, 49; sing. 3d decl., 143; plur., 148; in -ās, 157; SYNTAX, 574-586; with active transitive verbs, 574; with intransitive verbs, 575, 576; with compound verbs, 577; with verbs of naming, 578; with verbs of teaching and asking, 579-582; with impersonal verbs, 583, 584; in exclamations, 585; used adverbially, 586; with prepositions, 629-654; with names of towns, 683; to denote space, 679, 680; time how long, 674; how old, 678

Accusative with Infin., 810-820; as subject, 811; as object, 812; after verbs of wishing, &c.,



- 814, 815; *tenses*, 818, 819; in *indirect* discourse, 825; how to *translate*, 816
- Active voice, 272; its participles, 829
- ād**, 629; *assimilated* in composition, 520; in compounds with *dat.*, 592; with *gerund*, 845; with *intērest*, 573; with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable*, 599
- adducēre, with *ut*, 758
- ādēs**, *suffix* in *patronymics*, 487
- adipiscī, with *ut*, 758
- ADJECTIVES, 32, 198-227; of *1st* and *2d* decl., 72-77; of *3d* decl., 137-142; of three terminations, 199; of two terminations, 200; of one termination, 141, 201; defective, 203, 204; indeclinable, 205; indefinite, 268; pronominal, 269; comparison, 207-227; used as *substantives*, 701, 702; used instead of *adverbs*, 550; used instead of *possessives*, 703; denoting a *part* of a thing, 704; *appositive*, 550; *attributive*, 546; *predicative*, 536, 544; in *relative* clauses, 554; with *gen.*, 567; with *dat.*, 598-600; with *abl.*, 623, 625; position, 559, 561; derivation, 496-511; special uses, 701-709; in *abl. absol.*, 836
- Adjuncts of the predicate, 558; of the subject, 558
- adjuvāre, with *acc.*, 589
- admonēre, with *gen.*, 568; with *ut*, 758; with *acc. & inf.*, 814
- Adonic verse, 925. 1
- adspērgēre, with *dat. & acc.*, 593
- adulescens for in *adulescentīa*, 691; in *adulescentīa*, 673
- Advantage, *dative* of, 587
- advenīre, with *in & acc.*, 690
- adventu, *abl. of time*, 673
- Adverbial accusative, 586; phrases, 431
- ADVERBS, 32, 424-446; derivation of, 425-434; from adjectives of the *1st & 2d* decl., 425; of the *3d* decl., 426; of *time*, 437; of *manner*, 438; of *order*, 242; *numerical*, 241; of *place*, 436; used as *prepositions*, 436; comparison, 440-442; with *gen.*, 566. 6; correlative, 439; position, 562
- Adversative conjunctions, 451, 853
- adversus, *adversum*, 632
- ae**, changed in compounds, 517
- aedes & templum omitted, 566. 9
- aeger, with *abl.*, 604
- aequālis, w. *gen.*, 598
- aequāre, w. *acc.* 589
- aeque ac, 849
- aestimāre, w. *gen.*, 569; w. *abl.*, 617
- aetāte, *abl. of time*, 673
- aeūs**, *suffix*, 508
- affātim, w. *gen.*, 566. 6
- afferre, w. *dat.*, 592
- afficēre, w. *abl.*, 607
- affirmāre, with *acc. & infin.*, 812
- Agent, *abl. of*, with **ā** or **āb**, 603; *dat. of*, 596, 597; w. *opēra*, *per*, 606
- agēre, with *annus*, to express how *old*, 678; *id agēre*, with *ut*, 758
- agnōmen, 194
- Agreement of predicate and subject, 536-539; of attribute and substantive, 546, 547; of apposition and substantive, 548-550; of pronoun & antecedent, 551-557
- ajo, conjugated, 416; its use, 823
- āl**, Nouns in, *3d* decl., 91

- Alcaic verses, 925.9.10; stanza, 927.1  
 Alcmalian stanza, 927. 9  
**ālī-** in *ālīquis* rejected, 723; 762  
*alienāre*, with **ā** and **abl.**, 621  
*aliēnus*, with **abl.**, 925  
*alīquanto*, with *comparatives*, 706  
*aliquantum*, w. **gen.**, 566. 6  
*alīquid*, with **gen.**, 566. 5; used *adverbially*, 586  
*alīquis*, 266; its use, 722; after *si emphatic*, 723  
**-ālīs**, *suffix*, 501  
*alīter* atque, 849  
*alius*, 202, 728; *alius. . alius*, *alī. . alī*, 729; quantity in **gen.**, 861  
 Alphabet, 3; vowels and diphthongs, 4, 5; consonants, 6, 7  
*alter*, 202, 728; *alter. . alter*, 729  
 Alternative questions, 798  
*altēro tanto*, 612  
*alterūter*, 202  
*amans*, w. **gen.**, 567. 2  
*amīcus*, w. **dat.** & **gen.**, 598  
*amplius*, without *quam*, 610  
*an*, *interrog.*, 797, 798; *annon*, 798  
*Anacrūsis*, 925. 10  
*anceps syllāba*, 908  
*animadvertēre*, w. **acc.** & **inf.**, 812  
 Animals, Names of, 47  
*anīmo*, **abl.** of *manner*, 613; *anīmo aequo*, without **cum**, 613  
 Answer, Form of, 799  
**ante**, 631; in composition, 521; in compounds with **dat.** 592; to denote distance of *time*, 675; with *quam*, 675; *ante diem*, 931  
 Antecedent of relative, 553; incorporated in the relative clause, 719; agreement, 551-557  
*antepenult*, 25  
*antēquam*, 779, 780  
**-ānus**, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507  
*anxius*, with **abl.**, 604  
*Apocōpe*, 894  
*Apodōsis*, 787  
*apparēre*, with **two nom.**, 540  
*appāret*, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811  
*appellāre*, with **two acc.**, 578  
*appellāri*, with **two nom.**, 540  
 Appendix to 3d conjugation, 331  
 Apposition, 548; in relative clause, 554; **gen.** of *specification* in its stead, 566. 7; expressing *time*, 549; with names of *towns*, 684, 685; agreement, 548-550  
*aptus*, with **dat.**, 598; with **gerund.** & **gerundive**, 844; with **qui** & **sub-junct.**, 793  
**apud**, 630  
**-ār**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 94, 95  
*arbitrāri*, with **two acc.**, 578; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812  
*arcessēre*, with **gen.**, 570  
 Archilochian verse, 925. 11; stanza, 927. 10-13  
*arguēre*, with **gen.**, 570  
**-ārīs**, *suffix*, 501  
 Aristophanic verse, 925. 2  
**-ārīūm**, *suffix*, 482  
**-ārīūs**, *suffix*, 501  
 Arsis, 900  
 Article, not in Latin, 57  
*ās*, Unit of *value*, 937  
**-ās**, Nouns in, 1st decl., 60; 3d decl., 105-107; **-ās**, Greek **acc. pl.** 3d decl., 157; *suffix*, 507  
 Asclepiadean verses, 925. 7. 8; stanzas, 827. 4-8  
**-asco**, Verbs in, 472  
*assēqui*, with **ut**, 758  
 Assimilation of prepositions, 518  
*assuescēre*, with **inf.**, 809  
*Asyndeton*, 850  
 at, 853

atque, 849; atque is, 715  
 atqui, 853  
 Attraction of mood, 826  
 Attribute, its agreement, 546, 547  
 Attributive adjective, 546  
 -**ātūs**, *suffix*, 503  
**au**, changed in compounds, 517  
 audēre, with *inf.*, 809  
 audire, with *acc. & inf.*, 812; with  
     *pres. participle*, 813, 835  
 auditu, 848  
 aurēs, *the coin*, 938  
 -**aus**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 123  
 aut, 852  
 autem, 853; its place, 564  
 AUTHORS, LATIN, 945  
 Auxiliary *essē*, 303  
 -**ax**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 132; *suffix*,  
     498

### B.

**b** changed to **p**, 375  
 belli, in connection with domi,  
     686; bello Antiōchi, 673; bello  
     Persico, 673; in bello, 673  
 bene, compared 441; with emēre  
     & vendēre, 619  
 benedicēre, with *dat.*, 589  
 -**bēr**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96  
 -**bīlīs**, *suffix*, 498  
 bini, instead of duo, 238  
 bis die, *abl. of time*, 673  
 blandiri, with *dat.*, 589  
 -**bs**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124-126  
 -**būlūm**, *suffix*, 494  
 -**bundūs**, *suffix*, 496

### C.

-**c**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 89  
 caelum, *decl.*, 191  
 Caesūra, 909-911; of the hexa-  
     mēter, 915; of the trimēter, 924

Calendar, Roman, 929-936  
 Calends, 929  
 capīo, -**ēre**, conjugated, 331  
 Capital initial letters, 3  
 capitis et capite damnare, 570  
 caput, 129  
 Cardinal numerals, 228-233  
 carēre, with *abl.*, 622  
 carus, with *dat.*, 598  
 CASE-ENDINGS of the 5 declen-  
     sions, 54  
 Cases, 35, 49; dependent, 50; in-  
     dependent, 50; of adjectives &  
     nouns used adverbially, 430;  
     construction of, 566-690  
 casu, *abl. of manner*, 614  
 casus obliqui, 50; recti, 50  
 Catalectic verses, 907  
 causa, w. *gen. & mea, tua &c.*, 566. 8,  
     604; w. *gerund & gerundive*, 843  
 Causal clauses, w. *subjunctive*, 782  
 Causal conjunctions, 452, 456;  
     their uses, 781-786, 851  
 cave, cave ne, *in prohibitions*, 806  
 cavēre, with *dat. & acc.*, 591  
 -**cē**, -**cīnē**, appended to hic, 254  
 celāre, with *two acc.*, 579  
 celer, special forms of, 138, 140  
 -**ceps**, Compounds in, 3d decl., 126  
 cernēre, with *acc. & inf.*, 812; with  
     *pres. part.*, 813  
 cernēres, *potential subjunct.*, 750  
 certe, certo, 430  
 certum est, w. *acc. & inf.*, 811  
 cetēri, *defective*, 204, 728  
 Characteristic of *stem*; 52  
**circa**, **circum**, 634; in composi-  
     tion, 522; compounds of, w. *acc.*,  
     577  
 circiter, 635  
 circuīre, 522  
 circumdāre, w. *acc.*, 593

**cis, citra**, 633

**CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS**, 346-399

coarguere, w. **gen.**, 570

cogere, with **in & acc.**, 690

cogitare, with **acc. & inf.**, 812

cognomen, 194; with **dat.**, 594

cognoscere, with **acc. & inf.**, 812

Collective noun, 38; with plural verb, 543

collocare, *to let*, w. **abl.**, 617; with **in & abl.**, 689

**cōm** = **cum**, in composition, 523; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592

Common gender, 45; common noun, 38; common quantity, 27, 863

commonere, commonefacere, with **gen.**, 568

communis, w. **gen.**, 567. 3; w. **dat.**, 598

Comparative, how formed, 209; how declined, 139; wanting, 224; with **abl.**, 609; with the force of *too, unusually, somewhat*, 705; used in reference to *only two* objects, 709; its force increased, 706; with **-cūlus**, 510; followed by *quam ut, quam qui* w. **sub-junct.**, 795

Comparative conjunctions, 461, 772; comparative value with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, 619

Comparison of adjectives, 207-227; irregular and defective, 220-227; of participles, 227; of adverbs, 227, 440-442; of two qualities of the *same* object, 708

comperire, with **acc. & inf.**, 812

complere, with **abl.**, 622

complures, **decl.**, 221

compos, with **gen.**, 567. 1

**COMPOSITION OF WORDS**, 465, 512-531

Compound adjectives, 531; **comp.** forms of the verb, 303-315; **comp.** numerals, 231, 232; **comp.** substantives, 530; declined, 192; **comp.** tenses of the passive, 309; **comp.** verbs, 513-529; **comp.** verses, 903, 925

Compounds, *Quantity*, 883; *syllabification*, 24; of *dare*, 572; of *essē*, 306; of *facere*, 413; of *ire*, 407; of *prepositions* with **dat.**, 592; of *prepositions* with **acc.**, 577

**con** see **com**

concedere, with **ut**, 758

Concessive conjunctions, 458; uses, 767-771

Concessive subjunctive, 753

Concrete substantives, 37; used for abstracts, 691

condemnare, with **gen.**, 570

Conditional conjunctions, 457; use, 787-790; conditional sentences, 787-788; conditional wishes w. **dūm, mōdō**, 790

conducere, *to hire*, with **abl.**, 617; with **gerundive**, 841

conducit, with **acc. & inf.**, 811

confidere, with **dat.** or **abl.**, 628

congregari, with **in & acc.**, 690

**CONJUGATION**, 35, 270, 295; *First*, 316, 317, 327, 346-350; *Second*, 318, 319, 328, 351-364; *Third*, 320, 321, 329, 365-396; appendix to *Third*, verbs in **Ū**, 331, 332; *Fourth*, 322, 323, 330, 397, 398; of deponents, 324-330; *periphrastic*, 311-314; *special* forms in **conjug.**, 333-338; of *irregular* verbs, 400-413; of *defective*

verbs, 414-418; of *impersonal verbs*, 419-423

CONJUNCTIONS, 32, 447-462; co-ordinating, 448-453; use of, 849-857; subordinating, 454-462; use of, 749-790; place of, 564

Conjunctive clauses, 755 ff.

Consecutive conjunctions, 460; use of, 756-766

consēqui, with *ut*, 758

considēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

consilio, *abl.* of *manner*, 613

Consonants, Classification of, 6

Consonant-stems, 3d *decl.*, 79, 81; of *verbs*, 339, 345

constāre, *to cost*, with *abl.*, 617

constat, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

constituēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

CONSTRUCTION OF CASES, 566-690

consul, used for *consulātus*, 692

consulēre, its construction, 591; with *ut*, 758

contendēre, with *ut*, 758

contentus, with *abl.*, 625

Continental pronunciation, 15

continēre; *vix me continēo quin*, 766

contingit, with *ut*, 759

contra, 636

Contracted syllables, *Quantity of*, 860; contracted vowels in *conjugation*, 344

convenire, with *in* & *acc.*, 690

convēnit, *w. acc.* & *inf.* 811

convincēre, with *gen.*, 570

Co-ordinating conjunctions, 448-453; use of, 849-857

Copulative conjunctions, 449; use of, 849-851

coram, 658

Correlatives, 269, 439

Corresponsive conjunctions, 858

Countries, Gender of names of, 42

creāre, with *two acc.*, 578

creāri, with *two nom.*, 540

credēre, with *dat.*, 589; with *two acc.*, 578; in the *pass. w. two nom.*, 540; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

credēres, potential subjunct., 750

credibile est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

crime or charge, *gen.* of, 570

crimīne or nomīne, with *gen.*, 570

-crūm, *suffix*, 495

cujas, *patrial* *adject.*, 264

-cūlūm, *suffix*, 494

-cūlūs, *suffix*, 480, 510

cum, *prep.*, 659; with *abl.* of *manner*, 613; in composition, 523

cum, *conjunction*; *cum temporal*, 774; *cum, whenever*, 740; *cum causal*, 786; *cum concessive*, 769; *cum historical*, 774; *cum primum*, 773; *cum quis*, 723, 762

cum-tum, 857

cunctus, Nouns with, in *abl.* without *prep.*, 687

-cundūs, *suffix*, 496

-cunque, appended to pronouns, 258; followed by *indic.*, 748

cupēre, *w. inf.* or *w. acc.* & *inf.*, 814

cupīdus, with *gen.*, 567. 1

cura, *ut*, *imperat. phrase*, 806

curāre, *w. ut*, 758; *w. gerundive*, 841

## D.

Dactylic Hexameter, 914 ff.

damnāre, with *gen.*, 570. 1

dāre, 349; with *two acc.*, 578; with *two dat.*, 595; with *gerundive*, 841

Dates, Roman, 931; of year, 935; how to turn into English, 934

DATIVE, 49; *pl. 3d decl.*, 149; *4th decl.*, 172; SYNTAX, 587-602; *indirect object*, *advantage*, 587; with

- intransitive* verbs, 589; with *transitive* verbs, 588; with *compounds* of *ad*, *ante*, &c., 592; with verbs of *twofold* construction, 593; of *purpose*, with verbs of *giving* and *receiving*, 595; *ethical*, 602; of *agency*, with *gerundive*, 596, 741, 840; with *passives*, 590, 597; of *possession*, 594; with *adjectives*, 598–600; with *substantives*, 601
- de**, 657; with *accusare*, 570; negative meaning in compounds, 531. 2
- dea*, *deus*, *decl.*, 59, 67
- debere*, with *inf.*, 809; with the force of the *potential*, 747
- decedere*, with *abl.*, 620
- deceat*, *deceat*, with *acc.*, 583
- declarare*, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
- DECLENSION, 35, 51; general rules, 55; *First*, 56–62; *Second*, 63–71; *Third*, 78–170; *Fourth*, 171–175; *Fifth*, 176–180; of *adjectives*, 72–77, 137–142; of *compounds*, 192. *Case-endings* of the 5 declensions, 54
- Defective substantives, in *case*, 182–185; in *number*, 186–188; defective adjectives, 203, 204; defective comparison, 224, 225; of adverbs, 442; defective verbs, 414–418
- deficere*, with *acc.*, 589
- defigere*, with *in* & *abl.*, 689
- Degree of difference, in the *abl.*, 612
- delectari*, with *abl.*, 604
- demergere*, with *in* & *abl.*, 689
- demonstrare*, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
- Demonstrative pronouns, 252–254; position, 561; agreement, 551, 552; where not used, 716
- Denominative inceptives, 391 395; denominative verbs, 475–479
- depellere*, with *abl.*, 620
- Dependent cases, 50
- Dependent clause, 742; in *indirect* discourse, 825; dependent uses of the *subjunctive*, 755 ff
- Deponents, 276; conjugation of, 324–330; of the *first* conj., 350 of the *second*, 364; of the *third*, 396; of the *fourth*, 399; principles, 831
- DERIVATION OF WORDS, 465, 467–511; of adjectives, 496–511; of verbs, 470–479; of substantives, 480–495; of adverbs, 425–434
- Desiderative verbs, 473
- designare*, with *two acc.*, 578
- desinere*, with *inf.*, 809
- Determinative pronouns, 255
- deterere*, with *abl.*, 620; with *ne* or *quominus*, 764
- deus*, *decl.*, 59, 67
- Diaeresis*, in pronunciation, 13; in prosody, 892, 909
- Diastole*, 895
- dicere*, with *two acc.*, 578; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
- dici*, with *two nom.*, 540; with *nom.* & *inf.*, 821
- dictu*, 848
- dicus**, Adjectives in, 216; quantity, 886
- dies*, 180; in *diem*, 670; *ante diem*, 931
- differre*, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
- difficilis*, 215; *adverb.*, 429; with *dat.*, 598; with *gerund.* or *supine*, 848
- diffidere*, with *dat.*, 589, 628
- dignari*, with *abl.*, 625

dignus, with **abl.**, 625; dignus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. c  
 diligens, with **gen.**, 567. 2  
 Dimēter, 904  
 Diminutive substantives, 480, 481; adjectives, 510; verbs, 474  
 Diphthongs, 5  
 Dipody, 906  
 Direct discourse, 823; dir. object, in the **acc.**, 574-577; direct questions, 796-800  
**dis-**, inseparable prep., 516; compounds of, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621  
 discēre, with **inf.**, 809; with **ā**, for docēri, 579  
 discernēre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621  
 discessu, **abl.** of *time*, 673  
 discrepāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621  
 Disjunctive conjunctions, 450; use of, 852  
 dispar, with **dat.**, 598  
 displicēre, with **dat.**, 589  
 displicet, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811  
 dissentīre, with **ā** and **abl.**, 621  
 dissimilis, 215; with **dat.**, 598  
 Distance *how far* in the **acc.** or **abl.**, 681; of *time* how long before or after, 675  
 distāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621  
 Distich, 926; Elegiac D., 919  
 distinguēre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621  
 Distributive numerals, 237, 238  
 docēre, with **two acc.**, 579  
 dolēre, with **acc.**, 575; with **abl.**, 604; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815; with **quod**, 783  
 dolo, fraude, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
 domi bellique, 686; domus, 173; used like name of *town*, 686  
 donāre, with *twofold* construction, 593  
 donec = quamdiu, 776, 777

Double questions, 798  
 Dubitative subjunctive, 754  
 dubito & non dubito quin, 766  
 dubium non est quin, 766  
 ducēre, with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595; with **gen.**, 569  
 dulcis, with **dat.**, 589  
 dum, *while*, with **pres.**, 734, 776; *until*, 777; *if only*, 790  
 dummodo, 790

### E.

e, Quantity of, in **-ei**, 5th decl., 178, 861; changed to **-i**, 517  
**-ē**, Greek nouns in, 1st decl., 60  
**-ē**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 84; **abl. sing.**, 3d decl., 144  
**ē**, **ex**, 660; in composition, 524; with *negative* power, 531. 2  
 edicēre, with **ut**, 758  
 edocēre, with **two acc.**, 579  
 efficēre, with **two acc.**, 578; with **ut**, 758  
 egēnus, *compar.*, 217  
 egēre, with **abl.** or **gen.**, 622  
**-ēis**, *suffix* in *patronymics*, 484  
 ejicēre, with **abl.**, 620  
 ejus, eōrum, eārum, as *possesives*, 247, 711  
 ejusmodi, w. **ut** or **qui** & **subjunct.**, 793. a  
**-ēiā**, *suffix*, 489  
 Elegiac Distich, 919; E. Pentameter, 918  
 eligēre, with **two acc.**, 578  
 Elision, 887-889  
**-ēiūs**, *suffix*, 481, 510  
 emēre, w. **abl.**, 617; bene, male, 619  
 Emotion, verbs of, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815; with **quod**, 785  
 Emphasis, as affected by the *order* of words, 565

**-en**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 93  
 Enclitics, control accent, 31; quantity, 880  
 Endings in declension, 54; in comparison, 209; in conjugation, 294  
**-endūs, -undūs**, endings of *gerundive*, 337  
 English method of pronunciation, 16-20  
 enim & nam, 854; position, 564  
 Ennehemimēres, 912  
**-ensīs**, *suffix*, 501, 507  
**-entīōr, -entissīmūs**, 216  
**-entūs**, *suffix*, 502  
 Epenthēsis, 896  
 Epicene nouns, 47  
 Epistolary tenses, 740  
 eques, in *collective* sense, 698  
 Equivalentents of supine, 848  
**-ēr**, Nouns in, 2d decl., 64, 65  
**-ēr, -ēr**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96-98  
**-ēr, -ā, -ūm**, Adject. in, 74-76  
**-ēr, -īs, -ē**, Adjectives in, 138; *superl.*, 213  
**-ērē** for **-ērūnt** (*Perf. Ind.*), 334  
**erga**, 637  
 ergo, 855; with *gen.*, 566. s  
 erudīre, w. *abl.*, 607  
 erumpēre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 620  
**-ēs**, Greek nouns in, 1st decl., 60;  
 -ēs, -ēs, nouns in, 3d decl., 108-110; -ēs, *nom. plur.*, Greek nouns, 157; proper names in -ēs, 151  
**-escō**, verbs in, 472  
 essē, conjugated, 303; with *abl.*, 617; with *gen.* as *predicate*, 571; with *gen.* of *value*, 569; with *gen.* & *abl.* of *quality*, 556. s., 615; with *dat.* of *possessor*, 594; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595; the *inf.* esse as *subject*, 808; as *object*, 809

est, qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. b.  
 ēt, 849; used after multi, 850; et is, et is non, 715  
 etēnim, 854  
 Ethical Dative, 602  
 etiām, 849; with *compar.*, 706  
 etiamsi, w. *indic.* & *subjunct.*, 770  
 etsi, 771  
**-ētūm**, *suffix*, 482  
 ETYMOLOGY, 1, 32-464  
**eu**, 11; vocative-ending, 69  
**-eus**, Greek nouns in, 2d decl., 69  
**-ēūs**, *suffix*, 500; **-ēūs**, *suffix*, 506  
 evadēre, with *two nom.*, 540  
 evēnit, with *ut*, 759  
**-ex**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 133  
 Exclamations, in *acc.*, 585  
 Existence, General expressions of, w. *subjunct.*, 793. b  
 existimāre, with *two acc.*, 578; *pass.* w. *two nom.*, 540  
 expēdit, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811  
 expers, with *gen.*, 567. 1  
 explēre, with *abl.*, 622  
 existēre, with *two nom.*, 540  
 existunt qui, with *subjunct.*, 793  
 exspectatiōne, *abl.* of *comparison*, 611  
 External qualities in the *abl.*, 616  
**extra**, 638  
 extrēmus, with *subst.* to denote *part* thereof, 704

## F.

faba, in a *collective* sense, 698  
 fac, with *ut* or *subjunct.*, 806  
 facēre, with *two acc.*, 578; with *gen.*, 569; with *ut*, 758; with *pres. partic.*, 835; facere non possum quin, 766  
 facilis, 215; *adv.*, 429; w. *dat.* 598; w. *ad* & *gerund* or w. *supine*, 848



factu, 848  
 fallit, with **acc.**, 583  
 fama est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811  
 familiāris, with **gen.** or **dat.**, 598  
 familiās, old **gen.**, 58  
 fas est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811; with **supine**, 847  
 fatēri, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812  
 favēre, with **dat.**, 589  
 Feet, metrical, 898  
 Feminine, Rule of gender, 42, 43  
 fertur, with **nom.** & **inf.**, 821  
 -**ficus**, Adjectives in, *compared*, 216  
 fidēre, with **dat.** or **abl.**, 589, 628  
 fiēri, with **two nom.**, 540; with **gen.**, 571; with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595; *quantity*, 412, 861  
 fiēri non potest quin, 766  
 Fifth Declension, 176-178  
 Figures of prosody, 887-897  
 filiā, filiūs, 59, 67  
 Final conjunctions, 459; *use of*, 756-766  
 Final syllables, *Quantity*, 877-879  
 Finite verb, 285  
 First Conjugation, *Active*, 316; *Passive*, 317; *Deponent*, 327; *Verbs of*, 346-350  
 First Declension, 56-62  
 fit, with **ut**, 759  
 flagitāre, with **two acc.**, 580; with **ut**, 758  
 flocci, **gen.** of *value*, 569  
 for, corresponding to **dat.**, 588  
 fore ut, to express **fut. inf.**, 819  
 Formation of the *Genitive*, **3d decl.**, 82-136; of the *Principal Parts*, 339-399; of the *Tenses*, 298-302  
 the former, hic, ille, 713  
 Fourth Conjugation, *Active*, 322;

*Passive*, 323; *Deponent*, 330; *Verbs of*, 347-399  
 Fourth Declension, 171-175  
 Fractions, denoted by ordinals, 236; of weight, 942  
 fraude, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
 Frequentative verbs, 471  
 fretus, w. **abl.**, 625  
 frugi, **indecl.**, 205; **compar.**, 222  
 frui, with **abl.**, 626  
 fugit, with **acc.**, 583  
 fungi, with **abl.**, 626  
 Future I & II, 280; how formed, 298, 300; *wanting* in the *subjunct.*, 302, 746; **Fut. Inf.**, 819; **Fut. Inf. Pass.**, 315, 847; **Fut. Inf.** of *deponents*, 325; **Fut. Participle**, 301; *syntax*, 736-739  
 futūrum esse, **ut for fut. inf.**, 819

### G.

gallīna, in a *collective* sense, 698  
 gaudēre, with **abl.**, 604; with **quod**, 783; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815  
 GENDER, 35; natural or grammatical, 39, 48; of adjectives, 48; in **1st decl.**, 61, 62; in **2d decl.**, 70, 71; in **3d decl.**, 158-170; in **4th decl.**, 174, 175; in **5th decl.**, 179, 180; of the *predicate*, 544  
 General relatives, 258, 259; followed by the **indic.**, 748  
 General value, expressed by the **abl.**, 618  
 GENITIVE, 49; endings of, 51; formation in **3d decl.**, 82; **gen. pl.** in -**ūm** for -**ōrūm**, **2d decl.**, 68; of **3d decl.** in -**īūm**, 146, 147; in -**ōn**, 156; in -**īūs**, 77; SYNTAX, 566-573; with substantives, 566; *subjective*, 566. 1. 4; in *predicate* 571; *objective*, 566. 2; of personal

pronouns, 566. 3; partitive, 566. 6; of quality, 566. 5; answering the question *how old?* 678; of specification, 566. 7; with adjectives, 567; with verbs of *valuing*, 569; with verbs of *remembering*, 568; with verbs of *accusing*, 570; with *esse* & *fieri*, 571; with *impersonals*, 572, 584; of *gerund*, 843

GERUND & GERUNDIVE, 288, 289, 298; uses, 839–846; with *est*, 840; gerund changed into gerundive, 842; *gen.*, 843; *dat.*, 844; *acc.*, 845; *abl.*, 846; gerundive with verbs of *giving*, *taking*, *sending* &c., 841

gloriāri, w. *abl.*, 604; w. *quod*, 783

Glyconic verse, 925. 4

gracilis, *superlat.*, 215

gratīa, with *gen.*, 566. 8; with *gerund* & *gerundive*, 843

gratīam agēre, with *quod*, 783; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815

gratus, with *dat.*, 598

gravis, with *dat.*, 598

Greek nouns of 1st decl., 60; of 2d decl., 69; of 3d decl., 83, 88, 117, 122, 150–157

## H.

habēre, with two *acc.*, 578; *pass.* with two *nom.*, 540; with *gen.*, 569; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595; habēo quod, with *subjunct.*, 793. b

Hepthemimēres, 912

Heroic verse, 914

Heteroclitics, 190

Heterogeneous nouns, 191

Hexamēter, 904; Dactylic Hexamēter, 914–917

hiātus, 888

hic, 252; its use 712; hic, ille, *the latter*, *the former*, 713; *hicine*, *hiccē*, 254

Historical Infinitive, 809; Historical Perfect, 737; Historical Present, 732; Historical tenses, 743

hora nona, *abl.* of *time*, 673

Horace, *Metres* of, 926–928

horrēre, with *acc.*, 575

hortāri, with *ut*, 758

Hortatory subjunctive, 752

hostis, in a *collective* sense, 698 *how old?* 678

humi, like name of *town*, 686

humilis, *superl.*, 215

Hypothetical sentences, 787, 788

## I.

i & j, but one character, 2, 891

ī, *gen.* ending of the 2d decl., 63; for –ī from nouns in –īūs, –īūm, 63; *voc.* ending, 2d decl., 67; *dat.* ending, 2d decl., 77; stems in ī, 3d decl., 79, 80; Greek nouns in ī, 3d decl., 88; *voc.* ending of 3d decl., 154; *abl.* ending of the same, 140, 142, 144; ī, *connecting* vowel in compound subst., 530

–īa, *neut. pl.* 3d decl., 140, 142, 145

–īā, *suffix*, 488

–īādēs, *suffix*, 487

Iambic Strophe, 927. 15

Iambic Trimēter, 922–924

–īānūs, *suffix*, 505

–īās, *suffix*, 487

–īciūs, *suffix*, 501

Ictus, 900

–īcūs, *suffix*, 501, 506, 509

id, *adverbially*, 586

id agēre, with *ut* & *subjunct.*, 758

id quod = quod, 581

idem, 255, 533; used *adverbially*, 717

Ides of the Calendar, 929

-*idēs*, -*īdēs*, *suffixes*, 487

idonēus, with *ād*, 599; idonēus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c; with *gerund & gerundive*, 844

-*īdūs*, *suffix*, 497

igītur, 855; its place, 564

ignārus, with *gen.*, 567

-*īlē*, *suffix*, 484

-*īlis*, -*īlis*, *suffixes*, 498, 501; *superl.* of adjectives in -*īlis*, 215

Illative conjunctions, 453, 855

ille, 255; its use, 712, 713

-*illīmūs*, *superl.* ending, 215

-*illūs*, *suffix*, 481

-*īm*, *acc.* ending, *3d decl.*, 143; *ad-verbs* in, 432, 433

immēmor, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imminēre, with *dat.*, 589

immo, in *answers*, 800

Imparisyllabic nouns, *3d decl.*, 81

impatiens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

impedīre, w. quomīnus or ne, 764

impellēre, with *ut*, 758

imperāre, with *dat.*, 589; with *ut*, 758

Imperative, 283; *personal endings*, 294; of dicēre, ducēre, &c., 336; of scire, 338; *uses*, 804-806; supplied by cura ut, fac ut, 806; by the *subjunctive*, 752, 805

Imperative phrases, 806

Imperative sentence in *indirect discourse*, 825

Imperfect, 280, 298, 299; its use, 735; in letters, 740; *Imperf. Subjunct.* in conditional sentences, 788. III

Impersonal verbs, 419-423; their

conjugation, 421; with *acc.* 583; with *acc. & gen.*, 584

impetrāre, with *ut*, 758

implēre, with *abl.*, 622

imponēre, with *dat.*, 592

impos, impōtens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imprimēre, with *in & abl.*, 689

imus, to denote a *part*, 704

*in*, with the *acc.*, 670; with verbs of *assembling*, 690; to denote *time for how long*, 677; with the *abl.*, 671; to denote *time when*, 673; with verbs of *placing*, 689; to denote *place*, 682; in composition, 525; with *negative power*, 531. 2; in compounds with *dat.*, 592

-*īnā*, *suffix*, 485

inānis, with *abl.*, 625

Inceptive (Inchoative) verbs, 392-395, 472

incipēre, with *inf.*, 809

incitāre, with *ut*, 758

incusāre, with *gen.*, 570

Indeclinable nouns, 181; *gender of*, 44; *adjectives*, 205, 226

Indefinite adjectives, 268; *Indefinite pronouns*, 265-267; *use*, 721

Independent cases, 50

Independent uses of the *Subjunctive*, 749-754

INDEX OF VERBS, *pag.* 274; *Index to the metres of Horace*, 928

Indicative, 282; *use of*, 747, 748

indigēre, with *abl.* or *gen.*, 622

indignus, with *abl.*, 625; indignus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c

Indirect discourse, 824-829

Indirect object, 587

Indirect questions, 801-803

inducēre, with *pres. partic.*, 835

- induĕre, construction of, 593  
 indulgĕre, with *dat.*, 589  
 ab infante, 691  
 infĭmus, to denote a *part*, 704  
 INFINITIVE, 287; its use, 807–809;  
   as object, 809; as subject, 808;  
   its tenses, 818; historical inf.,  
   809; fut. inf. with fore, 819  
 Inflection, 34, 35  
**infra**, 641  
 ingrĕtus, with *dat.*, 598  
 inimĭcus, with *dat.* or *gen.*, 598  
 initĭo, *abl.* of *time*, 673  
 injucundus, with *dat.*, 598  
 injurĭa, *abl.* of *manner*, 614  
 inquam, 416; its use, 823  
 inscĭus, with *gen.*, 567. 1  
 inscribĕre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689  
 Inseparable prepositions, 516  
 insimulĕre, with *gen.*, 570  
 institĕre, with *abl.*, 607  
 intellegĕre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812  
**inter**, 640; in compounds with  
   *dat.*, 592; inter se, for *reciprocal*  
   action, 711  
 interdicĕre, constr., 621  
 interesse, with *dat.*, 592  
 interest, with *gen.*, 572; degree of  
   *importance*, 573; with reference  
   to *which*, 573  
 INTERJECTIONS, 32, 463–464  
 intermittĕre nihil quin, 766  
 interrogĕre, with *two acc.*, 580  
 Interrogative adverbs, 796; con-  
   junctions, 462, 797; pronouns,  
   260–264, 796; place thereof, 562;  
   use of Interrogatives, 796–803  
 Interrogative sentences, 796 ff.,  
   in *indirect* questions, 825  
**intra**, 639  
 Intransitive verbs, 273; *imper-*  
   *sonal* passive, 590; with *dat.*,  
   589; w. *acc.* of *kindred* mean-  
   ing, 576; becoming *transitive*  
   by composition, 577  
 –**ĭnŭs**, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507  
 inutilĭs, with *dat.*, 598, 599; with  
   *gerund*, 844  
 invidĕre, with *dat.*, 589  
 –**ĭo**, Verbs in, of *3d* *conjug.*, 331  
 Ionic rhythm, 927. 19  
 ipse, 255; use, with reflexive, 718  
 –**ĭr**, Nouns in, *2d* *decl.*, 64, 66  
 irasci, with *dat.*, 589  
 Irregular adjectives, 77; irreg.  
   comparison, 220–223; of ad-  
   verbs, 441; irreg. conjugation,  
   400; irreg. nouns, 181–192  
 is, 247; use, 553, 714; is qui, with  
   *subjunct.* 793. a  
 –**ĭs**, –**ĭs**, Nouns in, *3d* *decl.*, 111–  
   114; –**ĭs**, *acc. pl.* ending, *3d* *decl.*,  
   148; Greek nouns in, *3d* *decl.*,  
   154; –**ĭs**, *suffix* in *patronymics*,  
   487  
 –**ĭs**, –**ĕ**, Adjectives in, 139, 140  
 –**iscō**, Verbs in, 391  
 Islands, *Gender* of names of, 42;  
   constr. like names of *towns*, 683  
 isque, 715  
 –**issĭmŭs**, in *superl.*, 211  
 iste, 252; use of, 712  
 ita ut, 759; ita est, *yes*, 799  
 itaque, 855  
 –**ĭtĕrĕ**, Frequentatives in, 471  
 –**ĭtĕs**, –**ĭtĭĕs**, –**ĭtĭĕs**, –**ĭtĭdō**, *suf-*  
   *fixes*, 488  
 –**ĭtŭs**, *suffix*, 503; adverbs in, 434  
 –**ĭŭm**, *gen. pl.* *3d* *decl.*, 98, 140, 146  
 –**ĭŭm**, *gen.* of nouns in, 63; *suffix*,  
   486  
 –**ĭŭs**, *gen. sing.* *2d* *decl.*, 77  
 –**ĭŭs**, *gen.* of nouns in, 63; proper  
   nouns in, 67; *suffix*, 501, 508, 509

-**ivūs**, *suffix*, 501  
 -**ix**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 134

**J.**

**j** & **i**, 2; affecting the quantity of the syllable, 864  
 jubēre, with **acc.**, 589; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822  
 jucundus, with **dat.**, 598; with **gerund** or **supine**, 848  
 judicāre, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass.** w. **two nom.**, 540  
 jugum, its quantity, 864  
 Juppīter, 97  
 jurātus, *active*, 278  
 jure, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
 jussu, **abl.** of *cause*, 604  
 justum est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811  
 juvāre, with **acc.**, 589  
 Juvenālis, **abl. sing.**, 144. 4  
 juvēnis, **abl. sing.**, 144. 3; **gen. pl.**, 146. 2; how compared, 224. III  
**juxta**, 642

**L.**

-**i**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 90-92; *adjectives* in, 141  
 laborāre, w. **abl.**, 604; w. **ut**, 758  
 laetāri, with **abl.**, 604  
 laetus, with **abl.**, 604  
 Latin Authors, 945  
 Latin Grammar, 1  
*the latter*, hic, ille, 713  
 Lesser Ionics, 927. 19  
 Letters, 3-7; names of, 3; gender of, 181  
 liber, with **abl.**, 623  
 liberāre, with **abl.**, 620  
 libet, with **dat.**, 421  
 libra, *weight*, 942  
 licēre, *to be for sale*, with **abl.**, 617  
 licet, w. **dat.**, 421; *conjunction*, 768

Like cases in substantives, 55  
 liquet, with **dat.**, 421  
 locāre, *to let*, with **abl.**, 617; with **gerundive**, 841  
 Locative case, 683  
 loco, locis, 687  
 Logaoedic verse, 925  
 Long vowels, 10, 859  
 longe, with **superl.**, 707  
 longius, without *quam*, 610  
 longum est, 747  
 longus, with **acc.**, 679  
 -**is**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 127  
 ludis, **abl.** of *time*, 673

**M.**

maerēre, with **abl.**, 604  
 magis, maxīme, in *adverbial comparison*, 218, 708  
 magni, parvi, **gen.** of *value*, 569  
 magno, parvo, **abl.** of *value*, 618  
 major, minor natu, 608, 678  
 male emēre, vendēre, 619  
 maledicēre, with **dat.**, 598  
 malle, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814  
 mandāre, with **ut**, 758  
 manēre, with **two nom.**, 540  
 Masculine caesūra, 911  
 Masculine gender, 40, 41  
 Materials, Names of, 38  
 matūrus, compared, 214  
 maxīmam partem, *adverbially*, 586  
 maxīme, in forming **superl.**, 218  
 Means or instrument, **abl.** of, 605-607  
 Measure in prosody, 905, 906; Roman measures, 937-943; of length how expressed, 680  
 medēri, with **dat.**, 589  
 mediūs, to denote a *part*, 704  
 memīni, with **gen.** or **acc.**, 568

memor, with *gen.*, 567. 1  
 -*mĕn*, *suffix*, 494  
 mente, *abl.* of manner, 613  
 -*mentŭm*, *suffix*, 494  
 mercāri, with *gen.* & *abl.*, 617  
 -*mĕt*, appended to pronouns, 251  
 Metres of Horace, 926, 927  
 Metrical Feet, 898  
 metuĕre, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 591;  
 with *ut* & *ne*, 761  
 metus est, with *ut* & *ne*, 761  
 meum est, 571  
 Middle syllables, Quantity, 866-  
 876  
 miles, in collective sense, 698  
 mille, 230  
 mināri, with *dat.*, 589  
 minĭmi, *gen.* of value, 569  
 minĭmo, *abl.* of value, 618  
 minor natu, 608, 678  
 minōris, *gen.* of value, 569  
 misĕret, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584  
 mittĕre, w. *dat.* of purpose, 595;  
 with *gerundive*, 841  
 Mobilĭa substantĭva, 46  
 moderāri, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 591  
 Modification in compounds, 512  
 modo, *abl.* of manner, 613  
 modo, *if only*, w. *subjunct.*, 790  
 molestus, with *dat.*, 598  
 monĕre, with *ut*, 758  
 Money, Roman, 937  
 -*mōnĭā*, *suffix*, 488  
 Monomĕter, 904  
 Monosyllabic nouns, defective,  
 184, 185  
 Monosyllables, Quantity of, 880-  
 882  
 Months, Gender of, 40; in Ro-  
 man calendar, 929  
 Moods of the verb, 35, 281-285;  
 attraction of, 826

mora, 899  
 more, *abl.* of manner, 613  
 mori, w. *two nom.*, 540  
 mos est, with *ut*, 759  
 movĕre, with *ut*, 758  
 -*ms*, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124-126  
 multāre, with *abl.*, 570  
 multi et., 850  
 Multiplicative numerals, 239  
 multo, degree of difference, 612;  
*abl.* of price, 618; with *compar.*  
 & *superl.*, 706, 707  
 muta cum liquĭda, *in prosody*, 863

## N.

nam, appended to *interrogatives*,  
 263; nam, namque, 854  
 Names of men and women, 193-  
 196  
 Names of towns, Construction of,  
 683-686  
 Names of verses, 904  
 narrāre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812  
 nasci, w. *two nom.*, 540  
 natus, with *acc.*, 678; natu, with  
 grandis, 608  
 navibus, *abl.* of manner, 614  
 nĕ, *that not*, 756, 762; after verbs  
 of hindering, 764; after verbs  
 of fearing, 761; in *prohibi-*  
*tions*, 805; ne quis, 723, 762; with  
*optative subjunct.*, 751; with  
*concessive subjunct.*, 753, 769  
 nĕ, interrogative particle, 797;  
 ne..an, 798; ne..quidem, 564  
 nec..nec, 857  
 necessariŭs, with *gen.* or *dat.*, 598  
 necesse est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811  
 necne, or not, 798, 803  
 necŭbi, 762  
 nefas, 181; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811;  
 with *supine*, 847

negāre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812  
 Negative *Conditions* (nisi, si non), 789; negative *Imperative*, with **ne**, 752, 805; negative of *Optative* subjunct., **ne**, 751; negative of *Potential* subjunct., non, 750; negative of *Concessive* subjunct., **ne**, 753; negative of *Dubitative* subjunct., non, 754; negative with **partic.**, 834  
 nemo, 182; equivalent to nullus, 700; nemo est qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. b  
 nequam, **indecl.**, 205, 222  
 neque, *and not*, neque quisquam, neque ullus, etc., 851; neque. . neque, 857  
 neque is, 715; neque enim, &c., 856  
 nescīus, w. **gen.**, 567. 1  
 Neuter adjectives or pronouns used *adverbially*, 429, 586  
 Neuter gender, 44; like cases, 55  
 Neutral passives, 279  
 neve, with **subjunct.**, 757  
 nihil, 181; its oblique cases, 700; used *adverbially*, 586; nihil abest quin, 766; nihil antiquus habere quam, w. **ut**, 758; nihil est quod, w. **subjunct.**, 793. b; nihil praetermitto, intermitto quin, 766  
 nihīli, **gen.** of *value*, 569  
 nihīlo, **abl.** of *value*, 618  
 nimis, with **gen.**, 566. 6  
 nisi & si non, 787, 789; nisi quis, 723, 762  
 niti, with **abl.**, 627; with **ut**, 758  
 no, 799  
 nobilitas, used for nobiles, 693  
 nocere, with **dat.**, 589  
 noli, with **inf.** in *prohibitions*, 806

nolle, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814  
 nomen, 194; nomen est, w. **dat.**, 594  
 nomināre, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass.** with **two nom.**, 540  
 NOMINATIVE, 49; plur. in -īā, **3d decl.**, 140, 142, 145; in -ēs, 157; case of *subject*, 534; of the *predicate*, 540  
 Nominative with **Infin.**, 821, 822  
 non quin, with **subjunct.**, 785  
 non quo, non quod, w. **subjunct.**, 785  
 Nones, in the Roman month, 929  
 nonne, *interrog. particle*, 797  
 nostras, *patrial* adjective, 250  
 nostri, nostrum, 566. 3  
 Noun, see Substantive  
 Nouns substantive & adjective, 33  
 -ns, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 127, 128  
 nubere, with **dat.**, 589  
 nudare, with **abl.**, 622  
 nudus, with **abl.**, 623  
 num, 797; num quis, 723, 762  
 Number, 35, 49; of the *predicate*, 541, 542  
 Numbers & persons of verbs, 293  
 NUMERALS, 228-242; numeral adjectives, 228-233; num. adverbs, 241; position, 561  
 nuntiāre, with **in** & **acc.**, 690; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812  
 -nūs, *suffix*, 501  
 nusquam, with **gen.**, 566. 6

O.

-ō, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 85-87; -ō, Greek nouns in, 152  
 o, with **acc.** in exclamations, 585  
 ob, 643; in composition, 526; in compounds with **dat.**, 592  
 Object, *direct*, 574; *indirect*, 587; of transitive verbs becomes *subject* in **pass.**, 574

Objective genitive, 566. 2  
 oblivisci, with **gen.**, 568  
 oboedire, with **dat.**, 589  
 obsecrāre, with **ut**, 758  
 obsistere, obstāre, with **ne**, **quo-**  
**mīnus**, 764  
 obtrectāre, with **dat.**, 589  
 odiōsus, with **dat.**, 598  
 Official titles to indicate *time*, 692  
 -**ōlūs**, *suffix*, 481, 510  
 omnes, 726  
 -**ōn**, for -**ūm**, *Greek ending*, 2d  
 decl., 69; -**ōn**, **gen. pl.**, 3d decl., 156  
 onustus, with **abl.**, 623  
 opēra alicūjus, to denote the  
*agent*, 606  
 opēram dare, with **ut**, 758  
 opiniō est, with **acc. & inf.**, 811  
 opiniōne, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611  
 oportet, w. **acc. & inf.**, 811  
 oppīdum, in apposition with na-  
 mes of *towns*, 684, 685  
 optāre, with **ut**, 758  
 Optative subjunctive, 751  
 opus, with *supine*, 847; opus est,  
 with **abl.**, 624; with **acc. & infin.**,  
 811  
 -**ōr**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 99-101;  
*suffix*, 489  
 -**ōr**, -**ūs**, Adjectives in, 139, 209,  
 210  
 orāre, with **two acc.**, 580; with **ut**,  
 758  
 oratiō oblīqua, 824; or. recta, 823  
 orbāre, with **abl.**, 622  
 orbus, with **abl.**, 623  
 Order of words, 558-565  
 Ordinal numerals, 234-236  
 ordīne, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
 Origin, expressed by **abl.**, 604  
 Orpheus, 154  
 -**ōs**, for -**ūs**, *Greek ending*, 2d decl.,

69; -**ōs**, *Latin nouns*, 3d decl.,  
 115-117; *Greek nouns*, 3d decl.,  
 153; -**os**, **gen. 3d decl.**, 153; **nom.**  
**3d decl.**, 155  
 -**ōsūs**, *suffix*, 502  
 -**ox**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 135

P.

in pace, **abl.** of *time*, 673  
 paenitet, with **acc. & gen.**, 584  
 par, with **dat.**, 598; with **acc. &**  
**inf.**, 811; par est, *it would be*  
*fair*, 747  
 PARADIGM CHARTS, 54, 302  
 parcēre, with **dat.**, 589  
 Parisyllabic nouns, 3d decl., 80  
 particeps, with **gen.**, 567. 1  
 Participial adjectives with **gen.**,  
 567. 2  
 PARTICIPLE, 290, 291; of depo-  
 nents, 325; how declined, 198;  
 comparison, 227; use of, 829-  
 835; used appositively, 833; at-  
 tributively, 832; with negative,  
 834; in compound *infin.*, 817  
 Particles, 36  
 Partitive genitive, 566. 6  
 Parts of the body in the **plur.**, 696  
 Parts of speech, 32  
 parvi, parvo, **gen. & abl.** of *value*,  
 569, 618  
 a parvūlo, 691  
 Passive voice, 271, 276; *pass.*  
*tenses* how formed, 302, 309;  
*pass. participles*, 830; *passive*  
*used impersonally*, 423; of *in-*  
*transitives*, 590; followed by  
**dat.**, 597  
 paterfamilias, 58  
 pati, with **acc. & inf.**, 814  
 patiens, with **gen.**, 567. 2  
 Patrial adjectives, 250, 264, 507



Patronymics, 487  
 pauci, *defective*, 204  
 pedes, in *collective* sense, 698  
 pedibus, *abl.* of manner, 614  
 pendēre, with *gen.*, 569  
**penes**, 644; quantity, 879. 2  
 Pentamēter, 904; Elegiac, 918–921  
 Penthemimēres, 912  
 penult, 25  
**per**, 645, 674; in composition, 527;  
 in compounds with *acc.*, 577; to  
 denote the *agent*, 606  
**PERFECT**, 280; its formation, 344;  
 tenses formed upon it, 300;  
**Perf. Ind.** special terminations,  
 294; special forms, 333; **Perfect**  
**Infin.**, 300; **Perf. Part.**, 301; **Perf.**  
**Subjunct.**, 300; its uses, 737;  
**Perf. definite**, 737; its *sequence*  
 of tenses, 744; in letters, 740  
 perficere, with *ut*, 758  
 perfrui, with *abl.*, 626  
 perfungi, with *abl.*, 626  
 pergere, with *infin.*, 809  
 periculum est, with *ut* & *ne*, 761  
**Periphrastic conjugation**, 311–  
 315; uses, 741; **Indic.**, 747  
 perire, *pass.* to perdere, 408  
 peritus, with *gen.*, 567. 1  
 permittere, with *ut*, 758; with *ge-*  
*rundive*, 841  
**Personal endings of the verb**, 294  
**Personal pronouns**, 244–247; not  
 expressed, 710; expressed in  
*acc.* with *inf.*, 820  
**Persons**, 35, 243, 293; names of,  
 193–196; with different termi-  
 nations, 46  
 persuadere, w. *dat.*, 589; w. *ut*, 758  
 petere, w. *two acc.*, 580; with *ut*, 758  
**Pherecratean verse**, 925. 3  
**Phonetic pronunciation**, 9–14

**PHONOLOGY**, 1, 2–31  
 piget, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584  
 Place, Relations of, 682–690  
 placere, with *dat.*, 589  
 placet, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811  
 plenus, with *gen.*, 567. 1  
 plerique, *defective*, 204  
**Pluperfect**, 280, 300; use, 738  
**Plural**, 49; with change of mean-  
 ing, 189; wanting, 187; plural  
 expressions to be noted, 697;  
 of proper names, 699  
**Pluralia tantum**, 188  
 plurimi, *gen.* of *value*, 569  
 plurimo, *abl.* of *value*, 618  
 pluris, *gen.* of *value*, 569, 619  
 plus, 221; without *quam*, 618  
**POETICAL FORMS**, 858–927.  
**Polysyndeton**, 850  
 ponere, with *in* & *abl.*, 689  
 porcus, in a *collective* sense, 698  
 poscere, with *two acc.*, 580  
**Position**, in prosody, 862  
**Positive**, 208; wanting, 224  
**Possessive pronoun**, 249; not ex-  
 pressed, 710; as subjective *gen.*,  
 566. 4  
**Possessor**, *dat.* of, 594  
 possum, poteram, *I might, I*  
*could*, 747; with *infin.*, 809  
**post**, 646; to denote distance of  
*time*, 675; in compounds with  
*dat.*, 592  
 posteritas, used for posteri, 693  
 postquam (posteaquam) w. *perf.*,  
 737, 773  
 postulare, w. *two acc.*, 580; with  
*ut*, 758  
**Potential subjunctive**, 750  
 potiri, with *gen.* & *abl.*, 626  
 potis, pote, 308  
 potus & pransus, *active*, 278

**prae**, 662; in composition, *very*, 531. 3; in compounds with **dat.**, 592

praebēre **se**, with **acc.**, 578

praecipēre, with **ut**, 758

praedītus, with **abl.**, 623

praenōmen, 194

Praenomens abbreviated, 197

praestāre **se**, with **acc.**, 578

**praeter**, 647; in compounds with **acc.**, 577

praetērit, with **acc.**, 583

praetermittēre nihil quin, 766

praetor, for in praetūra, 692

precāri, with **ut**, 758

**PREDICATE**, 534; its place, 558; its number, 541–543; its gender, 544; with different persons, 545; predicate adjective & substantive in **acc.** & **inf.**, 817; predicate **gen.**, 571; pred. **abl.**, 616

**PREPOSITIONS**, 32; List of, 443–446; uses, 629–671; with the **acc.**, 629–654; with the **abl.**, 655–664; with the **acc.** & **abl.**, 665–671; place, 563; in composition, 516; assimilation of, 518

**PRESENT** Indicative, 280; tenses formed upon it, 298; Pres. Subjunct., 298; Pres. Imperat., 299; Pres. Infinitive, tenses formed upon it, 299; Pres. Partic., 298; Present, its uses, 731–734; to express a past action, 733; for the historical perfect, 732; with **dum**, 734

Price, **abl.** of, 617

pridie, with **acc.**, 930

prima pueritiā, 673

Primitive adverbs, 424; primitive verbs, 470; primitive and derivative words, 466

primus, to denote a *part*, 704

Principal clause, 742, in *indirect* discourse, 825

Principal parts of verb, 296; their formation, 339–399

Principal tenses, 743

Principal term of compounds, 512

principio, **abl.** of *time*, 673

prior & primus instead of *adverbs*, 550

priusquam, 779, 780

privāre, with **abl.**, 622

**pro**, 661; its *quantity* in compounds, 884

prodesse, with **dat.**, 589

prodest, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811

prohibēre, with quomīnus, 764

Prohibitions, 805

proinde, 855; proinde ac si, 772

Pronominal adjectives, 269

**PRONOUNS**, 32, 243–269; special uses, 710–729; personal, 244; reflexive, 248; demonstrative, 252; determinative, 255; relative, 265; interrogative, 260; indefinite, 256; their agreement, 551–557

Pronunciation of Latin, 8

prope, 648

Proper names, 38, 193–197; in **plur.**, 699

propior, propius, with **acc.**, 600

Proportional numerals, 240

proprius, *own*, 567. 3

**propter**, 649

Prosody, 858–897; figures of, 887–897

prospicēre, with **ut**, 758

Protāsis, 787

providēre, with **dat.** & **acc.**, 591; with **ut**, 758

providus, compared, 217

proximus, proxime, with **acc.**, 600  
 -ps, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124-126  
 -pte, appended to pronouns, 251  
 pudet, with **gen. & acc.**, 584  
 puer, instead of in pueritiā, 691  
 in pueritiā, prima pueritiā, 673  
 Punishment, **abl.** of, 570  
 Purpose, subjunctive of, with ut,  
 ne, 758; quo, 763; with relative,  
 792; expressed by **ad** with ge-  
 rund, 845  
 putāre, with **gen.**, 569; with **two**  
**acc.**, 578; **pass.**, with **two nom.**, 540  
 putāres, *potential* subjunctive,  
 750  
 Pythiambic strophe, 927. 16. 17

**Q.**

quaerere, with **two acc.**, 580  
 Quality, **gen.** of, 566. 5; **abl.** of, 615  
 quam, with comparatives, 609;  
 regularly *omitted* in relative  
 sentences, 610; *omitted* after  
 plus, amplius, longius, 610; with  
 posse & **superl.**, 707; quam quis-  
 quam, ullus, 724; quam qui,  
 quam ut, w. **subjunct.**, 795, 759  
 quamquam, 771  
 quamvis, 768  
 quandoquidem, 781  
 quanti, **gen.** of value, 659, 619  
 QUANTITY, 859-896; general rules,  
 28; in compounds, 883; of the  
 radical syllable, 865; of middle  
 syllables, 866-876; of final syl-  
 lables, 877-879; of monosyllab-  
 les, 880-882; marks of, 10  
 quantumvis, 768  
 quantus potuit, with **superl.**, 707  
 quasi, 772  
 que, 849  
 quemadmodum, with **indic.**, 772

Question, 532; direct, 796, 797;  
 alternative, 798; question and  
 answer, 799; indirect, 801, 802;  
 indirect disjunctive, 803; in in-  
 direct discourse, 825  
 qui, 256; its agreement, 551; =  
 cum ego, &c. with **subjunct.** 792;  
 = ut ego, &c. with **subjunct.**, 792;  
 qui? 720; qui dicitur, 555  
 quia, 781  
 quidam, 725  
 quidem, its place, 564  
 quilibet, 726  
 quin = qui non in clause of re-  
 sult, 765; after verbs of *hinder-*  
*ing*, 764; after *negative* clau-  
 ses, 765  
 quippe qui, with **subjunct.**, 791  
 quis = quibus, 257  
 quis, 720, 723  
 quisquam, 724  
 quisque, 727  
 quisquis, with **indic.**, 748  
 quivis, 726  
 quo = ut eo, with **subjunct.**, 763  
 quoad, w. **indic. & subjunct.**, 776-778  
 quod, in *explanatory* clauses,  
 784; quod, quia, *because*, 781;  
 quod, *as to*, 785  
 quodsi, 787  
 quominus = ut eo minus, 764  
 quoniam, *since*, 781  
 quoque, 849; its place, 564  
 quotiens, with **perf. & pluperf.**, 740  
 quotquot, with **indic.**, 748  
 -**quus**, adjectives in, 219

**R.**

-**r**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 94-103; ad-  
 jectives, 141  
 Radical syllables, quantity of, 865  
 ratione, **abl.** of *manner*, 613

-rĕ, for -rĭs in the *pass.*, 335  
 rĕ-, rĕd-, *inseparable prep.*, 516  
 READING-CHARTS, 8  
 Reciprocal, how expressed, 640  
 recordāri, with *gen.*, 568  
 recusāre, w. *ne* & *quomĭnus*, 764  
 reddĕre, with *two acc.*, 578  
 redimĕre, with *abl.*, 617  
 Reduplicated perfects, 349, 361,  
 370; quantity of, 867  
 Reduplication in compounds, 349,  
 361  
 refert, with *gen.*, 572  
 refertus, with *abl.*, 623  
 Reflexive pronouns, 248, 711; in  
 indirect discourse, 828  
 Reflexive verb, 275  
 Relative pronoun, 256-259; agree-  
 ment, 551, 552; relative for dem-  
 onstr. at the *beginning* of  
 sentence, 556; in *abl.* of *compa-*  
*ration*, 610; *never* omitted, 557;  
 place, 562; general relatives w.  
*indic.*, 748; relative clauses with  
*subjunct.*, 791-795  
 relinquĕre, with *two acc.*, 578; with  
*dat.* of *purpose*, 595; with *ge-*  
*rundive*, 841  
 reliquus, to denote a *part*, 704;  
 reliquum est, *ut*, 759  
 reminisci, with *gen.*, 568  
 reperiuntur qui, w. *subjunct.*, 793. b  
 replĕre, with *abl.*, 622  
 resistĕre, with *dat.*, 589  
 respondĕre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812  
 Responsives, 799  
 restat, with *ut*, 759  
 Result, *subjunct.* of, with *conjunc-*  
*tions*, 759, 760  
 retinĕri non possum quin, 766  
 reum facĕre, with *gen.*, 570  
 Rhythm, 900; Ionic, 927. 19

Rhythmical feet, 902  
 ridĕre, with *acc.*, 575  
 -rĭmĭs, *superl. ending*, 213  
 ritu, *abl.* of *manner*, 613  
 Rivers, *gender* of names of, 40  
 rogāre, with *two acc.*, 580; with  
*ut*, 758  
 rogātu, *abl.* of *cause*, 604  
 Roman method of pronunciation,  
 9-14  
 Root, 467, 468  
 -rs, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 127  
 rus, like name of *town*, 686

### S.

-s, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 103-128; ad-  
 jectives in, 141  
 salutāris, with *dat.*, 598  
 Sapphic stanza, 927. 2. 3; *verse*,  
 925. 5. 6  
 satiāre, with *abl.*, 622  
 satis, with *gen.*, 566. 6  
 Scanning, 913  
 scire, w. *infĭn.*, 809; scito for *sci*,  
 338  
 -scō, *Inceptives* in, 391  
 scribĕre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812  
 se-, sed-, *inseparable prep.*, 516;  
 compounds of *se* with *ā* & *abl.*,  
 621  
 secernĕre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621  
 Second Conjugation; *Active*, 318;  
*Passive*, 319; *Deponent*, 328:  
*Verbs of*, 351-364  
 Second Declension, 63-77  
 secundum, 650  
 secus ac, 849  
 sed, 853  
 sejungĕre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621  
 Semi-deponents, 277, 278; 2d con-  
 jug., 363; 3d conjug., 373  
 in senectūte, 673

senex, instead of in senectūte, 691; compared, 224  
 Sentence, 532, 533; of result, sequence of tenses, 745  
 sententiā mea, 608  
 sentīre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812  
 separāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621  
 Separation, **abl.** of, 620  
 Sequence of tenses, 742–746; in sentences of result, 745; in sentences of comparison, 772  
 sequitur, with **ut**, 759  
 sescenti, *indefinitely*, 233  
 sestertius, sestertium, 938, 939  
 Short vowels, 10, 861  
 si, with **indic.** & **subjunct.**, 787; si quis, 723, 762  
 si modo, 790  
 si non & nisi, 787, 789  
 sic **ut**, 759  
 sicut, with **indic.**, 772  
 silentio, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
 similis, **superl.** 215; with **dat.** or **gen.**, 598, 600  
 Simple feet, 902; simple forms of verb, 298–302; simple verse, 903  
 simulac, simulatque, 773; with **perf.**, 737, 740  
 sin, 787  
**sine**, 664; sine, w. quisquam, ullus, 724  
 sinere, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822  
 Singular, 49; used for the plural, 698; wanting, 188  
 Singularia tantum, 187  
 singuli, *defective*, 204  
 siquidem, *since*, 781  
 sitire, with **acc.**, 575  
 sive, 852; sive. . sive, w. **indic.**, 748  
 Small islands, Names of, 683  
*so-called*, qui dicitur, 555

solito, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611  
 solus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a  
 -sōr, *suffix*, 489  
 Space, Relation of, 679–681  
 spe, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611  
 Special Forms in conjugation, 333–338  
 Specification, **gen.** of, 566. 7  
 id spectare, with **ut**, 758  
 spes est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811  
 spoliare, with **abl.**, 622  
 Spondaic Hexameter, 914  
 Stanza, 926; stanzas of Horace, 927  
 stare, *cost*, with **abl.**, 617  
 statuere, with **in** & **abl.**, 689; with **inf.**, 809  
 STEM, 52, 468; in the 5 declensions, 53; 1st decl., 56; 2d decl., 63; 3d decl., 79; 4th decl., 171; 5th decl., 176; in the 4 conjugations, 295; in **a**, 340; in **e**, 341; in **i**, 342; in **u** (**v**), 343, 365–367; in consonants, 365–396; in **d**, **t**, 369–374; in **b**, **p**, 375, 376; in **c**, **g**, **q**, **h**, **ct**, 377–384; in **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, 385–389; in **s**, **x**, (**cs**), 390; in **sc**, 391–395  
 Stem-words, 466  
 Strophe, *see* Stanza  
 studere, with **dat.**, 589  
 studiosus, with **gen.**, 567. 1  
 suadere, w. **dat.**, 589; w. **ut**, 758  
**sub**, 666–667; in composition, 528; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592  
 SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, 534, 535; place, 558; adjuncts, 558  
 Subjective genitive, 566. 1; as predicate, 571  
 SUBJUNCTIVE, 283; of the future tenses wanting, 746; uses, 749–803; with conjunctions, 755–790; with relatives, 791–795; in

indirect questions, 801–803; to express the thought of some other person, 794, 827; in causal clauses, 782

Subordinating conjunctions, 454–462; uses, 755–790

Subordination of sentences, 742

Substantiva mobilia, 46

SUBSTANTIVES, 32, 37, 38; gender, 39–48; number, 49; declensions, 51–192; indeclinable, 181; defective, 182–186; heteroclitics, 190; heterogeneous, 191; derived from adjectives, 488; derived from substantives, 480–487; derived from verbs, 489–495; used as adjectives, 206; substantive predicate, 536; with *dat.*, 601; special uses, 691–700; in *abl. absol.*, 836

**subter**, 669

Suffixes, 469

sui, sibi, se, 711; w. *quisque*, 727

sumēre, with *two acc.*, 578

summus, *top of*, 704

sunt qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. b

**super**, 668; in compounds w. *dat.*, 592

superbus, with *abl.*, 604

superlative, 211; its declension, 212; with the force of *very*, 705; strengthened, 707; wanting, 224; requires more than two objects, 709

SUPINE, 292, 344; tenses formed upon it, 301; its uses, 847; its equivalents, 848; not changed in *acc.* & *inf.*, 817

supplicāre, with *dat.*, 589

**supra**, 651

–*sūrā*, *suffix*, 494

–*sūs* & –*tūs*, Nouns in, 4th decl., 183; *suffixes*, 493

suus, its use, 711

Syllables, 21–25; long & short, 860, 861, 899; long by position, 862; common, 863; middle, 866–876; final, 877–879; *syllāba anceps*, 908

Synaerēsis, 890, 891

Syncōpe, 893

SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSIONS, 54

SYNOPSIS OF TENSES, 298–302

SYNTAX, 1, 532–857

Systōle, 895

**T.**

–*t*, Nouns in, 3d decl., 129

taedet, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584

talis, 269; talis qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. a; talis ut, with *subjunct.*, 759

tam w. *adject.* & *qui*, 793. a

tam w. *adject.* & *ut*, 759

tamen, 853

tametsi, 771

tamquam, 772

tanti, tantīdem, *gen. of value*, 569, 619

tantum abest, *ut. . ut*, 760

tantus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. a; tantus ut, with *subjunct.*, 759

–*tē*, appended to pronouns, 251

temperāre, with various cases, 591; temperāre mihi non possum quin, 766

templum, *omitted*, 566. 9

Temporal conjunctions, 455; uses, 773–780

in tempore, temporibus, 673

TENSES, 35, 280; formation of, 298–302; *principal* and *historical*, 743; uses, 730–741; sequence of tenses, 742–746; tenses of the *inf.*, 818, 819; tenses in letters, 741

**tenus**, 663

-**tēr**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96, 97  
 terra marique, 688  
 Tetramēter, 904  
 Tetrastich, 926  
*that & those*, not expressed in Latin, 716  
 Thesis, 900  
 Third Conjugation, *Active*, 320; *Passive*, 321; *Deponent*, 329; in -**īō** (appendix), 331, 332; *Verbs* of, 365-396  
 Third Declension, 78-170  
 Time, Relation of, 672-678; for how long, 677; how long, 674; how long *before*, 675; how long *since*, 674; when, 672, 673; within which, 676  
 timēre, with *ut*, *ne*, 761  
 -**tīō**, *suffix*, 493  
 Tmesis, 897  
 -**tōr**, *suffix*, 490, 491  
 totus, 202; nouns with, in *abl.* without *prep.*, 687  
 Towns, Names of, Gender, 42; construction of, 683  
**trans**, 652; in composition, 529; in compounds with *acc.*, 577  
 Transitive verbs, 271; transitive & intransitive, 575  
 Trees, Gender of names of, 42  
 Trimēter, 904; Iambic, 922-924  
 trini, for *terni*, 238  
 Tristich, 926  
 Trithemimēres, 912  
 -**trix**, *suffix*, 492  
 Trochaic strophe, 927. 18  
 -**trūm**, *suffix*, 495  
 -**tūrā**, *suffix*, 493  
 turpis, with *dat.*, 598  
 -**tūs**, *suffix*, 493

U.

**u & v**, but *one* character, 2, 891  
**u**, Stems, 3d decl., 79; 3d conjug., 343  
 -**ū**, Nouns in, 4th decl., 171  
 ubi, with *gen.*, 566. c; *when*, 773; ubi, ubi primum, with *perf.*, 737  
 -**ūbūs**, *dat. & abl. pl.*, 4th decl., 172  
 ullus, 202; its use, 724  
 ultima, 25  
 ultimus, to denote a *part*, 704  
 ultor, ultrix, *adject.*, 206  
**ultra**, 654  
 -**ūlūm**, *suffix*, 494  
 -**ūlūs**, *suffix*, 480, 499, 510  
 -**ūm**, *suffix*, 489  
 -**ūm**, for -**ārūm**, -**ōrūm**, 1st & 2d decl., 68; -**ūm**, *gen. pl.* of *adject.*, 3d decl., 147  
 -**undī**, -**undūs**, for -**endi**, -**endus**, 337  
 Unit of measure, 899  
 unus, 202; in the plur., 229; instead of *singūli*, 238; unus omnium, with *superl.*, 707; unus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. a  
 unusquisque, 267; its use, 726  
 -**ūō**, Verbs in, 1st conjug., 365  
 -**ūr**, Nouns in, 2d decl., 66; 3d decl., 102, 103  
 urbs, in *apposition* with names of towns, 684, 685  
 -**ūrīō**, Verbs in, 473  
 -**us**, Nouns in, 2d decl., 63; 3d decl., 118-122; 4th decl., 171  
 -**ūs**, -**ā**, -**ūm**, Adjectives in, 72  
*ut*, *comparat.*, 772; *final & consecutive*, 756-761; *concessive*, 769; *temporal*, 773; *as soon as*, 737  
*ut primum*, 773; with *perf.*, 737  
*ut si*, w. *subjunct.*, 772  
*uti*, with *abl.*, 626

utīlis, with **dat.** or **ad & acc.**, 598;  
with **gerund & gerundive**, 844; uti-  
lius fuit, 747  
utīnam, with **subjunct.**, 751  
utpōte qui, with **subjunct.**, 792. II  
utrum, 797; utrum..an, 798  
-ūtūs, *suffix*, 503  
-ux, Nouns in, 3d decl., 136

V.

vacāre, with **abl.**, 622  
vacuus, with **abl.**, 623  
Value, in the **gen.**, 569, 619; in the  
**abl.**, 618  
vapulāre, **neutral pass.**, 279  
ve, 852  
vel, 852; with **superl.**, 707  
velle, with **inf.** or **acc. & inf.**, 809,  
814  
velut si, with **subjunct.**, 772  
vendēre, w. **abl.**, 617; bene, male, 619  
venēo, **pass.** to vendēre, 408  
venīre, with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595  
Verba sentiendi et declarandi, 812  
Verbal nouns & adjectives, 286-  
292  
Verbal inceptives, 392-394  
Verbal predicate, 536  
VERBS, 32, 270-423; voices, 271;  
tenses, 280; moods, 281; finite  
verb, 285; persons, 293; conju-  
gations, 295; formation of the  
tenses, 298; verb-stem, 295; for-  
mation of the principal parts,  
339; of the 1st **conjug.**, 346-349;  
of the 2d **conjug.**, 351-364; of the  
3d **conjug.**, 365-396; of the 4th  
**conjug.**, 397-399; in -ŷō, 3d **con-**  
**jug.**, 331, 368; compounded  
with *prepositions*, 516; derived  
from *verbs*, 471-474; derived  
from *subst. & adj.*, 475-479;

place, 558; SYNTAX, 730-848;  
Verbs of *reminding, remem-*  
*bering, forgetting* with **gen.**,  
568; of *accusing, convicting,*  
*condemning, acquitting*, with  
**gen.**, 570; of *valuing*, with **gen.**,  
569; of *naming, making, tak-*  
*ing, choosing*, with **two accus.**,  
578; of *asking, demanding,*  
*requesting, inquiring*, with  
**two acc.**, 580; of *benefitting,*  
*pleasing, obeying, command-*  
*ing &c.*, with **dat.**, 589; of *giving*  
*& putting*, with **dat.**, 593; of *buy-*  
*ing & selling*, with **abl.**, 617; of  
*removing, abstaining*, with  
**abl.**, 620; of *plenty & want, fil-*  
*ling and depriving*, with **abl.**,  
622; of *placing*, with **in & abl.**,  
689; of *assembling*, with **in &**  
**acc.**, 690; of *willing, wishing,*  
*warning, beseeching, urging,*  
*demanding, resolving, endea-*  
*voring, forcing, permitting,*  
with **ut & ne**, 758; of *wishing,*  
*desiring*, with **acc. & inf.**, 814; of  
*fearing*, with **ut, ne**, 761; of *hin-*  
*dering*, with **quomīnus**, 764; of  
*emotion, joy, grief*, with **quod**,  
783; with **acc. & inf.**, 815; verbs  
signifying *to be able, must, dare,*  
*begin, continue, cease, be accu-*  
*stomed, learn, wish, desire,*  
*resolve*, with **infin.**, 809; verbs  
of *perceiving*, with **pres. part.**,  
813, 835; of *perceiving and de-*  
*clarating*, with **acc. & infin.**, 812;  
with **nom. & inf.**, 821  
verēri, with **ut & ne**, 761  
vero, verum, 853, 564; place, 564  
Verses, 898; names of, 904; com-  
pound, 903; simple, 903



VERSIFICATION, 898 ff.  
 VERSUS, 653.  
 vertēre, with **dat.** of purpose, 595  
 verum, vero, 564, 853  
 verum est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811  
 vesci, with **abl.**, 626  
 vestis, in a *collective* sense, 698  
 vestras, *patrial* **adject.**, 250  
 vestrum & vestri, 566. 3  
 vetāre, with **acc.**, 589; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822  
 vetus, **superl.**, 240  
 vi, vi et armis, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
 via, *without prep.*, 688  
 via et ratiōne, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
 vicinītas = vicīni, 693  
 vicīnus, with **dat.** & **gen.**, 598  
 victor, victrix, *adjectives*, 206  
 vidēre, with **ut**, 758; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812; with **pres. part.**, 813, 835  
 vidēres, *potential* **subjunct.**, 750  
 vidēri, with **two nom.**, 540; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822  
 vis, 114; per vim, 645  
 visu, 848  
 vix, with *quisquam*, *ullus*, 724  
 vocāre, with **two acc.**, 578; vocāri, with **two nom.**, 540

Vocative, 49; of nouns in **-iūs**, **2d decl.**, 67; in **3d decl.**, 154  
 Voices, 35, 271-279  
 voluntāte, **abl.** of *manner*, 614  
**-vōlūs**, *Adjectives* in, 216  
 Vowel-changes in *compound verbs*, 517  
 Vowels, 4  
 Vowel-stems, in **decl.**, 79, 80; in **conjug.**, 339, 344  
 vox, with **gen.**, 566. 7

### W.

w, not in Latin, 2  
 Way by which, **abl.**, 688  
 Week, Days of the, 936  
 Weights, Roman, 942  
 Winds, Gender of names of, 40  
*without*, with **partic.** 834  
 Women, Names of, 196  
 Word-formation, 1, 465-531

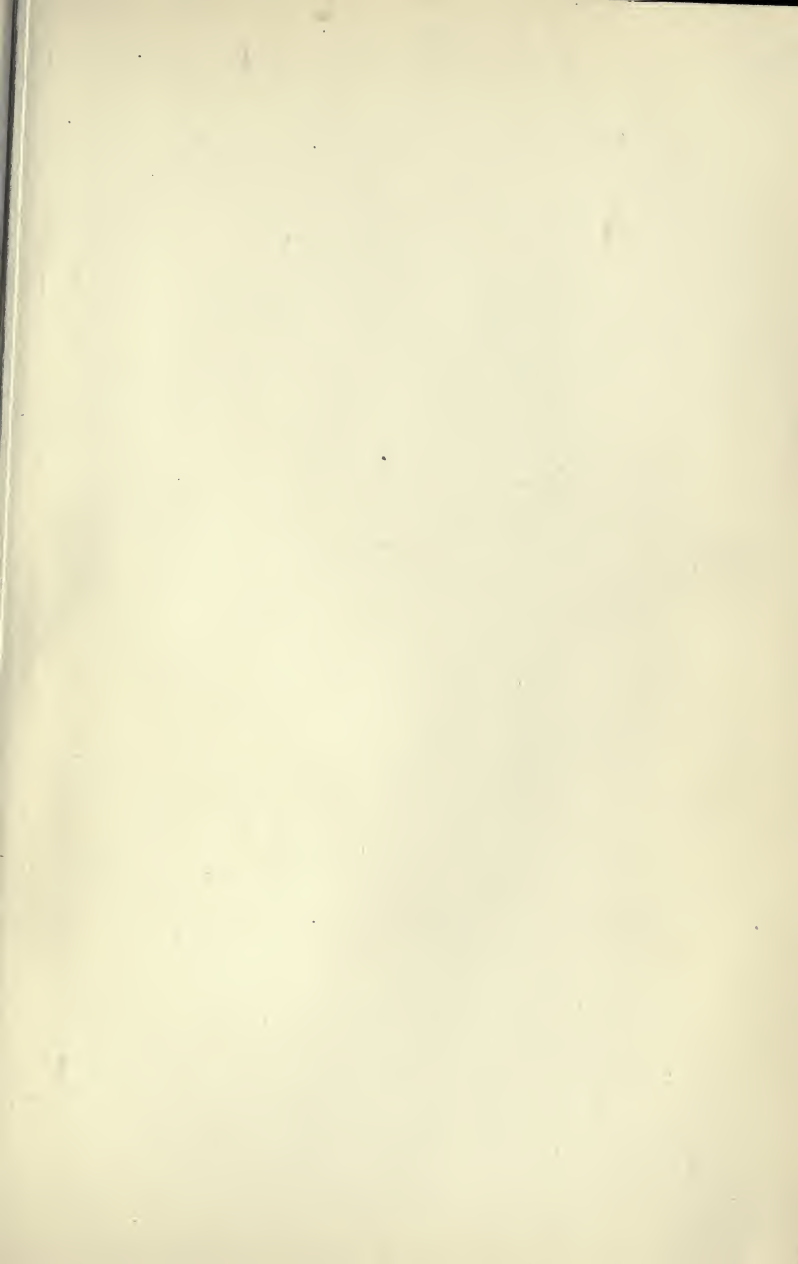
### X.

-x, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 130, 131, 141

### Y.

-y, Nouns in, of Greek origin, 88  
 Year, Date of, 935  
*yes*, 799  
 -ys, Nouns in, 154





14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

# LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

'5 Sep '57 KL

REC'D LD

DEC 28 1957

LD 21-100m-6,'56  
(B9311s10)476

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

YB 00227

926545 760

A286

la

**THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY**

